

43. 1103

THE
LIFE AND SURPRISING ADVENTURES
OF
ROBINSON CRUSOE

BY
DANIEL DEFOE.

FÜR DEN SCHUL- UND PRIVATGEBRAUCH

EINGERICHTET UND ERKLÄRT

VON

DR. HEINRICH LOEWE,

OBERLEHRER AN DER HERZOGLICHEN REALSCHULE I. O. ZU BERNBURG.

*Defoe
Robinson
Crusoe*

HALLE.

HERMANN GESENIUS.

1882.



732 G

G.m 2754



V o r w o r t.*)

Der Versuch, den *Robinson Crusoe* des *Daniel Defoe* als Schullectüre einzuführen, ist neuerdings meines Wissens wiederum auf der Großherzoglichen Realschule zu Ludwigslust gemacht worden, und zwar, wie zu erwarten stand, mit bestem Erfolge. Es haben außer Foth auch Vogel und Ottmann auf diesen Gegenstand hingewiesen, so daß der Gedanke, eine Schulausgabe davon dieser Sammlung anzufügen, sehr nahe lag, zumal da die Bearbeitungen der Marryat'schen Schriften so viel Anklang gefunden haben. Wir sollten daher meinen, der *Robinson* wäre so recht ein Lesebuch für die untere und mittlere Stufe des englischen Unterrichts, sagt doch auch Macaulay: „*What man does not remember with regret the first time that he read Robinson Crusoe?*“ Freilich können wir uns gegen den Einwand nicht verschließen, daß wir es mit einem etwas älteren Schriftsteller zu thun haben, der außer einer Anzahl jetzt veralteter Ausdrücke und Wendungen auch in der Sprache seines Helden etwas bietet, das eben nicht über ein gewisses Maß der Wohlredenheit hinausgeht. Mancher möchte auch wohl den

*) Prefaces are so customary before books of this nature, to introduce them into the world by a display of their excellencies, that it might be thought too presuming to send this performance abroad, without some such preliminary. And yet I may venture to say, it needs this good office as little as any that has ever gone before it.

Defoe: „*The Life of Colonel Jack*“, the authors preface.

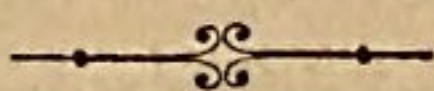
Mißbrauch fürchten, der etwa mit gedruckten Übersetzungen getrieben werden könnte, denn in welcher Stadt wäre eine solche nicht aufzutreiben? Allein, alles in allem genommen, der Vorteil, daß der Schüler mit Vergnügen liest und viel lesen wird in diesem Buche, muß alle Bedenken überwinden, zumal wenn der Herausgeber und der traktierende Lehrer den etwaigen übeln Einflüssen entgegenwirken!

Der Text ist, mit Zugrundelegung von dem der Tauchnitz edition, nach Keltie's Ausgabe der Werke Defoe's, Edinburgh 1880, gestaltet. Ferner war es natürlich, daß man sich hier auf den ersten Teil des *Robinson* beschränkte. Die sonstige Bearbeitung entspricht den für diese Sammlung aufgestellten Grundsätzen. Möge der alte *Robinson* sich auch in dieser Gestalt viele Freunde erwerben bei Lehrenden und Lernenden. Den ersteren würde für Mitteilung von Verbesserungsvorschlägen und sonstigen Bemerkungen sehr dankbar sein

Bernburg, Frühjahr 1882.

Der Herausgeber.

Defoe's Leben und Werke. *)



Daniel Foe, denn dies ist sein eigentlicher Name, wurde 1661 zu London als der Sohn eines wohlhabenden Fleischers geboren. Da der Knabe gute Anlagen zeigte, so ließ ihm der Vater eine sorgfältige Erziehung angedeihen, indem er ihn von 1675—80 auf die "*Dissenting Academy*" zu Newington Green schickte, die damals unter der Leitung von Charles Morton stand. Der alte James Foe gehörte nämlich zu den Dissenters, d. h. einer von der Staatskirche abweichenden religiösen Sekte, und so sollte auch Daniel puritanischer Geistlicher werden. Diesen Zwang ertrug indessen sein Feuergeist nicht. Ebensowenig befriedigte ihn der Stand eines Strumpfwarenhändlers, den er endlich erwählte. Wie der eine zum Feldherrn, der andere zum Staatsmann, so war Daniel Foe zum Schriftsteller geboren. Kaum 21 Jahre alt, trat er in einer politischen Streitschrift zu Gunsten der Österreicher gegen die Türken auf und griff in seinem "*Speculum crapegowndorum*", d. h. Spiegel der Schwarzröcke, die fanatischen Anhänger der Hochkirche an. Im Juni 1685 nahm er, bei Bristol und Bath tapfer kämpfend, an dem Aufstande des Prinzen von Monmouth teil und mußte deshalb dem Vaterlande den Rücken kehren. Seine Wanderungen führten ihn durch Spanien, Frankreich und Deutschland. Kurze Zeit nachher taucht unser Held wieder in London auf, aber als Daniel Defoe, wie er sich von nun an nennt. Dort bekleidete er 1687—88 das Amt eines Stadtverordneten ("*liveryman*"). In den politisch höchst erregten Zeiten der englischen Revolution bewies sich Defoe als ein wahrer Held der Feder, indem er für die Thronkandidatur Wilhelms von Oranien kämpfte. Aber die unruhigen Zeiten waren seinem Geschäfte, das er ohnehin wohl etwas vernachlässigte, nicht günstig:

*) Cf. Programm der Realschule zu Bernburg, Ostern 1882.

er machte Bankerott, mußte aus London fliehen und ging nach Bristol in die Verborgenheit. Hier schrieb er, 1696—97, seinen berühmten "*Essay on Projects*", ein Buch, in welchem er sich zeigt als einen Mann, der, mit weitschauendem Blick begabt, schon damals neben vielem andern hinweist auf den Nutzen verbesserter Landstraßen, auf den Vorteil von Hagel- und Feuerversicherungsgesellschaften, auf den Segen von Sparkassen und Altersversorgungsanstalten. Die Gunst des Königs Wilhelm war sein Lohn. Derselben suchte er sich würdig zu machen durch das Gedicht: "*The true born Englishman*" (1701), worin er den Monarchen gegen die Angriffe verteidigt, die er als Ausländer zu erleiden hatte. • Leider starb der König schon 1702, und unter der Königin Anna brach sofort der Streit der Hochkirchenmänner gegen die Dissenters wieder aus. In die hochgehenden Wogen desselben warf Defoe seine glänzend geschriebene Satire: "*The shortest way with the Dissenters*" (1702). Dieselbe trug ihm aber eine mehrjährige Gefängnisstrafe ein. Unter Lord Harley's Ministerium erhielt der Schriftsteller seine Freiheit wieder und wurde fortan als politischer Agent verwendet. So hat er namentlich 1706—7 die Vereinigung von England und Schottland zum Abschlufs gebracht. Während seiner Gefangenschaft war er nicht müßig gewesen, er gab eine wöchentlich viermal erscheinende Zeitschrift, die "*Review*", heraus, welche als Anfang des englischen Zeitschriftenwesens betrachtet werden kann. Zahlreich sind die Publikationen politischen, national-ökonomischen und handelspolitischen Inhalts, die dieser so überaus fruchtbare Schriftsteller in den nächsten Jahren erscheinen liefs, schätzt man doch die Gesamtzahl seiner Schriften auf 250 und mehr; allein 1715, nachdem er noch kräftig für die Nachfolge des Hauses Hannover auf dem englischen Throne gewirkt hatte, scheint sich Defoe von dem politischen Schauplatze zurückgezogen zu haben und nur Mitarbeiter verschiedener Zeitungen und Zeitschriften geblieben zu sein. Die Thätigkeit dieses Mannes war hinfort auf ein anderes Feld gerichtet, im April 1719 erschien sein weltbekanntes Buch: "*The life and surprising adventures of Robinson Crusoe*".

Kaum glaublich erscheint die Thatsache, dafs Defoe für dieses sein berühmtestes Werk anfangs keinen Verleger finden konnte. Der Buchhändler William Taylor gab ihm schliefslich zehn Pfund Sterling (200 *M.*) für das Manuscript. Und welchen beispiellosen Erfolg hatte dies Buch? Es ist ein internationales Lieblingsbuch geworden, dem kein zweites zur Seite steht. Dies beweist schon der Umstand, dafs man in Deutschland allein gegen siebzig Nach-

ahmungen zählt. Den Anstofs zu dieser abenteuerlichen Reisebeschreibung mag der Verfasser durch die Erzählung der Schicksale eines schottischen Matrosen, namens Alexander Selkirk, erhalten haben, der von 1705—9 auf der Insel Juan Fernandez einsam lebte, allein Form und Inhalt des Robinson Crusoe sind doch sein eigenes Werk. Durch den Erfolg dieser und ähnlicher Schriften, wir nennen nur noch: "*The life of Colonel Jack*", "*Memoirs of a Cavalier*", "*The life and adventures of Duncan Campbell*", brachte es Defoe wieder zu einem ziemlichen Vermögen. Jedoch ein widriges Schicksal verfolgte ihn bis in seine letzten Lebenstage. Von hartherzigen Gläubigern bedrängt, mußte er abermals flüchten, selbst sein ältester Sohn liefs ihn im Stich. Arm und verlassen starb Daniel Defoe, April 1731, im Kirchspiel von St. Giles zu London.

Erklärung der Zeichen zur Erleichterung der Aussprache.

1. Einfache Vokale.

à = eh, fàte; vor r = äh, càre
 á ein kurzer Laut zwischen a und ä, fát, hád

ā = a in Vater, gar, fāther, fār
 ȃ ein gedehnter Laut zwischen a und o, ȃll, wār

ǎ ein kurzer Laut zwischen a und o, nach w und qu, swǎn, quǎn-
 tity, und in whǎt.

è = ih, hè, mè

é = e in Bett, béd

é vor r = kurzes ö, sérvant.

ì = ei, nìne

í = i in Sinn, kíll, wín

í vor r = kurzes ö, sír, fírst.

ō = o in Ofen, nō, ōld

ó = o in von, offen, nót, clóck

ȝ ein Laut zwischen a und o, be-
 sonders vor r, bȝrn, fȝr

ò = uh, dò, lòse, tòmb (spr. tuhm)

ö ein kurzer Laut zwischen o und ö, löve, cöme.

ù = juh, cùre; nach r und nach l
 mit vorhergehendem Konsonan-
 ten = uh, trùe, conclùde

ú ein kurzer Laut zwischen o und ö (= ö in löve), bút, rún; etwas
 gedehnter vor r, chùrch

ũ = u in Null, füll, püt.

ỳ = ei, flỳ, crỳ, tỳrant

ý = i in Sinn, pýramid.

2. Doppelvokale.

ài, ày = eh, gàin, dày; vor r = äh, àir
 ȃu, ȃw ein gedehnter Laut zwischen a und o, cȃuse, drȃw.

èa = ih, tèa, tèar (Thräne)

eà = eh, greàt; vor r = äh, tèar
 (zerreißen)

éa = e in Bett, déad; vor r mit
 folgendem Konsonanten = ö, léarn

èe = ih, sèe

èi, èy = ih, recèive, kèy

ēi, ēy = eh, reīgn, grey

eù, ew = juh, Èurope, new; nach
 l und r mit vorhergehendem
 Konsonanten = uh, blew, drew.

ìè = ih, fièld

ìe = ei, liè.

ōa = oh, bōat

ōi, ōy = eu, oil, bōy

òo = uh in Kuh, mòon

óo = u in „und“, bóok, góod

ōu, ōw = au, hōur, nōw

ōu, ōw = oh, cōurt, snōw

ȝu ein gedehnter Laut zwischen a und o (= ȝ in cȃuse) thȝught

òu = uh, yoù, woùnd (Wunde)

óu ein kurzer Laut zwischen o und ö (= ú in bút), coútry.

ùì = juh, pursùit; nach r = uh, frùit

uí = kurzes i, buíld.

1. In Silben, die nicht den Hauptton haben, sind ī und ŷ = ei, ĭ und ỹ = kurzes i zu sprechen, z. B. Apennīnes, to próp̄hesŷ, fér̄tile, the próp̄hecŷ.

2. Durch dj wird das französische j (z. B. *jamais*) mit vorlau-
 tendem d bezeichnet.

3. Der Apostroph bezeichnet die Tonstelle, z. B. ág'-ōnŷ = agony.

THE LIFE AND ADVENTURES OF ROBINSON CRUSOE.

I. — I WAS born in the year 1632, in the city¹⁾ of York, of a good family, though not of that country, my father being a foreigner²⁾ of Bremen, who settled first at Hull: he got a good estate by merchandise, and leaving off his trade, lived afterwards at York; from whence he had married my mother, whose relations were named Robinson, a very good family in that country, and from whom I was called Robinson³⁾ Kreutznaer; but, by the usual corruption of words in England, we are now called, nay we call ourselves, and write our name Crusoe⁴⁾; and so my companions always called me.

I had two elder brothers, one of which was lieutenant-colonel⁵⁾ to⁶⁾ an English regiment of foot in Flanders, formerly commanded by the famous Colonel Lockhart, and was killed at the battle near Dunkirk⁷⁾ against the Spaniards. What became of my second brother I never knew, any more⁸⁾ than my father or mother did know what was become of me.

I. — ¹⁾ *city*, eig. „Bürgerschaft“, vom lat. *civitas*, wird in England namentlich von den Städten gesagt, die einen Bischofssitz haben. Sonst bezeichnet man damit auch jede grössere Hauptstadt ausserhalb Englands. In London bedeutet *city* die Altstadt. Dagegen *town*, eig. „ein eingezäunter Ort“, nhd. Zaun, heisst Stadt schlechweg, im Gegensatz zum Lande. — ²⁾ *foreigner*, vom lat. *foras*, *foraneus*, = Fremder (Ausländer); dagegen *stranger*, vom lat. *extraneus* = Fremder (Unbekannter). — ³⁾ Spr. Rōb'-ínsún. — ⁴⁾ Spr. Crū'-sō. — ⁵⁾ Spr. leftén'-núnt kör'-nel, beachte auch die Voranstellung des geringeren Grades; cf. LV, 8. — ⁶⁾ „Das Verhältnis der Zugehörigkeit, Verwandtschaft, Freundschaft oder Feindschaft, Herrschaft oder Unterwürfigkeit kann, statt durch den Genitiv, auch durch den Dativ ausgedrückt werden. Es darf dann aber das Substantiv, von welchem der Dativ abhängig ist, nicht mit dem bestimmten Artikel verbunden sein“ (Gesenius II. § 54). — ⁷⁾ Fällt in die letzten Jahre der englischen Republik, den 14. Juli 1658. — ⁸⁾ *any more* = wenig mehr.

Being the third son of the family, and not bred to any trade, my head began to be filled very early with rambling thoughts: my father, who was very ancient⁹⁾, had given me a competent¹⁰⁾ share of learning, as far as house-education and a country free-school generally go, and designed me for the law¹¹⁾; but I would be satisfied with nothing but going to sea; and my inclination to this led me so strongly against the will, nay, the commands of my father, and against all the entreaties and persuasions of my mother and other friends, that there seemed to be something fatal in that propension of nature, tending directly to the life of misery¹²⁾ which was to befall me.

My father, a wise and grave man, gave me serious and excellent counsel against what he foresaw was my design¹³⁾. He called me one morning into his chamber, where he was confined¹⁴⁾ by the gout¹⁵⁾, and expostulated very warmly with me upon this subject: he asked me what reasons more than a mere wandering inclination I had for leaving my father's house and my native country, where I might be well introduced, and had a prospect of raising my fortune by application¹⁶⁾ and industry¹⁶⁾, with a life of ease and pleasure. He told me it was¹⁷⁾ men of desperate fortunes on one hand, or of aspiring, superior fortunes on the other, and who went abroad upon adventures, to rise by enterprise, and make themselves famous in undertakings of a nature out of the common road; that these things were all either too far above me, or too far below me; that mine was the middle state, or what might be called the upper station of low life¹⁸⁾, which he had found, by long experience, was the best state in the world.

⁹⁾ *àncient* hier = alt (und ehrwürdig). — ¹⁰⁾ *competent*, auf der ersten betont, = hinlänglich, ausreichend. — ¹¹⁾ *the lāw* hier = das Jus, die Juristerei, das Studium der Rechte. — ¹²⁾ Spr. misery. — ¹³⁾ Erkläre: „Das, was, wie er voraussah, meine Absicht war“. — ¹⁴⁾ *to be confìned* hier = gefesselt sein. — ¹⁵⁾ *gout*, Gicht, vom lat. *gutta* = Tropfen, weil ehemals die Ursache verschiedener Krankheiten aus dem Gehirne fallenden Tropfen zugeschrieben wurde. — ¹⁶⁾ *applicàtion*, urspr. „Anwendung“, Fleiß-Anwendung des Geistes, Eifer; *industry*, lat. *industria*, = Erwerbfleiß, Gewerbfleiß. — ¹⁷⁾ *it was* dient zur Hervorhebung und kann sich deshalb auch auf den Plural *men* beziehen (Gesenius II, § 83, 3, a). — ¹⁸⁾ „die obere (bessere) Stellung in den niederen Lebenskreisen.“

After this, he pressed me earnestly, and in the most affectionate manner, not to play the young man, nor to precipitate myself into miseries which nature, and the station of life I was born in¹⁹⁾, seemed to have provided against¹⁹⁾; that I was under no necessity of seeking my bread; that he would do well for me, and endeavour to enter me fairly into the station of life which he had been just recommending to me; and that if I was not very easy and happy in the world, it must be my mere fate or fault that must hinder it; and that he should have nothing to answer for, having thus discharged his duty in warning me against measures which he knew would be to my hurt: in a word, that as he would do very kind things for me if I would stay, and settle at home as he directed, so he would not have so much hand²⁰⁾ in my misfortunes, as to give me any encouragement to go away: and to close all, he told me I had my elder brother for an example, to whom he had used the same earnest persuasions to keep him from going into the Low Country wars, but could not prevail, his young desires prompting him to run into the army, where he was killed; and though he said he would not cease to pray for me, yet he would venture to say to me, that if I did take this foolish step, God would not bless me, and I would have leisure hereafter to reflect upon having neglected his counsel, when there might be none to assist in my recovery.

I observed in this last part of his discourse, which was truly prophetic²¹⁾, though I suppose my father did not know it to be so himself; I say, I observed the tears run down his face very plentifully, especially when he spoke of my brother who was killed: and that when he spoke of my having²²⁾ leisure to repent, and none to assist me, he was so moved, that he broke off the discourse, and told me, his heart was so full he could say no more to me.

I was sincerely affected with this discourse, as indeed who could be otherwise²³⁾? and I resolved not to think of going abroad any more, but to settle at home according to my

¹⁹⁾ Beachte auch im folgenden die häufige Nachstellung der Präpositionen. — ²⁰⁾ *to have (a) hand in* = mitwirken, beitragen zu. — ²¹⁾ *prophétic*, weissagend, wird auf der zweiten betont, dagegen *próphet* auf der ersten. — ²²⁾ Löse auf mit „davon, daß“. — ²³⁾ Erkläre: „und wer hätte es denn nicht sein können?“

father's desire. But, alas! a few days wore it all off²⁴⁾; and, in short, to prevent any of my father's further importunities, in a few weeks after I resolved to run quite away from him. However, I did not act so hastily neither²⁵⁾ as the first heat of my resolution prompted, but I took my mother, at a time when I thought her a little pleasanter than ordinary, and told her, that my thoughts were so entirely bent upon seeing the world, that I should never settle to any thing with resolution enough to go through with²⁶⁾ it, and my father had better give me his consent than force me to go without it; that I was now eighteen years old, which was too late to go apprentice to a trade²⁷⁾, or clerk²⁸⁾ to an attorney²⁹⁾; that I was sure, if I did, I should never serve out my time, but I should certainly run away from my master before my time was out, and go to sea; and if she would speak to my father to let me go one voyage abroad, if I came home again, and did not like it, I would go no more, and I would promise, by a double diligence, to recover the time that I had lost.

This put my mother into a great passion: she told me, she knew it would be to no purpose to speak to my father upon any such subject; that he knew too well what was my interest³⁰⁾ to give his consent to any thing so much for my hurt; and that she wondered how I could think of any such thing after the discourse I had had with my father, and such kind and tender expressions as she knew my father had used to me; and that, in short, if I would ruin myself, there was no help for me; but I might depend I should never have their consent to it: that for her part, she would not have

²⁴⁾ *to wear off* hier = verwischen; cf. XXXIV, 5. — ²⁵⁾ *neither* verstärkt hier nur die Negation *not*, beide sind etwa durch „gar nicht“ zu übersetzen. — ²⁶⁾ *to go through with* = zu Ende führen, durchsetzen. — ²⁷⁾ *trade*, eig. „Kauf und Verkauf“, bezeichnet das Gewerbe, das Handwerk; *profession*, eig. „Bekenntnis“, äußerer Beruf, Stand, beschränkt sich nicht auf Handwerke, sondern umfaßt auch höhere Professionen, wie z. B. die ärztliche. — ²⁸⁾ *clerk*, Schreiber, bedeutet eigentlich Kleriker (Geistlicher), weil diese im Mittelalter fast allein des Schreibens kundig waren. In England spricht man das Wort so, als ob es *clark* geschrieben würde, die Amerikaner dagegen sprechen *clerk*. — ²⁹⁾ *attorney*, Sachwalter, sowohl wie *solicitor*, Anwalt, sind mehr praktische Juristen (ohne Universitätsbildung), erst der *barrister* ist ein Jurist in unserm Sinne. — ³⁰⁾ Erkläre: „was zu meinem Besten diene“.

so much hand in my destruction; and I should never have it to say, that my mother was willing when my father was not.

Though my mother refused to move it to my father, yet, I heard afterwards, that she reported all the discourse to him, and that my father, after showing a great concern³¹⁾ at it, said to her with a sigh, "That boy might be happy if he would stay at home; but if he goes abroad, he will be the most miserable wretch that ever was born; I can give no consent to it."

II. — It was not till almost a year after this that I broke loose, though, in the mean time, I continued obstinately deaf to all proposals of settling to business, and frequently expostulating with my father and mother about their being so positively determined against what they knew my inclinations prompted me to¹⁾. But being one day at Hull²⁾, whither I went casually, and without any purpose of making an elopement that time; but, I say, being there, and one of my companions being going by sea to London, in his father's ship, and prompting me to go with them, with the common allure-ment of a sea-faring man; that it should cost me nothing for my passage, I consulted neither father or mother any more, nor so much as sent them word of it; but leaving them to hear of it as they might, without asking God's blessing, or my father's, without any consideration of circumstances or consequences, and in an ill hour, God knows, on the first of September, 1651, I went on board³⁾ a ship bound for London. Never any young adventurer's misfortunes, I believe, began sooner, or continued longer than mine. The ship was no sooner got out of the Humber, but⁴⁾ the wind began to blow, and the sea to rise in a most frightful manner; and, as I had never been at sea before, I was most inexpressibly sick in body, and terrified in mind. I began now seriously to reflect upon what I had done, and how justly I was overtaken by the judgment of Heaven for my wicked leaving⁵⁾ my father's

³¹⁾ *concern* = Teilnahme, Sorge, Kummer.

II. — ¹⁾ Cf. I, 19. — ²⁾ *Hull* am *Humber*, in der Grafschaft York, ist der Haupthafen der Nordostküste Englands. — ³⁾ Nach *on board* wird die Präposition *of* gewöhnlich ausgelassen. — ⁴⁾ *but* nach *no sooner* ist veraltet, statt dessen gebraucht man jetzt *than* (Maetzner III, 459). — ⁵⁾ *wicked leaving* = böswilliges Verlassen.

house, and abandoning my duty. All the good counsel of my parents, my father's tears and my mother's entreaties, came now fresh into my mind; and my conscience, which was not yet come to the pitch of hardness⁶⁾ to which it has been since, reproached me with the contempt of advice, and the breach of my duty to God and my father.

All this while the storm increased, and the sea went very high, though nothing like what I have seen many times since; no, nor what I saw a few days after: but it was enough to affect me then, who⁷⁾ was but a young sailor, and had never known any thing of the matter. I expected every wave would have swallowed us up, and that every time the ship fell down, as I thought it did, in the trough⁸⁾ or hollow of the sea, we should never rise more: in this agony of mind I made many vows and resolutions, that if it would please God to spare my life in this one voyage, if ever I got once my foot upon dry land again, I would go directly home to my father, and never set it into a ship again while I lived; that I would take his advice, and never run myself into such miseries as these any more. Now I saw plainly the goodness of his observations about the middle station of life, how easy, how comfortably he had lived all his days, and never had been exposed to tempests at sea, or troubles on shore; and, in short, I resolved that I would, like a true repenting prodigal⁹⁾; go home to my father.

These wise and sober thoughts continued all the while the storm continued, and indeed some time after; but the next day, the wind was abated, and the sea calmer, and I began to be a little inured¹⁰⁾ to it: however, I was very grave for all that day, being also a little sea-sick still; but towards night the weather cleared up, the wind was quite over, and a charming fine evening followed; the sun went down perfectly clear, and rose so the next morning; and having little or no wind, and a smooth sea, the sun shining upon it, the sight was, as I thought, the most delightful that ever I saw.

⁶⁾ *pitch of hardness* = äußerster Grad der Verhärtung. — ⁷⁾ *who* = der ich, denn *I* fällt aus. — ⁸⁾ *trough*, spr. troff, nhd. Trog, ist der Raum zwischen zwei Wellen, das Wellenthal. — ⁹⁾ *prodigal*, spr. prod'-ig'l, Verschwender, heisst in der Bibel der verlorene Sohn. — ¹⁰⁾ *inured to* = gewöhnt an, abgehärtet gegen; cf. LXIII, 16.

I had slept well in the night, and was now no more sea-sick, but very cheerful, looking with wonder upon the sea that was so rough ¹¹⁾ and terrible the day before, and could be so calm and so pleasant ¹²⁾ in so little a time after. And now, lest my good resolutions should continue, my companion who had indeed enticed me away ¹³⁾, comes to me. "Well, Bob ¹⁴⁾," says he, clapping me upon the shoulder, "how do you do after it? I warrant you were frightened, wer'n't you ¹⁵⁾ last night, when it blew but a cap-full ¹⁶⁾ of wind?" — "A cap-full d'you call it?" said I; "'t was a terrible storm." — "A storm, you fool you," replies he, "do you call that a storm? why it was nothing at all; give us but a good ship and sea-room ¹⁷⁾, and we think nothing of such a squall ¹⁸⁾ of wind as that; but you're but a fresh-water sailor, Bob. Come let us make a bowl of punch, and we'll forget all that: d'ye see what charming weather 't is now?" To make short this sad part of my story, we went the way of all sailors; the punch was made, and I was made half drunk with it; and in that one night's wickedness I drowned all my repentance, all my reflections upon my past conduct, all my resolutions for the future. In a word, as the sea was returned to its smoothness of surface and settled calmness by the abatement of that storm, so the hurry ¹⁹⁾ of my thoughts being over, my fears and apprehensions of being swallowed up by the sea being forgotten, and the current ²⁰⁾ of my former desires returned, I entirely forgot the vows and promises that I made in my distress. I found, indeed, some intervals of reflection; and the serious thoughts did, as it were ²¹⁾, endeavour to return again sometimes; but I shook them off, and roused myself from them as it were from a distemper ²²⁾,

11) Spr. rúff. — 12) Spr. pléasant. — 13) *to entice away* = weglocken, verleiten, verführen. — 14) *Bob* = Abkürzung für Robert. — 15) = *were you not*; ebenso sind die folgenden Zusammenziehungen: *you're* = *you are*, *d'you* = *do you*, *'t was* = *it was*, *we'll* = *we will* in der Umgangssprache, und da vornehmlich bei gewöhnlichen Leuten, im Gebrauch. — 16) *a cap-full*, eine Mütze voll, ist die scherzhafte Bezeichnung einer unbestimmten Menge. — 17) *sèa-room*, Seeraum, freies Fahrwasser, so dass kein Land in der Nähe ist. — 18) *squall* ist der plötzliche Stoss (des Windes), die Bö. — 19) *húrry* = Eile, Jagen, Tumult. — 20) *cúrrént* = (regelmässiger) Lauf. — 21) *as it were* = als ob es wäre, gleichsam. — 22) *distémper*, eig. „Verstimmung“, bezeichnet die Krankheit im

and applying myself to drinking and company, soon mastered the return of those fits, for so I called them; and I had in five or six days got as complete a victory over my conscience, as any young fellow that resolved not to be troubled with it, could desire: but I was to have another trial for it still; and Providence, as in such cases generally it does, resolved to leave me entirely without excuse; for if I would not take this for a deliverance, the next was to be such a one, as the worst and most hardened wretch among us would confess both the danger and the mercy.

The sixth day of our being at sea we came into Yarmouth Roads²³⁾; the wind having been contrary, and the weather calm, we had made but little way since the storm. Here we were obliged to come to an anchor²⁴⁾, and here we lay, the wind continuing contrary, viz.²⁵⁾ at south-west, for seven or eight days, during which time a great many ships from Newcastle came into the same roads, as the common harbour where the ships might wait for a wind for the River²⁶⁾.

By this time it blew a terrible storm indeed; and now I began to see terror and amazement in the faces even of the seamen themselves. The master, though vigilant in the business of preserving the ship, yet as he went in and out of his cabin by me, I could hear him softly to himself say several times, "Lord, be merciful to us! we shall be all lost; we shall be all undone!" and the like. During these first hurries I was stupid, lying still in my cabin, which was in the steerage²⁷⁾, and cannot describe my temper: I could ill resume the first penitence which I had so apparently trampled upon, and hardened myself against: I thought the bitterness of death had been past; and that this would be nothing too like the first: but when the master himself came by me, as I said just now, and said we should be all lost, I was dreadfully

allgemeinen, die Unpäßlichkeit, wird jetzt aber nur in Bezug auf Tiere gebraucht. Sonst ist *disease*, eig. „Mifsbehagen“, der technische Ausdruck für Krankheit, daneben *illness*, „schlechte Beschaffenheit“, das gebräuchlichste Wort in der Umgangssprache. — ²³⁾ *Yarmouth Roads* = die Rhede, der Vorhafen von Yarmouth. — ²⁴⁾ *to come to an anchor* = vor Anker gehen. — ²⁵⁾ *viz*, entstanden aus lat. *videlicet* = nämlich, heißt und wird gelesen: *namely*. — ²⁶⁾ Die Themse ist gemeint. — ²⁷⁾ *steerage*, eig. Vorrichtung zum Steuern, heißt auch das Hinterteil des Schiffes.

frighted: I got up out of my cabin, and looked out; but such a dismal sight I never saw; the sea went mountains high, and broke upon us every three or four minutes: when I could look about, I could see nothing but distress round us: two ships that rid near us, we found, had cut their masts by the board, being deep laden; and our men cried out, that a ship which rid about a mile a-head of us was foundered²⁸⁾. Two more ships being driven from their anchors, were run out of the roads to sea, at all adventures²⁹⁾, and that not with a mast standing. The light ships fared the best, as not so much labouring in the sea; but two or three of them drove, and came close by us, running away with only their spritsail³⁰⁾ out before the wind.

Towards evening the mate and boatswain begged the master³¹⁾ of our ship to let them cut away the foremast, which he was very unwilling to do: but the boatswain protesting to him, that if he did not, the ship would founder, he consented; and when they had cut away the fore-mast, the main-mast stood so loose, and shook the ship so much, they were obliged to cut her away also, and make a clear deck.

+ Any one must judge what a condition I must be in at all this, who was but a young sailor, and who had been in such a fright before at but a little. But if I can express at this distance³²⁾ the thoughts I had about me at that time, I was in tenfold more horror of mind upon account of my former convictions, and the having returned from them to the resolutions I had wickedly taken at first, than I was at death itself; and these, added to the terror of the storm, put me into such a condition, that I can by no words describe it. But the worst was not come yet; the storm continued with such fury, that the seamen themselves acknowledged they had never seen a worse. We had a good ship, but she was deep laden, and wallowed³³⁾ in the sea, that the seamen every now

²⁸⁾ *to founder* = scheitern, zu Grunde gehen, von lat. *fundus* = Grund. — ²⁹⁾ *at all adventures* = aufs Geratewohl, allem preisgegeben. — ³⁰⁾ *spritsail*, Sprietsegel, das große viereckige Segel. — ³¹⁾ *mâte* ist der Steuermann, *bōatswain* der Hochbootsmann, *māster* der Führer (Kapitän) des Schiffes; das Kriegsschiff hat einen *cáptain*. — ³²⁾ *distance* bezeichnet nicht nur die räumliche, sondern auch die zeitliche Entfernung. — ³³⁾ *to wallōw*, nhd. wälzen, ist eine langsame, schwerfällige Bewegung, die der Seemann mit rollen, schlingern bezeichnet.

and then cried out, she would founder. It was my advantage in one respect, that I did not know what they meant be *founder*, till I inquired. However, the storm was so violent, that I saw what is not often seen, the master, the boat-swain, and some others more sensible than the rest, at their prayers, and expecting every moment when the ship would go to the bottom. In the middle of the night, and under all the rest of our distresses, one of the men that had been down on purpose to see, cried out, we had sprung a leak³⁴⁾; another said, there was³⁵⁾ four feet water in the hold³⁶⁾. Then all hands were called to the pump. At that very word my heart, as I thought, died within me, and I fell backwards upon the side of my bed where I sat, into the cabin. However, the men roused me, and told me, that I, that was able to do nothing before, was as well able to pump as another; at which I stirred up, and went to the pump and worked very heartily. While this was doing³⁷⁾, the master seeing some light colliers³⁸⁾, who, not able to ride out the storm³⁹⁾, were obliged to slip and run away to the sea, and would come near us, ordered to fire a gun as a signal of distress. I, who knew nothing what they meant, was so surprised, that I thought the ship had broke, or some dreadful thing happened. In a word, I was so surprised, that I fell down in a swoon. As this was a time when every body had his own life to think of, nobody minded me, or what was become of me; but another man stept up to the pump, and thrusting me aside with his foot, let me lie, thinking I had been dead; and it was a great while before I came to myself.

We worked on; but the water increasing in the hold, it was apparent that the ship would founder; and though the storm began to abate a little, yet as it was not possible she could swim till we might run into any port, so the master continued firing guns for help; and I light ship, who had rid it out just a-head of us, ventured a boat out to help us. It was with the utmost hazard the boat came near us, but it was impossible for us to get on board, or for the boat to lie

³⁴⁾ *to spring a leak* = ein Leck bekommen. — ³⁵⁾ *was* ist auf *water* bezogen, daher der Singular. — ³⁶⁾ *hold* ist der Kielraum (der unterste Raum) des Schiffes. — ³⁷⁾ „Während dies vor sich ging“. — ³⁸⁾ *collier*, spr. kól'-yer, Kohlenschiff. — ³⁹⁾ *to ride out the storm* = den Sturm vor Anker aushalten.

near the ship's side, till at last the men rowing very heartily, and venturing their lives to save ours, our men cast them a rope over the stern with a buoy⁴⁰⁾ to it, and then veered it out⁴¹⁾ a great length, which they, after much labour and hazard, took hold of, and we hauled them close under our stern, and got all into their boat. It was to no purpose for them or us, after we were in the boat, to think of reaching to their own ship; so all agreed to let her drive, and only to pull her in towards shore as much as we could; and our master promised them, that if the boat was staved⁴²⁾ upon shore he would make it good to their master: so partly rowing and partly driving, our boat went away to the northward, sloping⁴³⁾ towards the shore almost as far as Winterton Ness⁴⁴⁾.

We were not much more than a quarter of an hour out of our ship but we saw her sink, and then I understood for the first time what was meant by a ship foundering in the sea. I must acknowledge I had hardly eyes to look up when the seamen told me she was sinking; for from that moment they rather put me into the boat, than that I might be said to go in; my heart was, as it were, dead within me, partly with fright, partly with horror of mind, and the thoughts of what was yet before me.

While we were in this condition, the men yet labouring at the oar to bring the boat near the shore, we could see (when, our boat mounting the waves, we were able to see the shore) a great many people running along the strand to assist us when we should come near; but we made but slow way towards the shore; nor were we able to reach the shore, till, being past the light-house at Winterton, the shore falls off to the westward, towards Cromer, and so the land broke off a little the violence of the wind. Here we got in, and, though not without much difficulty, got all safe on shore, and walked afterwards on foot to Yarmouth, where, as unfortunate men, we were used with great humanity, as well by the magistrates of the town, who assigned us good quarters, as by particular

⁴⁰⁾ *buoy*, spr. *bōy*, = Boje, Wahrtonne. — ⁴¹⁾ *to veer out* = ablaufen, hingleiten lassen. — ⁴²⁾ *to stave* = Dauben (Stäbe) zerschlagen, den Boden ausschlagen; cf. XXXVIII, 2. — ⁴³⁾ *to slope* = schräg laufen. — ⁴⁴⁾ *ness* heisst Landspitze (Vorgebirge); Winterton liegt nordwestlich von Yarmouth.

merchants and owners of ships, and had money given us⁴⁵⁾ sufficient to carry us either to London or back to Hull, as we thought fit.

III. — Had I now had the sense to have gone back to Hull, and have gone home, I had been happy, and my father, an emblem of our blessed Saviour's parable, had even killed the fatted calf for me: for hearing the ship I went away in was cast away in Yarmouth Roads, it was a great while before he had any assurances that I was not drowned.

But my ill fate pushed me on now with an obstinacy that nothing could resist; and though I had several times loud calls from my reason, and my more composed judgment¹⁾, to go home, yet I had no power to do it. I know not what to call this, nor will I urge that it is a secret overruling decree²⁾ that hurries us on to be the instruments of our own destruction, even though it be³⁾ before us, and that we rush upon it with our eyes open⁴⁾. Certainly, nothing but some such decreed unavoidable misery attending⁴⁾, and which it was impossible for me to escape, could have pushed me forward against the calm reasonings and persuasions of my most retired thoughts, and against two such visible instructions as I had met with in my first attempt.

My comrade, who had helped to harden me before, and who was the master's son, was now less forward⁵⁾ than I. The first time he spoke to me after we were at Yarmouth, which was not till two or three days, for we were separated in the town to several quarters; I say, the first time he saw me, it appeared his tone was altered, and, looking very melancholy, and shaking his head, asked me how I did, and telling his father who I was, and how I had come this voyage only for a trial, in order to go farther abroad: his father turning to me with a very grave and concerned tone, "Young man," says he, "you ought never to go to sea any more; you ought to take this for a plain and visible token that you are

⁴⁵⁾ *we had money given us* = uns wurde Geld gegeben.

III. — ¹⁾ *composed judgment* = besonnenes Urteil, ruhige Überlegung. — ²⁾ *a secret overruling decree* = ein geheimes übermächtiges Gebot. — ³⁾ *Nach if* = wenn und *though* = obgleich steht der Konjunktiv. — ⁴⁾ NB. Stellung! — ⁵⁾ *forward* = keck, naseweis.

not to be a seafaring man." — "Why, Sir," said I, "will you go to sea no more?" "That is another case," said he; "it is my calling, and therefore my duty; but as you made this voyage for a trial, you see what a taste Heaven has given you of what you are to expect if you persist. Perhaps this has all befallen us on your account, like Jonah⁶⁾ in the ship of Tarshish. Pray," continues he, "what are you; and on what account did you go to sea?" Upon that I told him some of my story; at the end of which he burst out with a strange kind of passion; "What had I done," says he, "that such an unhappy wretch should come into my ship? I would not set my foot in the same ship with thee again for a thousand pounds." This indeed was, as I said, an excursion of his spirits⁷⁾, which were yet agitated by the sense of his loss, and was farther than he could have authority to go. However, he afterwards talked very gravely to me, exhorting me to go back to my father, and not tempt Providence to my ruin; told me I might see a visible hand of Heaven against me. "And young man," said he, "depend upon it, if you do not go back, wherever you go, you will meet with nothing but disasters and disappointments, till your father's words are fulfilled upon you."

We parted soon after; for I made him little answer, and I saw him no more; which way he went, I know not. As for me, having some money in my pocket, I travelled to London by land; and there, as well as on the road, had many struggles with myself, what course of life I should take, and whether I should go home, or go to sea.

As to going home, shame opposed the best motions that offered to my thoughts; and it immediately occurred to me how I should be laughed at among the neighbours, and should be ashamed to see, not my father and mother only, but even every body else; from whence I have since often observed, how incongruous⁸⁾ and irrational the common temper of mankind is, especially of youth, to that reason which ought to guide them in such cases, viz. that they are not ashamed to sin, and yet are ashamed to repent; not ashamed of the action

6) *Jōnāh* = Jonas; cf. Buch Jonas, Kap. I, Vers 2. — 7) *an excursion of his spirits* = ein Ausbruch seiner übeln Laune. Daher erklärt sich auch das vorhergehende *thee*. — 8) *incóngruous* = ungereimt (nicht vernunftgemäfs).

for which they ought justly to be esteemed fools, but are ashamed of the returning, which only can make them be esteemed wise men.

In this state of life, however, I remained some time, uncertain what measures to take, and what course of life to lead. An irresistible reluctance continued to going home; and as I stayed a while, the remembrance of the distress I had been in wore off⁹⁾; and as that abated, the little motion I had in my desires to a return wore off with it, till at last I quite laid aside the thoughts of it, and looked out for a voyage.

That evil influence which carried me first away from my father's house, which hurried me into the wild and indigested notion¹⁰⁾ of raising my fortune; and that impressed those conceits so forcibly upon me, as to make me deaf to all good advice, and to the entreaties and even the commands of my father: I say, the same influence, whatever it was, presented the most unfortunate of all enterprises to my view; and I went on board a vessel bound to the coast of Africa; or, as our sailors vulgarly call it, a voyage to Guinea¹¹⁾.

It was my great misfortune that in all these adventures I did not ship myself as a sailor; whereby, though I might indeed have worked a little harder than ordinary, yet at the same time I had learnt the duty and office of a foremast-man¹²⁾; and in time might have qualified myself for a mate¹³⁾ or lieutenant, if not for a master. But as it was always my fate to choose for the worse, so I did here; for having money in my pocket, and good clothes upon my back, I would always go on board in the habit of a gentleman; and so I neither had any business in the ship, nor learnt to do any.

It was my lot first of all to fall into pretty good company in London, which does not always happen to such loose and unguided young fellows as I then was; the devil generally not omitting to lay some snare for them very early: but it was not so with me. I first fell acquainted¹⁴⁾ with the master of a ship who had been on the coast of Guinea; and who, having had very good success there, was resolved to go again; this captain taking a fancy¹⁵⁾ to my conversation, which was not at all disagreeable at that time, hearing me say I had

⁹⁾ Cf. I, 4. — ¹⁰⁾ *indigested notion* = unreife Idee. — ¹¹⁾ Spr. gín'-nè; cf. XLIV, 4. — ¹²⁾ *foremast-man* = Matrose vor dem Fockmaste. — ¹³⁾ Cf. II, 31. — ¹⁴⁾ *to fall acquainted* = bekannt werden. — ¹⁵⁾ *to take a fancy* = Gefallen finden.

a mind to see the world, told me if I would go the voyage with him I should be at no expense; I should be his messmate¹⁶⁾ and his companion; and if I could carry any thing with me, I should have all the advantage of it that the trade would admit; and perhaps I might meet with some encouragement.

I embraced the offer¹⁷⁾; and entering into a strict friendship with this captain, who was an honest, plain-dealing man, I went the voyage with him, and carried a small adventure¹⁸⁾ with me, which, by the disinterested honesty of my friend the captain, I increased very considerably; for I carried about £40¹⁹⁾ in such toys and trifles as the captain directed me to buy. This £40 I had mustered together by the assistance of some of my relations whom I corresponded with, and who, I believe, got my father, or at least my mother, to contribute so much as that to my first adventure.

This was the only voyage which I may say was successful in all my adventures, and which I owe to the integrity²⁰⁾ and honesty of my friend the captain; under whom also I got a competent²¹⁾ knowledge of the mathematics and the rules of navigation, learned how to keep an account of the ship's course, take an observation, and, in short, to understand some things that were needful to be understood by a sailor: for, as he took delight to introduce me, I took delight to learn; and, in a word, this voyage made me both a sailor and a merchant: for I brought home five pounds nine ounces of gold-dust for my adventure, which yielded me in London at my return almost £300, and this filled me with those aspiring thoughts which have since so completed my ruin.

Yet even in this voyage I had my misfortunes too; particularly, that I was continually sick, being thrown into a violent calenture²²⁾ by the excessive heat of the climate; our prin-

¹⁶⁾ *méssmate* = Tischgenosse, Kamerad. — ¹⁷⁾ *to embrace the offer* = das Anerbieten annehmen. — ¹⁸⁾ *adventure*, Beilast, heißen die Waren, welche der Matrose auf dem Schiffe frei mitnehmen darf, um dieselben auswärts zu seinem Vorteil zu verkaufen. — ¹⁹⁾ Das Zeichen bedeutet *pound* = Pfund Sterling (eine Rechenmünze im Werte von 20 Mark, als Goldmünze = 20 Mark 10 Pf.); es ist entstanden aus *lb* = *libera* = Pfund; cf. LVIII, 2. — ²⁰⁾ *integrity* hier = Redlichkeit. — ²¹⁾ Cf. I, 10. — ²²⁾ *calenture*, auf der ersten betont, ist das hitzige Klimafieber der Tropen.

cipal trading being upon the coast, from the latitude of 15 degrees north even to the line²³⁾ itself.

I was now set up²⁴⁾ for a Guinea trader²⁵⁾; and my friend, to my great misfortune, dying soon after his arrival, I resolved to go the same voyage again, and I embarked in the same vessel with one who was his mate in the former voyage, and had now got the command of the ship. This was the unhappiest voyage that ever man made; for though I did not carry quite £ 100 of my new-gained wealth, so that I had £ 200 left, and which I lodged²⁶⁾ with my friend's widow, who was very just to me, yet I fell into terrible misfortunes in this voyage; and the first was this, viz. our ship making her course towards the Canary Islands, or rather between those islands and the African shore, was surprised in the grey of the morning by a Turkish rover²⁷⁾ of Sallee²⁸⁾, who gave chase²⁹⁾ to us with all the sail she could make. We crowded also as much canvass as our yards would spread, or our masts carry, to have got clear³⁰⁾; but finding the pirate gained upon³¹⁾ us, and would certainly come up with us in a few hours, we prepared to fight; our ship having twelve guns and the rogue eighteen. About three in the afternoon he came up with us, and bringing to³²⁾, by mistake, just athwart our quarter, instead of athwart our stern, as he intended, we brought eight of our guns to bear on that side, and poured in a broadside upon him, which made him sheer off again, after returning our fire, and pouring in also his small-shot from near 200 men which he had on board. However, we had not a man touched, all our men keeping close³³⁾. He prepared to attack us again, and we to defend ourselves; but laying us on board the next time upon our other quarter, he entered sixty men upon our decks, who immediately fell to³⁴⁾ cutting and hacking the sails and rigging. We plied them with small-shot, half-pikes³⁵⁾,

²³⁾ *the line*, die Linie, ist der Äquator; so heißt letzterer auch bei unsern Seeleuten; cf. XXI, 20. — ²⁴⁾ *to be set up* = sich niedergelassen haben. — ²⁵⁾ *a Guinea trader* = ein Kaufmann, der nach Guinea Handel treibt. — ²⁶⁾ *to lodge* = logieren, unterbringen. — ²⁷⁾ *röver* = Seeräuber, Korsar; NB. *to röve* = herumstreifen. — ²⁸⁾ Stadt in Marokko. — ²⁹⁾ *to give chase to* = Jagd machen auf. — ³⁰⁾ „um los zu kommen“. — ³¹⁾ *to gain upon* = näher kommen. — ³²⁾ *to bring to* = beidrehen. — ³³⁾ *to keep close* = sich verbergen. — ³⁴⁾ *to fall to* = sich daran machen. — ³⁵⁾ *half-pike* ist die Enterpieke.

powder-chests³⁶⁾, and such like, and cleared our deck of them twice. However, to cut short this melancholy part of our story, our ship being disabled, and three of our men killed and eight wounded, we were obliged to yield, and were carried all prisoners into Sallee, a port belonging to the Moors³⁷⁾.

IV. — The usage I had there was not so dreadful as at first apprehended; nor was I carried up the country to the emperor's court, as the rest of our men were, but was kept by the captain of the rover as his proper prize, and made his slave, being young and nimble¹⁾, and fit for his business. At this surprising change of my circumstances, from a merchant to a miserable slave, I was perfectly overwhelmed; and now I looked back upon my father's prophetic discourse to me, that I should be miserable, and have none to relieve me, which I thought was now so effectually brought to pass, that I could not be worse; that now the hand of Heaven had overtaken me, and I was undone without redemption: but, alas! this was but a taste of the misery I was to go through, as will appear in the sequel²⁾ of this story³⁾.

As my new patron, or master, had taken me home to his house, so I was in hopes that he would take me with him when he went to sea again, believing that it would sometime or other be his fate to be taken by a Spanish or Portugal man of war; and that then I should be set at liberty. But this hope of mine⁴⁾ was soon taken away; for when he went to sea, he left me on shore to look after his little garden, and do the common drudgery⁵⁾ of slaves about his house; and when he came home again from his cruise, he ordered me to lie in the cabin to look after the ship.

Here I meditated nothing but my escape, and what method I might take to effect it, but found no way that had the least probability in it: nothing presented to make the supposition

³⁶⁾ *powder-chest* = Sprengkiste, Handgranate. — ³⁷⁾ *Moors*, Mauren, heisst das Mischvolk aus Arabern, Berbern und Fremdlingen, welches die Nordwestküste von Afrika bewohnt.

IV. — ¹⁾ *nimble* ist, wer mit Leichtigkeit und Schnelligkeit dahineilt. — ²⁾ *in the sequel* = im Verfolg, im Verlauf. — ³⁾ *history* = Weltgeschichte, das daraus abgekürzte *story* = Geschichte, der ein weniger wichtiges Ereignis oder Erdichtetes zu Grunde liegt, *tale* = Märchen. — ⁴⁾ „diese meine Hoffnung“. — ⁵⁾ *drudgery* ist die schwere Arbeit, Plackerei.

of it rational; for I had nobody to communicate it to that ⁶⁾ would embark with me, no fellow slave, no Englishman, Irishman, or Scotsman there but myself; so that for two years, though I often pleased myself with the imagination, yet I never had the least encouraging prospect of putting it in practice.

After about two years an odd circumstance presented itself, which put the old thought of making some attempt for my liberty again in my head. My patron lying at home longer than usual without fitting out his ship, which, as I heard, was for want of money, he used constantly, once or twice a-week, sometimes oftener, if the weather was fair, to take the ship's pinnace ⁷⁾, and go out into the road a fishing ⁸⁾; and as he always took me and a young Maresco ⁹⁾ with him to row the boat, we made him very merry, and I proved very dexterous in catching fish; insomuch that sometimes he would send me with a Moor, one of his kinsmen, and the youth the Maresco, as they called him, to catch a dish of fish for him.

It happened one time, that going a fishing in a stark ¹⁰⁾ calm morning, a fog rose so thick, that though we were not half a league ¹¹⁾ from the shore we lost sight of it; and rowing we knew not whither or which way, we laboured all day, and all the next night, and when the morning came we found we had pulled off to sea instead of pulling in for the shore; and that we were at least two leagues from the shore: however, we got well in again, though with a great deal of labour and some danger; for the wind began to blow pretty fresh in the morning; but particularly we were all very hungry.

But our patron, warned by this disaster, resolved to take more care of himself for the future; and having lying by him the long-boat ¹²⁾ of our English ship he had taken, he resolved he would not go a fishing any more without a compass and some provision; so he ordered the carpenter of his ship, who also was an English slave, to build a little state-

⁶⁾ Erkläre: „ich hatte niemanden, dem ich es mitteilen konnte und der —“. — ⁷⁾ *pinnace* = Pinasse ist das zweitkleinere Boot der Kriegsschiffe, das Jagdboot. — ⁸⁾ *to go a fishing* = auf den Fischfang gehen, wie *to go a hunting* = auf die Jagd gehen. — ⁹⁾ *Maresco* = *Morisco* = Maure; das Wort ist veraltet und wird jetzt ersetzt durch Moor. — ¹⁰⁾ *stark* = völlig, gänzlich; es entspricht vollkommen unserm Adverbium stark. — ¹¹⁾ *league*, Seemeile = 3 englischen Meilen. — ¹²⁾ *long-boat* ist das große Boot, die Barkasse des Schiffes.

room¹³⁾, or cabin, in the middle of the long-boat, like that of a barge, with a place to stand behind it to steer and haul home¹⁴⁾ the main-sheet; and room before for a hand or two to stand and work the sails: she sailed with what we call a shoulder of mutton sail¹⁵⁾.

We went frequently out with this boat a fishing, and as I was most dexterous to catch fish for him, he never went without me. It happened that he had appointed to go out in this boat, either for pleasure or for fish, with two or three Moors of some distinction in that place, and for whom he had provided extraordinarily, and had therefore sent on board the boat over-night a larger store of provisions than ordinary; and had ordered me to get ready three fuzees¹⁶⁾ with powder and shot, which were on board his ship; for that they designed some sport of fowling¹⁷⁾ as well as fishing.

I got all things ready as he had directed, and waited the next morning with the boat washed clean, her ancient and pendants¹⁸⁾ out, and every thing to accommodate his guests; when by and by my patron came on board alone, and told me his guests had put off going, upon some business that fell out¹⁹⁾, and ordered me with the man and boy, as usual, to go out with the boat and catch them some fish, for that his friends were to sup at his house; and commanded that as soon as I got some fish I should bring it home to his house; all which I prepared to do.

This moment my former notions of deliverance darted²⁰⁾ into my thoughts, for now I found I was like to have a little ship at my command; and my master being gone, I prepared to furnish myself, not for fishing business²¹⁾, but for a voyage; though I knew not, neither did I so much as consider, whither I should steer; for any where, to get out of that place, was my way.

¹³⁾ *state-room* heisst die Abteilung für Passagiere in einer Schiffskajüte. — ¹⁴⁾ *to haul home* = heimholen, einziehen. — ¹⁵⁾ *a shoulder of mutton sail* = ein Segel, wie das Schulterblatt eines Hammels gestaltet, also ein dreieckiges Segel, wie solche dort heute noch geführt werden. — ¹⁶⁾ *fuzee*, spr. fuzè, = *fusee* = *fusil* = Flinte. — ¹⁷⁾ *spōrt of fowling* = Jagd auf Seevögel. — ¹⁸⁾ *ancient* ist die Nationalflagge, *péndant* = Wimpel. — ¹⁹⁾ *to fall out* hier = sich ereignen, vorfallen, dazwischen kommen. — ²⁰⁾ „meine früheren Befreiungsgedanken schossen mir in den Kopf“. — ²¹⁾ *fish-ing business* = Fischerei, Fischzug.

My first contrivance²²⁾ was to make a pretence to speak to this Moor, to get something for our subsistence on board; for I told him we must not presume to eat of our patron's bread; he said, that was true: so he brought a large basket of rusk²³⁾ or biscuit of their kind, and three jars with fresh water, into the boat. I knew where my patron's case of bottles stood, which it was evident, by the make, were taken out of some English prize, and I conveyed them into the boat while the Moor was on shore, as if they had been there before for our master: I conveyed also a great lump of bees-wax into the boat, which weighed above half a hundred weight²⁴⁾, with a parcel of twine or thread, a hatchet, a saw, and a hammer, all of which were of great use to us afterwards, especially the wax to make candles. Another trick I tried upon him, which he innocently came into also; his name was Ismael, whom they call Muley, or Moely; so I called to him, "Moely", said I, "our patron's guns are on board the boat; can you not get a little powder and shot? it may be we may kill some alcamies (a fowl like our curlews²⁵⁾) for ourselves, for I know he keeps the gunner's stores in the ship." — "Yes," says he, "I'll bring some;" and accordingly he brought a great leather pouch²⁶⁾ which held about a pound and a half of powder, or rather more; and another with shot, that had five or six pounds, with some bullets, and put all into the boat: at the same time I had found some powder of my master's in the great cabin, with which I filled one of the large bottles in the case, which was almost empty, pouring what was in it into another; and thus furnished with every thing needful, we sailed out of the port to fish. The castle, which is at the entrance of the port, knew who we were, and took no notice of us: and we were not above a mile out of the port before we hauled in our sail, and set us down to fish. The wind blew from the N. N. E. which was contrary to my desire; for had it blown southerly, I had been sure to have made the coast of Spain, and at least reached to the bay of Cadiz; but my resolutions were, blow which way it would, I

²²⁾ *contrivance* = Ausgedachtes, Plan. — ²³⁾ *rusk* = Schiffszwieback. — ²⁴⁾ *hundred weight* = Hundertgewicht, Centner. — ²⁵⁾ *curlew* ist der Brachvogel (*Numenius arquatus*). — ²⁶⁾ *pouch*, frz. poche, Beutel.

would be gone from that horrid place where I was, and leave the rest to fate.

After we had fished some time and caught nothing, for when I had fish²⁷⁾ on my hook I would not pull them up, that he might not see them, I said to the Moor, "This will not do; our master will not be thus served; we must stand farther off." He, thinking no harm²⁸⁾, agreed, and being in the head of the boat set the sails; and as I had the helm I run the boat out near a league farther, and then brought²⁹⁾ her to as if I would fish; when giving the boy the helm, I stepped forward to where the Moor was, and making as if I stopped for something behind him, I took him by surprise with my arm under his twist³⁰⁾, and tossed him clear overboard into the sea. He rose immediately, for he swam like a cork, and called to me, begged to be taken in, told me he would go all over the world with me. He swam so strong after the boat, that he would have reached me very quickly, there being but little wind; upon which I stepped into the cabin, and fetching one of the fowling-pieces, I presented it at him, and told him I had done him no hurt, and if he would be quiet I would do him none: "But," said I, "you swim well enough to reach to the shore, and the sea is calm; make the best of your way to shore, and I will do you no harm; but if you come near the boat I'll shoot you through the head, for I am resolved to have my liberty:" so he turned himself about, and swam for the shore, and I make no doubt but³¹⁾ he reached it with ease, for he was an excellent swimmer.

V. — I could have been content to have taken this Moor with me, and have drowned the boy, but there was no venturing to trust him. When he was gone I turned to the boy, whom they called Xury, and said to him, "Xury, if you will be faithful to me I'll make you a great man; but if you will not stroke your face¹⁾ to be true to me," that is, swear

²⁷⁾ *fish* ist hier ein Kollektivum. — ²⁸⁾ *thinking no harm* = nichts Böses ahnend. — ²⁹⁾ Cf. III, 32. — ³⁰⁾ *twist* = Kniekehle gilt als veraltet. — ³¹⁾ *I make no doubt but* = ich hege keinen Zweifel, dafs nicht; spr. *dout*.

V. — ¹⁾ Der Muhamedaner schwört beim Barte des Propheten, indem er den eigenen streicht, dies muß der Knabe durch die verlangte Geste andeuten.

by Mahomet and his father's beard. "I must throw you into the sea too." The boy smiled in my face, and spoke so innocently, that I could not mistrust him, and swore to be faithful to me, and go all over the world with me.

While I was in view of the Moor that was swimming, I stood out directly to sea with the boat, rather stretching to windward, that they might think me gone towards the Straits' mouth²⁾; (as indeed any one that had been in their wits must have been supposed to do) for who would have supposed we were sailed on to the southward to the truly Barbarian coast, where whole nations of Negroes were sure to surround us with their canoes, and destroy us; where we could never once go on shore but we should be devoured by savage beasts, or more merciless savages of human kind?

But as soon as it grew dusk in the evening, I changed my course, and steered directly south and by east, bending my course a little towards the east, that I might keep in with³⁾ the shore: and having a fair, fresh gale of wind, and a smooth, quiet sea, I made such sail that I believe by the next day at three o'clock in the afternoon, when I first made the land, I could not be less than 150 miles south of Sallee; quite beyond the Emperor of Morocco's dominions, or indeed of any other king thereabouts, for we saw no people.

Yet such was the fright I had taken at the Moors, and the dreadful apprehensions I had of falling into their hands, that I would not stop, or go on shore, or come to an anchor; the wind continuing fair till I had sailed in that manner five days; and then the wind shifting to the southward, I concluded also that if any of our vessels were in chase of me, they also would now give over; so I ventured to make to the coast, and came to an anchor in the mouth of a little river, I knew not what, or where; neither what latitude, what country, what nation, or what river: I neither saw, or desired to see any people; the principal thing I wanted was fresh water. We came into this creek in the evening, resolving to swim on shore as soon as it was dark, and discover the country; but, as soon as it was quite dark, we heard

²⁾ Die Meerenge von Gibraltar ist gemeint. — ³⁾ *to keep in with* hier = nahe bleiben.

such dreadful noises of the barking, roaring, and howling of wild creatures, of we knew not what kinds, that the poor boy was ready to die with fear, and begged of me not to go on shore till day. "Well, Xury," said I, "then I won't⁴); but it may be we may see men by day, who will be as bad to us as those lions." — "Then we give them the shoot gun," says Xury, laughing, "make them run wey⁵).". Such English Xury spoke by conversing among us slaves. However I was glad to see the boy so cheerful, and I gave him a dram (out of our patron's case of bottles) to cheer him up. After all, Xury's advice was good, and I took it; we dropped our little anchor, and lay still all night; I say still, for we slept none; for in two or three hours we saw vast great creatures (we knew not what to call them) of many sorts, come down to the sea-shore and run into the water, wallowing⁶) and washing themselves for the pleasure of cooling themselves; and they made such hideous howlings and yellings, that I never indeed heard the like.

Xury was dreadfully frightened, and indeed so was I too; but we were both more frightened when we heard one of these mighty creatures come swimming towards our boat; we could not see him, but we might hear him by his blowing to be a monstrous huge and furious beast; Xury said it was a lion, and it might be so for aught I know⁷); but poor Xury cried to me to weigh the anchor and row away: "No," says I, "Xury; we can slip our cable with the buoy to it, and go off to sea; they cannot follow us far." I had no sooner said so, but I perceived the creature (whatever it was) within two oars' length, which something surprized me; however, I immediately stepped to the cabin-door, and taking up my gun, fired at him; upon which he immediately turned about, and swam towards the shore again.

But it is impossible to describe the horrid noises, and hideous cries and howlings, that were raised, as well upon the edge of the shore as higher within the country, upon the noise or report of the gun, a thing I have some reason to believe those creatures had never heard before: this convinced me that there was no going on shore for us in the

⁴) *won't* = *would not*. — ⁵) *wey für away*. — ⁶) *to wallow* = *sich wälzen*; cf. II, 33. — ⁷) *for aught I know* = *soviel ich weiß*.

night upon that coast, and how to venture on shore in the day was another question too; for to have fallen into the hands of any of the savages, had been as bad as to have fallen into the hands of lions and tigers; at least we were equally apprehensive of the danger of it.

Be that as it would⁸⁾, we were obliged to go on shore somewhere or other for water, for we had not a pint⁹⁾ left in the boat; when or where to get it, was the point: Xury said, if I would let him go on shore with one of the jars, he would find if there was any water, and bring some to me. I asked him why he would go? why I should not go, and he stay in the boat? The boy answered with so much affection, that made me love him ever after. Says he, "If wild mans¹⁰⁾ come, they eat me, you go wey." — "Well, Xury," said I, "we will both go, and if the wild mans come, we will kill them, they shall eat neither of us." So I gave Xury a piece of rusk bread to eat, and a dram out of our patron's case of bottles which I mentioned before; and we hauled the boat in as near the shore as we thought was proper, and so waded on shore; carrying nothing but our arms, and two jars for water.

I did not care to go out of sight of the boat, fearing the coming of canoes with savages down the river: but the boy seeing a low place about a mile up the country, rambled to it; and by and by I saw him come running towards me. I thought he was pursued by some savage, or frightened with some wild beast, and I ran forward towards him to help him, but when I came nearer to him, I saw something hanging over his shoulders, which was a creature that he had shot, like a hare, but different in colour, and longer legs; however, we were very glad of it, and it was very good meat; but the great joy that poor Xury came with, was to tell me he had found good water, and seen no wild mans.

But we found afterwards that we need not take such pains for water, for a little higher up the creek where we were, we found the water fresh when the tide was out, which flowed but a little way up; so we filled our jars, and feasted on the hare

⁸⁾ *be that as it would* = dem sei, wie ihm wolle. — ⁹⁾ *pint*, Nöfſel, faſt $\frac{1}{8}$ Gallon, 1 Gallon = 4,544 Liter. — ¹⁰⁾ Da er des Englischen noch nicht mächtig iſt, ſo ſpricht er nach Art der kleinen Kinder, welche ja auch viele Formen regelmäſſig bilden.

we had killed, and prepared to go on our way, having seen no footsteps of any human creature in that part of the country.

As I had been one voyage to this coast before, I knew very well that the islands of the Canaries, and the Cape de Verd islands also, lay not far off from the coast. But as I had no instruments to take an observation to know what latitude we were in, and not exactly knowing, or at least remembering what latitude we were in, and knew not where to look for them, or when to stand off to sea¹¹⁾ towards them; otherwise I might now easily have found some of these islands. But my hope was, that if I stood along this coast till I came to that part where the English traded, I should find some of their vessels upon their usual design of trade¹²⁾, that would relieve and take us in.

By the best of my calculation, that place where I now was, must be that country, which, lying between the Emperor of Morocco's dominions and the Negroes, lies waste, and uninhabited, except by wild beasts; the Negroes having abandoned it, and gone farther south for fear of the Moors; and the Moors not thinking it worth inhabiting, by reason of its barrenness¹³⁾; and indeed both forsaking it because of the prodigious numbers of tigers, lions, leopards, and other furious creatures which harbour there; so that the Moors use it for their hunting only, where they go like an army, two or three thousand men at a time; and indeed for near a hundred miles together upon this coast, we saw nothing but a waste, uninhabited country by day, and heard nothing but howlings and roaring of wild beasts by night.

Once or twice in the day-time I thought I saw the Pico of Teneriffe¹⁴⁾, being the high top of the Mountain Teneriffe in the Canaries; and had a great mind to venture out, in hopes of reaching thither; but having tried twice, I was forced in again by contrary winds, the sea also going too high for my little vessel; so I resolved to pursue my first design, and keep along the shore.

Several times I was obliged to land for fresh water, after we had left this place; and once in particular, being early in

¹¹⁾ *to stand off to sea* = in das (offene) Meer hinaus fahren. — ¹²⁾ *design of trade* = Handelsstrasse. — ¹³⁾ *barrenness* = Unfruchtbarkeit. — ¹⁴⁾ Der Pic de Teydes, 3711 m, ist gemeint.

the morning, we came to an anchor under a little point of land which was pretty high; and the tide beginning to flow, we lay still to go farther in. Xury, whose eyes were more about him than it seems mine were, calls softly to me, and tells me that we had best go farther off the shore; "for," says he, "look yonder lies a dreadful monster on the side of that hillock fast asleep." I looked where he pointed, and saw a dreadful monster indeed, for it was a terrible great lion that lay on the side of the shore, under the shade of a piece of the hill that hung as it were a little over him. "Xury," says I, "you shall go on shore and kill him." Xury looked frightened, and said, "Me¹⁵⁾ kill! he eat me at one mouth;" one mouthful he meant: however, I said no more to the boy, but bade him lie still, and I took our biggest gun, which was almost musket-bore¹⁶⁾, and loaded it with a good charge of powder, and with two slugs¹⁷⁾, and laid it down; then I loaded another gun with two bullets; and the third (for we had three pieces) I loaded with five smaller bullets. I took the best aim I could with the first piece to have shot him in the head, but he lay so with his leg raised a little above his nose, that the slugs hit his leg about the knee, and broke the bone. He started up, growling at first, but finding his leg broke, fell down again, and then got up upon three legs, and gave the most hideous roar that ever I heard. I was a little surprised that I had not hit him on the head; however, I took up the second piece immediately, and, though he began to move off, fired again, and shot him in the head, and had the pleasure to see him drop, and make but little noise, but lie struggling for life¹⁸⁾. Then Xury took heart, and would have me let him go¹⁹⁾ on shore; "Well, go," said I; so the boy jumped into the water, and taking a little gun in one hand, swam to shore with the other hand, and coming close to the creature, put the muzzle of the piece to his ear, and shot him in the head again, which dispatched him quite.

This was game indeed to us, but this was no food; and I was very sorry to lose three charges of powder and shot upon a creature that was good for nothing to us. However,

¹⁵⁾ *me* steht hier für *I*. — ¹⁶⁾ *músket-bore* = Musketenkaliber. — ¹⁷⁾ *slúg* = Klumpen, Kugel. — ¹⁸⁾ *to strúggle for life* = ums Leben kämpfen, im Todeskampfe sich winden. — ¹⁹⁾ Konstruktion?!

Xury said he would have some of him; so he comes on board, and asked me to give him the hatchet. "For what, Xury?" said I, "Me cut off his head," said he. However, Xury could not cut off his head, but he cut off a foot, and brought it with him, and it was a monstrous great one.

I bethought myself however, that perhaps the skin of him might one way or other²⁰⁾ be of some value to us; and I resolved to take off his skin if I could. So Xury and I went to work with him; but Xury was much the better workman at it, for I knew very ill how to do it. Indeed it took us both up the whole day, but at last we got off the hide of him, and spreading it on the top of our cabin, the sun effectually dried it in two days' time, and it afterwards served me to lie upon.

After this stop, we made on to the southward continually for ten or twelve days, living very sparing on our provisions, which began to abate very much, and going no oftener into the shore than we were obliged to for fresh water: my design in this was, to make the river Gambia or Senegal, that is to say, any where about the Cape de Verd²¹⁾, where I was in hopes to meet with some European ship; and if I did not, I knew not what course I had to take, but to seek for the islands, or perish there among the Negroes. I knew that all the ships from Europe, which sailed either to the coast of Guinea or to Brasil²²⁾, or to the East Indies²³⁾, made²⁴⁾ this Cape, or those islands; and in a word, I put the whole of my fortune upon this single point, either that I must meet with some ship, or must perish.

VI. — When I had pursued this resolution about ten days longer as I have said, I began to see that the land was inhabited; and in two or three places, as we sailed by, we saw people stand upon the shore to look at us; we could also perceive they were quite black, and stark naked. I was once inclined to have gone on shore to them; but Xury was my better counsellor, and said to me, "No go, no go." How-

²⁰⁾ *one way or other* = auf die eine oder die andere Weise, in irgend einer Hinsicht. — ²¹⁾ *Cape de Verd* = das Grüne Vor- gebirge. — ²²⁾ Spr. Brä-zèel, mit dem Tone auf der zweiten. — ²³⁾ *the East Indies* = Ostindien ist seltener, dafür sagt man gewöhnlich bloß *India*, dagegen stets *the West Indies*. — ²⁴⁾ *to make* hier = ansehn.

ever, I hauled in¹⁾ nearer the shore that I might talk to them, and I found they ran along the shore by me a good way: I observed they had no weapons in their hands, except one, who had a long slender stick, which Xury said was a lance, and that they would throw them a great way with good aim; so I kept at a distance, but talked with them by signs as well as I could; and particularly made signs for something to eat; they beckoned to me to stop my boat, and they would fetch me some meat. Upon this I lowered the top of my sail, and lay by, and two of them ran up into the country, and in less than half an hour came back, and brought with them two pieces of dry flesh and some corn, such as is the produce of their country; but we neither knew what the one or the other was: however, we were willing to accept it, but how to come at it was our next dispute, for I was not for venturing on shore to them, and they were as much afraid of us: but they took a safe way for us all, for they brought it to the shore and laid it down, and went and stood a great way off till we fetched it on board, and then came close to us again.

We made signs of thanks to them, for we had nothing to make them amends²⁾; but an opportunity offered that very instant to oblige them wonderfully: for while we were lying by the shore came two mighty creatures, one pursuing the other (as we took it) with great fury from the mountains towards the sea; whether it was the male pursuing the female, or whether they were in sport or in rage, we could not tell, any more than we could tell whether it was usual or strange, but I believe it was the latter; because, in the first place, those ravenous³⁾ creatures seldom appear but in the night; and in the second place, we found the people terribly frightened, especially the women. The man that had the lance or dart did not fly from them, but the rest did; however, as the two creatures ran directly into the water, they did not seem to offer to fall upon any of the Negroes, but plunged themselves into the sea, and swam about, as if they had come for their diversion: at last, one of them began to come nearer our boat than at first I expected; but I lay

VI. — 1) *to haul in* = anholen, ansegeln. — 2) *to make amends* = vergelten. — 3) *ravenous* = raubgierig.

ready foy⁴⁾ him, for I had loaded my gun with all possible expedition⁵⁾, and bade Xury load both the others. As soon as he came fairly within my reach, I fired, and shot him directly in the head: immediately he sunk down into the water, but rose instantly, and plunged up and down, as if he was struggling for life, and so indeed he was: he immediately made to the shore; but between the wound, which was his mortal hurt, and the strangling of the water, he died just before he reached the shore.

It is impossible to express the astonishment of these poor creatures, at the noise and fire of my gun; some of them were even ready to die for fear, and fell down as dead with the very terror; but when they saw the creature dead, and sunk in the water, and that I made signs to them to come to the shore, they took heart and came to the shore, and began to search for the creature. I found him⁶⁾ by his blood staining the water; and by the help of a rope, which I slung round him, and gave the Negroes to haul, they dragged him on shore, and found that it was a most curious leopard, spotted, and fine to an admirable degree; and the Negroes held up their hands with admiration, to think what it was I had killed him with.

The other creature, frightened with the flash of fire and the noise of the gun, swam on shore, and ran up directly to the mountains from whence they came; nor could I, at that distance, know what it was. I found quickly the Negroes were for eating the flesh of this creature, so I was willing to have them take it as a favour from me; which, when I made signs to them that they might take him, they were very thankful for⁷⁾. Immediately they fell to work with him; and though they had no knife, yet, with a sharpened piece of wood, they took off his skin as readily, and much more readily, than we could have done with a knife. They offered me some of the flesh, which I declined, making as if I would give it them, but made signs for the skin, which they gave me very freely, and brought me a great deal more of their provisions, which,

⁴⁾ *to foy*, bewillkommen, ist veraltet. — ⁵⁾ *with all possible expedition* = mit der größtmöglichen Geschwindigkeit — ⁶⁾ Größere und stärkere Tiere, wie *elephant, lion, bear, horse, dog* etc., werden als Masculina behandelt. — ⁷⁾ Wiederum Nachstellung der Präposition!

though I did not understand, yet I accepted. I then made signs to them for some water, and held out one of my jars to them, turning it bottom upward, to show that it was empty, and that I wanted to have it filled. They called immediately to some of their friends, and there came two women, and brought a great vessel made of earth, and burnt, as I suppose in the sun; this they set down to me, as before, and I sent Xury on shore with my jars, and filled them all three. The women were as stark naked as the men.

I was now furnished with roots and corn, such as it was ⁸⁾, and water; and leaving my friendly Negroes, I made forward for about eleven days more, without offering to go near the shore, till I saw the land run out a great length into the sea, at about the distance of four or five leagues before me; and the sea being very calm, I kept a large offing ⁹⁾, to make this point ¹⁰⁾. At length, doubling the point ¹⁰⁾, at about two leagues from the land, I saw plainly land on the other side, to seaward: then I concluded, as it was most certain indeed, that this was the Cape de Verd, and those the islands, called, from thence, Cape de Verd Islands. However, they were at a great distance, and I could not well tell what I had best to do; for if I should be taken with a fresh of wind, I might neither reach one or other.

In this dilemma ¹¹⁾, as I was very pensive, I stepped into the cabin, and sat me down ¹²⁾, Xury having the helm; when, on a sudden, the boy cried out, "Master, master, a ship with a sail!" and the foolish boy was frightened out of his wits, thinking it must needs be some of his master's ships sent to pursue us, when I knew we were gotten ¹³⁾ far enough out of their reach. I jumped out of the cabin, and immediately saw, not only the ship, but what she was, viz. that it was a Portuguese ship, and, as I thought, was bound to the coast of Guinea, for Negroes. But, when I observed the course she steered, I was soon convinced they were bound some other

⁸⁾ *such as it was* = so wie es nun einmal war. — ⁹⁾ *offing* ist die hohe, offene See; er machte also einen großen Bogen, nahm viel Seeraum. — ¹⁰⁾ *to make a point* = *to double a point* = ein Kap dublieren, eine Landspitze umschiffen. — ¹¹⁾ *dilemma*, eig. = verfänglicher Schluss, dann = Verlegenheit, Klemme. — ¹²⁾ *to sit down* heisst schon sich setzen, das *me* ist also überflüssig. — ¹³⁾ Dies veraltete Participium haben wir noch in *forgotten*.

way¹⁴⁾, and did not design to come any nearer to the shore: upon which, I stretched out to sea as much as I could, resolving to speak with them, if possible.

With all the sail I could make, I found I should not be able to come in their way, but that they would be gone by before I could make any signal to them: but after I had crowded¹⁵⁾ to the utmost, and began to despair, they, it seems, saw me, by the help of their perspective glasses, and that it was some European boat, which, they supposed, must belong to some ship that was lost; so they shortened sail, to let me come up. I was encouraged with this, and as I had my patron's ancient on board, I made a waft of it to them¹⁶⁾, for a signal of distress, and fired a gun, both which they saw; for they told me they saw the smoke, though they did not hear the gun. Upon these signals, they very kindly brought to, and lay by for me; and in about three hours' time I came up with them.

They asked me what I was, in Portuguese, and in Spanish, and in French, but I understood none of them; but, at last, a Scots sailor, who was on board, called to me, and I answered him, and told him I was an Englishman, that I had made my escape out of slavery from the Moors, at Sallee: they then bade me come on board, and very kindly took me in, and all my goods.

VII. — It was an inexpressible joy to me, which any one will believe, that I was thus delivered, as I esteemed it, from such a miserable, and almost hopeless, condition as I was in; and I immediately offered all I had to the captain of the ship, as a return for my deliverance; but he generously told me, he would take nothing from me, but that all I had should be delivered safe to me, when I came to the Brasils. "For," says he, "I have saved your life on no other terms than I would be glad to be saved myself; and it may, one time or other, be my lot to be taken up in the same condition. Besides," said he, "when I carry you to the Brasils, so great a way from your own country, if I should take from you what

¹⁴⁾ *some other way* = irgend wohin anders. — ¹⁵⁾ *to crowd (sail)* = möglichst viele Segel aufziehen. — ¹⁶⁾ „ich winkte ihnen damit zu“.

you have, you will be starved¹⁾ there, and then I only take away that life given. No, no," says he; "Seignor Inglese," (Mr. Englishman,) "I will carry you thither in charity, and those things will help to buy your subsistence there, and your passage home again."

As he was charitable in this proposal, so he was just in the performance to a tittle; for he ordered the seamen, that none should offer to touch any thing I had: then he took every thing into his own possession, and gave me back an exact inventory of them, that I might have them, even so much as my three earthen jars.

As to my boat, it was a very good one; and that he saw, and told me he would buy it of me for the ship's use; and asked me what I would have for it? I told him, he had been so generous to me in every thing, that I could not offer to make any price of the boat, but left it entirely to him: upon which, he told me he would give me a note of hand to pay me eighty pieces of eight²⁾ for it at Brasil; and when it came there, if any one offered to give more, he would make it up. He offered me also sixty pieces of eight more for my boy Xury, which I was loth³⁾ to take; not that I was not willing to let the captain have him, but I was very loth to sell the poor boy's liberty, who had assisted me so faithfully in procuring my own. However, when I let him know my reason, he owned it to be just, and offered me this medium⁴⁾, that he would give the boy an obligation to set him free in ten years, if he turned Christian: upon this, and Xury saying he was willing to go to him, I let the captain have him.

We had a very good voyage to the Brasils⁵⁾, and arrived in the Bay de Todos los Santos, or All Saint's Bay, in about twenty-two days after. And now I was once more delivered from the most miserable of all conditions of life; and what to do next with myself, I was now to consider.

VII. — 1) *to be starved* = Hungers sterben. — 2) *pièce of eight* ist das acht Realenstück, der spanische Dollar. — 3) *loth* = *loath* = abgeneigt, unwillig; also *I am loth to take* = ich nehme nicht gern. — 4) *mèdiúm* = Ausweg. — 5) *Brasil* und *the Brasils*, auch mit dem z geschrieben, beide Formen kommen vor, letztere scheint aber veraltet; cf. VI, 22.

The generous treatment the captain gave me, I can never enough remember: he would take nothing of me for my passage, gave me twenty ducats for the leopard's skin, and forty for the lion's skin, which I had in my boat, and caused every thing I had in the ship to be punctually delivered to me; and what I was willing to sell, he bought of me; such as the case of bottles, two of my guns, and a piece of the lump of bees-wax, — for I had made candles of the rest: in a word, I made about two hundred and twenty pieces of eight of all my cargo⁶⁾; and with this stock, I went on shore in the Brasils.

I had not been long here, before I was recommended to the house of a good honest man, like himself, who had an *ingenio* as they call it, (that is, a plantation and a sugar house⁷⁾). I lived with him some time, and acquainted myself, by that means, with the manner of planting and making of sugar; and seeing how well the planters lived, and how they got rich suddenly, I resolved, if I could get a licence to settle there, I would turn planter among them: resolving, in the mean time, to find out some way to get my money, which I had left in London, remitted to me. To this purpose, getting a kind of a letter of naturalization⁸⁾, I purchased as much land that was uncured⁹⁾ as my money would reach, and formed a plan for my plantation and settlement; such a one as might be suitable to the stock which I proposed to myself to receive from England.

I had a neighbour, a Portuguese of Lisbon, but born of English parents, whose name was Wells, and in much such circumstances¹⁰⁾ as I was. I call him my neighbour, because his plantation lay next to mine, and we went on very sociably together¹¹⁾. My stock was but low, as well as his; and we rather planted for food than any thing else, for about two years. However, we began to encrease, and our land began to come into order; so that the third year we planted some tobacco, and made each of us a large piece of ground ready for planting canes in the year to come: but we both wanted

⁶⁾ *cargo* = Schiffsladung, ist ein spanisches Wort. — ⁷⁾ *súgar house* = Zuckersiederei, Zuckerfabrik; NB. spr. s = sh. — ⁸⁾ *letter of naturalizàtion* = Naturalisationspatent. — ⁹⁾ *uncured* = unbebaut. — ¹⁰⁾ *in much such circumstances* = in genau denselben Vermögensverhältnissen. — ¹¹⁾ „wir verkehrten sehr vertraulich mit einander“.

help; and now I found, more than before, I had done wrong in parting with my boy Xury.

But, alas! for me to do wrong that never did right, was no great wonder. I had no remedy but to go on: I had got into an employment quite remote to my genius¹²⁾, and directly contrary to the life I delighted in, and for which I forsook my father's house, and broke through all his good advice: nay, I was coming into the verry middle station, or upper degree of low life, which my father advised to before; and which, if I resolved to go on with, I might as well have staid¹³⁾ at home, and never have fatigued myself in the world, as I had done: and I used often to say to myself, I could have done this as well in England, among my friends, as have gone five thousand miles off to do it among strangers and savages, in a wilderness, and at such a distance as never to hear from any part of the world that had the least knowledge of me.

In this manner, I used to look upon my condition with the utmost regret. I had nobody to converse with, but now and then this neighbour; no work to be done, but the labour of my hands: and I used to say, I lived just like a man cast away upon some desolate island, that had nobody there but himself. But how just has it been! and how should all men reflect, that when they compare their present conditions with others that are worse, Heaven may oblige them to make the exchange, and be convinced of their former felicity by their experience: I say, how just has it been, that the truly solitary life I reflected on, in an island of mere desolation, should be my lot, who had so often unjustly compared it with the life which I then led, in which, had I continued, I had, in all probability, been exceeding prosperous and rich.

I was, in some degree, settled in my measures for carrying on the plantation, before my kind friend, the captain of the ship that took me up at sea, went back; for the ship remained there, in providing his lading, and preparing for his voyage, near three months; when, telling him what little stock I had left behind me in London, he gave me this friendly and sincere advice: "Seignor Inglese," says he, for so he

¹²⁾ „meiner Geistesrichtung gänzlich fern liegend“. — ¹³⁾ *staid* = *stayed*.

always called me, "if you will give me letters, and a procuration here in form¹⁴⁾ to me, with orders to the person who has your money in London, to send your effects to Lisbon, to such persons as I shall direct, and in such goods as are proper for this country, I will bring you the produce of them, God willing¹⁵⁾, at my return; but, since human affairs are all subject to changes and disasters, I would have you give orders but for one hundred pounds sterling, which, you say, is half your stock, and let the hazard be run¹⁶⁾ for the first, so that if it come safe¹⁷⁾, you may order the rest the same way; and, if it miscarry, you may have the other half to have recourse to for your supply."

This was so wholesome advice, and looked so friendly, that I could not but be convinced it was the best course I could take; so I accordingly prepared letters to the gentlewoman¹⁸⁾ with whom I had left my money, and a procuration to the Portuguese captain, as he desired.

I wrote the English captain's widow a full account of all my adventures; my slavery, escape, and how I had met with the Portugal¹⁹⁾ captain at sea, the humanity of his behaviour, and what condition I was now in, with all other necessary directions for my supply; and when this honest captain came to Lisbon, he found means, by some of the English merchants there, to send over, not the order only, but a full account of my story to a merchant at London, who represented it effectually to her: whereupon she not only delivered the money, but, out of her own pocket, sent the Portugal captain a very handsome present for his humanity and charity to me.

The merchant in London, vesting²⁰⁾, this hundred pounds in English goods, such as the captain had writ²¹⁾ for, sent them directly to him at Lisbon, and he brought them all safe to me to the Brasils: among which, without my direction, (for I was too young in my business to think of them,)

¹⁴⁾ *a procuration in form* = eine förmliche Vollmacht. —

¹⁵⁾ *God willing* = will's Gott, so Gott es will. — ¹⁶⁾ *let the hazard be run* = macht das Wagestück. — ¹⁷⁾ *to come safe* = zum Glück ausschlagen. — ¹⁸⁾ *gentlewoman* bezeichnet eine Frau aus guter Familie, also eine Dame. — ¹⁹⁾ *Portugal* ist als Adjektiv neben *Portuguèse* veraltet; NB. ersteres ist auf der ersten, letzteres auf der letzten betont. — ²⁰⁾ *to vest* = anlegen in, umsetzen in. — ²¹⁾ *writ* ist veraltet neben *written*.

he had taken care to have all sorts of tools²³), iron work²²), and utensils²³), necessary for my plantation, and which were of great use to me.

When this cargo arrived, I thought my fortunes made, for I was surprised with the joy of it; and my good steward, the captain, had laid out the five pounds, which my friend had sent him for a present for himself, to purchase and bring me over a servant, under bond²⁴) for six years' service, and would not accept of any consideration, except a little tobacco, which I would have him accept, being of my own produce.

Neither was this all: but my goods being all English manufactures, such as cloths, stuffs, baize²⁵), and things particularly valuable and desirable in the country, I found means to sell them to a very great advantage; so that I might say, I had more than four times the value of my first cargo, and was now infinitely beyond my poor neighbour, I mean in the advancement of my plantation: for the first thing I did, I bought me a Negro slave, and an European servant also; I mean another besides that which the captain brought me from Lisbon.

But as abused prosperity is oftentimes made the very means of our greatest adversity, so was it with me. I went on the next year with great success in my plantation; I raised²⁶) fifty great rolls of tobacco on my own ground, more than I had disposed of for necessaries among my neighbours; and these fifty rolls, being each of above a hundred weight, were well cured, and laid by against²⁷) the return of the fleet from Lisbon: and now increasing in business and in wealth, my head began to be full of projects and undertakings beyond my reach; such as are, indeed, often the ruin of the best heads in business. Had I continued in the station I was now in, I had room for all the happy things to have yet befallen me, for which my father so earnestly recommended a quiet, retired life, and of which he had so sensibly described the middle station of life to be full of: but other things attended me, and I was still to be the wilful agent²⁸) of all

²²) *iron work* = eiserne Geräte. — ²³) *tools* = Handwerkszeug, was bei der Arbeit gebraucht wird; *utensils* = Geschirr, Gerät im weiteren Sinne. — ²⁴) *under bond* = verpflichtet zu. — ²⁵) *baize* = Boye (ein wollenes Zeug). — ²⁶) *to raise* hier = ziehen, ernten. — ²⁷) *to lay by against* = zurücklegen bis. — ²⁸) *wilful agent* = williges Werkzeug.

my own miseries; and, particularly, to encrease²⁹⁾ my fault, and double the reflections upon myself, which in my future sorrows I should have leisure to make, all these miscarriages were procured by my apparent obstinate adhering to my foolish inclination of wandering abroad.

VIII. — To come, then, by the just degrees, to the particulars of this part of my story: — You may suppose, that having now lived almost four years in the Brasils, and beginning to thrive and prosper very well upon my plantation, I had not only learned the language, but had contracted acquaintance and friendship¹⁾ among my fellow-planters, as well as among the merchants at St. Salvador, which was our port; and that, in my discourses among them, I had frequently given them an account of my two voyages to the coast of Guinea, the manner of trading with the Negroes there, and how easy it was to purchase upon the coast for trifles — such as beads, toys, knives, scissars²⁾, hatchets, bits of glass³⁾, and the like — not only gold dust, Guinea grains⁴⁾, elephants' teeth, &c. but Negroes, for the service of the Brasils, in great numbers.

They listened always very attentively to my discourses on these heads⁵⁾, but especially to that part which related to the buying Negroes⁶⁾; which was a trade, at that time, not only not far entered into⁷⁾, but, as far as it was, had been carried on by the assientos⁸⁾, or permission of the kings of Spain and Portugal, and engrossed⁹⁾ in the public stock; so that few Negroes were brought, and those excessive¹⁰⁾ dear.

It happened, being in company with some merchants and planters of my acquaintance, and talking of those things very earnestly, three of them came to me the next morning, and

²⁹⁾ *to encrease* statt des gewöhnlichen *to increase*.

VIII. — ¹⁾ *to contráct acquaintánce and friéndship* = Bekanntschaft machen und Freundschaft schließen. — ²⁾ *scissars* für *scissors* ist gleichfalls veraltet. — ³⁾ *bits of glass* = (bunte) Glasstückchen. — ⁴⁾ *Guinea gràins*, Paradieskörner, eine Art Gewürz (Kardamom). — ⁵⁾ *héad* hier = Kapitel, Punkt. — ⁶⁾ Beachte diese Konstruktion mit dem Gerundium! — ⁷⁾ „nicht stark betrieben“. — ⁸⁾ *assiénto*, Vertrag, ist ein spanisches Wort und wird nur in diesem Sinne (Erlaubnis zum Sklavenhandel) gebraucht. — ⁹⁾ *to engross the trade* = den Handel an sich reißen. — ¹⁰⁾ Das Adverbium entbehrt auch im folgenden häufig seiner Endung *-ly*.

told me they had been musing very much upon what I had discoursed with them of, the last night, and they came to make a secret proposal to me: and, after enjoining me secrecy¹¹⁾, they told me that they had a mind to fit out a ship to go to Guinea; that they had all plantations as well as I, and were straitened¹²⁾ for nothing so much as servants; that as it was a trade that could not be carried on, because they could not publicly sell the Negroes when they came home, so they desired to make but one voyage, to bring the Negroes on shore privately, and divide them among their own plantations: and, in a word, the question was, whether I would go their supercargo¹³⁾ in the ship, to manage the trading part upon the coast of Guinea; and they offered me that I should have my equal share of the Negroes, without providing any part of the stock¹⁴⁾.

This was a fair proposal, it must be confessed, had it been made to any one that had not had a settlement and plantation of his own to look after, which was in a fair way of coming to be very considerable, and with a good stock upon it. But for me, that was thus entered and established, and had nothing to do but go on as I had begun, for three or four years more, and to have sent for the other hundred pounds from England; and who, in that time, and with that little addition, could scarce have failed of being worth three or four thousand pounds sterling, and that encreasing too; for me to think of such a voyage, was the most preposterous¹⁵⁾ thing that ever man, in such circumstances, could be guilty of.

But I, that was born to be my own destroyer, could no more resist the offer, than I could restrain my first rambling designs, when my father's good counsel was lost upon me. In a word, I told them I would go with all my heart, if they would undertake to look after my plantation in my absence, and would dispose of it to such as I should direct, if I miscarried. This they all engaged to do, and entered into writ-

¹¹⁾ *to enjoin a person secrecy* = einen zum Stillschweigen verpflichten. — ¹²⁾ *to be straitened for* = Mangel haben an, in Verlegenheit sein wegen. — ¹³⁾ *supercargo*, Superkargo, Kargadeur, heisst auf Schiffen derjenige, welcher über die Ladung gesetzt ist und der den Eigentümern davon Rechenschaft ablegen muß. — ¹⁴⁾ „ohne daß ich zu den Warenvorräten einen Teil beitrüge“. — ¹⁵⁾ *preposterous*, das Hinterste vorn, verkehrt, widersinnig.

ings or covenants¹⁶⁾ to do so: and I made a formal will, disposing of my plantation and effects, in case of my death; making the captain of the ship that had saved my life as before, my universal heir; but obliging him to dispose of my effects as I had directed in my will; one half of the produce being to himself, and the other to be shipped to England.

In short, I took all possible caution to preserve my effects, and to keep up my plantation: had I used half as much prudence to have looked into my own interest, and have made a judgment of what I ought to have done and not to have done, I had certainly never gone away from so prosperous an undertaking, leaving all the probable views of a thriving circumstance, and gone upon a voyage to sea, attended with all its common hazards, to say nothing of the reasons I had to expect particular misfortunes to myself.

But I was hurried on, and obeyed blindly the dictates¹⁷⁾ of my fancy, rather than my reason: and accordingly, the ship being fitted out, and the cargo furnished, and all things done as by agreement, by my partners in the voyage, I went on board in an evil hour, the 1st of September, 1659, being the same day eight year that I went from my father and mother at Hull, in order to act the rebel¹⁸⁾ to their authority, and the fool to my own interest.

Our ship was about one hundred and twenty ton burden¹⁹⁾, carried six guns, and fourteen men, besides the master, his boy, and myself; we had on board no large cargo of goods, except of such toys as were fit for our trade with the Negroes, such as beads, bits of glass, shells²⁰⁾, and odd trifles²¹⁾, especially little looking-glasses, knives, scissars, hatchets, and the like.

The same day I went on board we set sail, standing away to the northward upon our own coast, with design to stretch over²²⁾ for the African coast, when they came about ten or twelve degrees of northern latitude, which, it seems, was the

¹⁶⁾ *cövenant* = Übereinkommen, Kontrakt, vom lat. *convenire*. — ¹⁷⁾ *dictate* hier = Eingebung. — ¹⁸⁾ *to act the rebel* = den Aufsätzigen spielen. — ¹⁹⁾ *ton burden*, Lasttonne, hat in England ein Gewicht von 1016 kg; NB. beachte den Singular! — ²⁰⁾ *shell* = Schale, Muschel; mundartlich noch = Schelle (Kartoffelschelle). — ²¹⁾ *odd trifles* = sonstige Kleinigkeiten. — ²²⁾ *to stretch over* = mit Prefswind segeln, hinüberschneiden.

manner of their course in those days. We had very good weather, only excessive hot, all the way upon our own coast, till we came to the height of Cape St. Augustino; from whence, keeping farther off at sea, we lost sight of land, and steered as if we were bound for the isle Fernando de Noronha²³), holding our course N. E. by N. and leaving those isles on the east. In this course we passed the line in about twelve days' time, and were, by our last observation, in 7 degrees 22 minutes northern latitude, when a violent tornado, or hurricane²⁴), took us quite out of our knowledge; it began from the south-east, came about to the north-west, and then settled in the north-east; from whence it blew in such a terrible manner, that for twelve days together we could do nothing but drive, and, scudding²⁵) away before it, let it carry us whither ever fate and the fury of the winds directed; and, during these twelve days, I need not say that I expected every day to be swallowed up; nor, indeed, did any in the ship expect to save their²⁶) lives.

In this distress, we had, besides the terror of the storm, one of our men died of the calenture²⁷), and one man and the boy washed over-board. About the twelfth day, the weather abating a little, the master made an observation as well as he could, and found that he was in about 11 degrees north latitude, but that he was 22 degrees of longitude difference west from Cape St. Augustino; so that he found he was gotten upon the coast of Guiana, or the north part of Brasil, beyond the river Amazons²⁸), toward that of the river Oroonoque²⁹), commonly called the Great River; and began to consult with me what course he should take, for the ship was leaky and very much disabled, and he was going directly back to the coast of Brasil.

I was positively against that; and looking over the charts of the sea-coast of America with him, we concluded there was no inhabited country for us to have recourse to, till we

²³) Eine einsame Insel an der Nordostküste Südamerikas, unter 15° O.L. und 4° S.B. gelegen. — ²⁴) *tornàdo* = Wirbelsturm, vom sp. *tornar* = drehen; *hurricane*, Orkan, ist aus der Sprache von Haiti entlehnt. — ²⁵) *to scud* = lenzen, d. h. vor dem Sturme laufen, mit wenig Segeln oder gar keinem sich vom Winde treiben lassen. — ²⁶) Beziehung?! — ²⁷) Cf. III, 22. — ²⁸) *Amazons*, aus *Amazonas*, wird auf der ersten betont. — ²⁹) Gewöhnlich *Orinoco*.

came within the circle of the Caribbee islands³⁰), and therefore resolved to stand away for Barbadoes; which by keeping off at sea, to avoid the in-draft³¹) of the bay or gulf of Mexico, we might easily perform, as we hoped, in about fifteen days' sail³²); whereas we could not possibly make our voyage to the coast of Africa without some assistance, both to our ship and to ourselves.

With this design, we changed our course, and steered away N. W. by W. in order to reach some of our English islands, where I hoped for relief: but our voyage was otherwise determined; for being in the latitude of 12 degrees 18 minutes, a second storm came upon us, which carried us away with the same impetuosity westward, and drove us so out of the very way of all human commerce, that had all our lives been saved, as to the sea³³), we were rather in danger of being devoured by savages than ever returning to our own country.

In this distress, the wind still blowing very hard, one of our men early in the morning cried out, Land! and we had no sooner run out of the cabin to look out, in hopes of seeing whereabouts in the world we were, but the ship struck upon a sand, and in a moment, her motion being so stopped, the sea broke over her in such a manner, that we expected we should all have perished immediately; and we were immediately driven into our close quarters³⁴), to shelter us from the very³⁵) foam and spray³⁶) of the sea.

It is not easy for any one, who has not been in the like condition, to describe or conceive the consternation of men in such circumstances; we knew nothing where we were, or upon what land it was we were driven, whether an island or the main³⁷), whether inhabited or not inhabited; and as the rage of the wind was still great, though rather less than at first, we could not so much as hope to have the ship hold many minutes, without breaking in pieces, unless the winds, by a

³⁰) Inseln der Cariben = kleine Antillen; NB. *Caribbee* wird auf der ersten betont. — ³¹) *in-draft* = Einströmung, der Golfstrom ist gemeint. — ³²) *fifteen days' sail* = fünfzehntägige Fahrt. — ³³) *as to the sea* = von seiten des Meeres, was das Meer anbetrifft. — ³⁴) *close quarters* = gedeckte Räume. — ³⁵) *very* steigert auch den Begriff des Substantivs. — ³⁶) *foam* ist der Schaum, *spray* das Spritzwasser, der Gischt. — ³⁷) *main* = *main land* = Festland, Continent.

kind of miracle, should turn immediately about. In a word, we sat looking upon one other, and expecting death every moment, and every man acting accordingly, as preparing for another world; for there was little or nothing more for us to do in this: that which was our present comfort, and all the comfort we had, was, that, contrary to our expectation, the ship did not break yet, and that the master said the wind began to abate.

Now, though we thought that the wind did a little abate, yet the ship having thus struck upon the sand, and sticking too fast for us to expect her getting off, we were in a dreadful condition indeed, and had nothing to do but to think of saving our lives as well as we could. We had a boat at our stern just before the storm, but she was first staved³⁸⁾ by dashing against the ship's rudder, and, in the next place, she broke away, and either sunk, or was driven off to sea; so there was no hope from her: we had another boat on board, but how to get her off into the sea was a doubtful thing; however, there was no room³⁹⁾ to debate, for we fancied the ship would break in pieces every minute, and some told us she was actually broken already.

In this distress, the mate of our vessel lays hold of the boat, and with the help of the rest of the men, they got her slung over the ship's side; and getting all into her, let go, and committed ourselves, being eleven in number, to God's mercy, and the wild sea: for though the storm was abated considerably, yet the sea went dreadful high upon the shore, and might be well called *den wild zee*, as the Dutch⁴⁰⁾ call the sea in a storm.

And now our case was very dismal indeed; for we all saw plainly, that the sea went so high, that the boat could not live⁴¹⁾, and that we should be inevitably drowned. As to making sail, we had none; nor, if we had, could we have done any thing with it; so we worked at the oar towards the land, though with heavy hearts, like men going to execution; for we all knew that when the boat came nearer the shore,

38) Cf. II, 42. — 39) *room* hier = Gelegenheit (Zeit). — 40) *the Dutch* sind die Holländer; in Zusammensetzungen bezeichnet das Wort häufig etwas Schlechtes, Plumpes oder Unvernünftiges, so dient es z. B. auch in Amerika als Schimpfwort für uns Deutsche. — 41) *to live* hier = ausdauern, *gammeln*.

she would be dashed in a thousand pieces by the breach⁴²⁾ of the sea. However, we committed our souls to God in the most earnest manner; and the wind driving us towards the shore, we hastened our destruction with our own hands, pulling as well as we could towards land.

What the shore was, whether rock or sand, whether steep or shoal⁴³⁾, we knew not; the only hope that could rationally give us the least shadow of expectation, was, if we might happen into some bay or gulf, or the mouth of some river, where by great chance we might have run our boat in, or got under the lee⁴⁴⁾ of the land, and perhaps made⁴⁵⁾ smooth water. But there was nothing of this appeared; but as we made nearer and nearer the shore, the land looked more frightful than the sea.

After we had rowed⁴⁶⁾, or rather driven, about a league and a half, as we reckoned it, a raging wave, mountain-like, came rolling astern of us⁴⁷⁾, and plainly bade us expect the *coup de grace*⁴⁸⁾. In a word, it took us with such a fury, that it overset the boat at once; and separating us, as well from the boat as from one another, gave us not time hardly to say, "O God!" for we were all swallowed up in a moment.

IX. — Nothing can describe the confusion of thought which I felt, when I sunk into the water; for though I swam very well, yet I could not deliver myself from the waves so as to draw breath, till that wave having driven me, or rather carried me, a vast way on towards the shore, and having spent¹⁾ itself, went back, and left me upon the land almost dry, but half dead with the water I took in. I had so much presence of mind, as well as breath left, that seeing myself nearer the main land than I expected, I got upon my feet, and endeavoured to make on towards the land as fast as I could, before another wave should return and take me up again; but I soon found it was impossible to avoid it; for I saw the sea

⁴²⁾ *brèach* = Brechen (der Wellen), Brandung. — ⁴³⁾ *shōa* = seicht, flach. — ⁴⁴⁾ *under the lee* = unter den Schutz, so daß der Wind durch das Land abgehalten wurde, uns zu treffen. — ⁴⁵⁾ *to make* = erreichen. — ⁴⁶⁾ *to row* = rudern, rojen. — ⁴⁷⁾ *astern of us* = auf das Hinterteil (des Bootes) los, hinter uns her. — ⁴⁸⁾ *coup de grace* = Gnadenstoß; NB. französisch!

IX. — ¹⁾ *to spent* hier = verlaufen.

come after me as high as a great hill, and as furious as an enemy, which I had no means or strength to contend with: my business was to hold my breath, and raise myself upon the water, if I could; and so, by swimming, to preserve my breathing, and pilot myself towards the shore, if possible; my greatest concern²⁾ now being, that the sea³⁾, as it would carry me a great way towards the shore when it came on, might not carry me back again with it when it gave back towards the sea³⁾.

The wave that came upon me again, buried me at once twenty or thirty feet deep in its own body, and I could feel myself carried with a mighty force and swiftness towards the shore a very great way; but I held my breath, and assisted myself to swim still forward with all my might. I was ready to burst with holding my breath, when, as I felt myself rising up, so, to my immediate relief, I found my head and hands shoot out above the surface of the water; and though it was not two seconds of time that I could keep myself so, yet it relieved me greatly, gave me breath, and new courage. I was covered again with water a good while, but not so long but I held it out; and finding the water had spent itself, and began to return, I struck forward against the return of the waves, and felt ground again with my feet. I stood still a few moments, to recover breath, and till the waters went from me, and then took to my heels⁴⁾ and ran, with what strength I had, farther towards the shore. But neither would this deliver me from the fury of the sea, which came pouring in after me again; and twice more I was lifted up by the waves and carried forwards as before, the shore being very flat.

The last time of these two had well nigh been fatal to me; for the sea having hurried me along, as before, landed me, or rather dashed me, against a piece of a rock, and that with such force, as it left me senseless, and indeed helpless, as to my own deliverance; for the blow taking my side and breast, beat the breath, as it were, quite out of my body; and had it returned again immediately, I must have been strangled⁵⁾ in the water: but I recovered a little before the

²⁾ *concern* hier = Sorge. — ³⁾ Beachte den Unterschied von Meer und Meereswoge. — ⁴⁾ *to take to one's heels* = sich auf die Beine machen. — ⁵⁾ *to strangle* eig. = strangulieren, erdrosseln, dann = ersticken überhaupt.

return of the waves, and seeing I should be covered again with the water, I resolved to hold fast by a piece of the rock, and so to hold my breath, if possible, till the wave went back. Now as the waves were not so high as at first, being nearer land, I held my hold till the wave abated, and then fetched another run⁶⁾, which brought me so near the shore, that the next wave, though it went over me, yet did not so swallow me up as to carry me away; and the next run I took, I got to the main land; where, to my great comfort, I clambered up the cliffs of the shore, and sat me down upon the grass, free from danger, and quite out of the reach of the water.

I was now landed, and safe on shore, and began to look up and thank God that my life was saved, in a case wherein there was, some minutes before, scarce any room to hope. I believe it is impossible to express, to the life, what the ecstacies⁷⁾ and transports⁷⁾ of the soul are, when it is so saved, as I may say, out of the very grave: and I do not wonder now at the custom, viz. that when a malefactor, who has the halter about his neck, is tied up, and just going to be turned off⁸⁾, and has a reprieve⁹⁾ brought to him; I say, I do not wonder that they bring a surgeon with it, to let him blood that very moment they tell him of it, that the surprise may not drive the animal spirits¹⁰⁾ from the heart, and overwhelm him.

For sudden joys, like griefs, confound at first.

I walked about on the shore, lifting up my hands, and my whole being, as I may say, wrapt up in the contemplation of my deliverance; making a thousand gestures and motions, which I cannot describe; reflecting upon all my comrades that were drowned, and that there should not be one soul saved but myself; for, as for them, I never saw them afterwards, or any sign of them, except three of their hats, one cap, and two shoes that were not fellows¹¹⁾.

⁶⁾ *to fetch another run* = einen zweiten Anlauf nehmen. —

⁷⁾ *écstasy* = *ecstasy* = Entzücken, *transport* = Wonne; beide auf der ersten betont. — ⁸⁾ *to be turned off* = hinuntergestoßen werden (von dem Brett, das ihm als Stützpunkt dient). — ⁹⁾ *reprieve* = Erlass (der Strafe), Begnadigungsdekret. — ¹⁰⁾ *animal spirits* = Lebensgeister. — ¹¹⁾ *fellows* = Genossen, die zu einander passen.

I cast my eyes to the stranded vessel, when the breach and froth¹²⁾ of the sea being so big I could hardly see it, it lay so far off, and considered, Lord! how was it possible I could get on shore?

After I had solaced my mind with the comfortable part of my condition, I began to look round me, to see what kind of place I was in, and what was next to be done; and I soon found my comforts abate, and that, in a word, I had a dreadful deliverance: for I was wet, had no clothes to shift me, nor any thing either to eat or drink, to comfort me; neither did I see any prospect before me, but that of perishing with hunger, or being devoured by wild beasts: and that which was particularly afflicting to me was, that I had no weapon, either to hunt and kill any creature for my sustenance, or to defend myself against any other creature that might desire to kill me for theirs. In a word, I had nothing about me but a knife, a tobacco-pipe, and a little tobacco in a box. This was all my provision; and this threw me into terrible agonies of mind¹³⁾, that, for a while, I ran about like a madman. Night coming upon me, I began, with a heavy heart, to consider what would be my lot if there were any ravenous beasts in that country, seeing at night they always come abroad for their prey.

All the remedy that offered to my thoughts, at that time, was, to get up into a thick bushy tree, like a fir, but thorny, which grew near me, and where I resolved to sit all night, and consider the next day what death I should die, for as yet I saw no prospect of life. I walked about a furlong¹⁴⁾ from the shore, to see if I could find any fresh water to drink, which I did, to my great joy; and having drank, and put a little tobacco in my mouth to prevent hunger¹⁵⁾, I went to the tree, and getting up into it, endeavoured to place myself so, as that if I should sleep, I might not fall; and having cut me a short stick, like a truncheon¹⁶⁾, for my defence, I took up my lodging; and having been excessively fatigued, I fell fast asleep, and slept as comfortably as, I believe, few

¹²⁾ *froth* bedeutet ebenfalls Schaum. — ¹³⁾ *agonies of mind* = Seelenkämpfe, Herzensangst. — ¹⁴⁾ *furlong* ist ein englisches Maß von 220 engl. Yards = $\frac{1}{8}$ engl. Meile. — ¹⁵⁾ Das Mittel ist probat. — ¹⁶⁾ *truncheon* = Knüttel, dann bedeutet es aber auch Kommandostab.

could have done in my condition; and found myself the most refreshed with it that I think I ever was on such an occasion,

When I waked it was broad day¹⁷⁾, the weather clear, and the storm abated, so that the sea did not rage and swell as before; but that which surprised me most was, that the ship was lifted off in the night from the sand where she lay, by the swelling of the tide, and was driven up almost as far as the rock which I at first mentioned, where I had been so bruised¹⁸⁾ by the wave dashing me against it. This being within about a mile from the shore where I was, and the ship seeming to stand upright still, I wished myself on board, that at least I might save some necessary things for my use.

When I came down from my apartment in the tree, I looked about me again, and the first thing I found was the boat; which lay, as the wind and the sea had tossed her up, upon the land, about two miles on my right hand. I walked as far as I could upon the shore to have got to her; but found a neck¹⁹⁾, or inlet, of water between me and the boat, which was about half mile broad; so I came back for the present, being more intent upon getting at the ship, where I hoped to find something for my present subsistence.

A little after noon, I found the sea very calm, and the tide ebbed so far out²⁰⁾, that I could come within a quarter of a mile of the ship: and here I found a fresh renewing of my grief; for I saw evidently, that if we had kept on board. we had been all safe; that is to say, we had all got safe on shore, and I had not been so miserable as to be left entirely destitute of all comfort and company, as I now was. This forced tears from my eyes again; but as there was little relief in that, I resolved, if possible, to get to the ship; so I pulled off my clothes, for the weather was hot to extremity, and took the water²¹⁾; but when I came to the ship, my difficulty was still greater to know how to get on board; for as she lay aground, and high out of the water, there was nothing within my reach to lay hold of. I swam round her twice, and the second time I spied a small piece of rope,

¹⁷⁾ *broad day* = heller lichter Tag. — ¹⁸⁾ *to brüise* = quetschen hängt zusammen mit unserm mehr mundartlichen Brausche.

— ¹⁹⁾ *neck* hat hier die Bedeutung des lat. *sinus* = Busen. —

²⁰⁾ Erkläre: „die Gewässer traten zur Zeit der Ebbe so weit zurück“.

— ²¹⁾ *to take the water* = ins Wasser gehen.

which I wondered I did not see at first, hang down by the fore-chains²²⁾ so low, as that with great difficulty, I got hold of it, and by the help of that rope got up into the fore-castle of the ship. Here I found that the ship was bulged²³⁾, and had a great deal of water in her hold; but that she lay so on the side of a bank of hard sand, or rather earth, that her stern lay lifted up upon the bank, and her head low, almost to the water. By this means all her quarter²⁴⁾ was free, and all that was in that part was dry; for you may be sure my first work was to search and to see what was spoiled and what was free: and, first, I found that all the ship's provisions were dry and untouched by the water; and, being very well disposed to eat, I went to the bread-room, and filled my pockets with biscuit, and eat it as I went about other things, for I had no time to lose. I also found some rum in the great cabin, of which I took a large dram, and which I had indeed need enough of to spirit²⁵⁾ me for what was before me. Now I wanted nothing but a boat, to furnish myself with many things which I foresaw would be very necessary to me.

X. — It was in vain to sit still and wish for what was not to be had; and this extremity roused my application¹⁾: we had several spare yards²⁾, and two or three large spars of wood, and a spare top-mast³⁾ or two in the ship; I resolved to fall to work⁴⁾ with these, and I flung as many of them over-board as I could manage for their weight, tying every one with a rope, that they might not drive away. When this was done, I went down the ship's side, and pulling them to me, I tied four of them fast together at both ends, as well as I could, in the form of a raft, and laying two or three short pieces of plank upon them, cross-ways, I found I could walk upon it very well, but that it was not able to bear any great weight, the pieces being too light: so I went to work, and with the

²²⁾ *fore-chains* = Vorder-Püttingen. — ²³⁾ *to bulge* = *to bilge* = leck werden. — ²⁴⁾ *quarter* ist der hintere Teil des Schiffes, vom grossen Mast bis zum Steuer. — ²⁵⁾ *to spirit* = beseelen, beleben, anfeuern.

X. — ¹⁾ Cf. I, 16. — ²⁾ *spare yards* = Reserve-Raaen; *spare* drückt in Zusammensetzungen das Reservestück aus. — ³⁾ Der Topmast ist das obere Ende des eigentlichen Mastes, an dem nun wieder Verlängerungen, die Stengen, angebracht sind. — ⁴⁾ *to fall to work* = ans Werk gehen.

carpenter's saw I cut a spare top-mast into three lengths, and added them to my raft, with a great deal of labour and pains. But the hope of furnishing myself with necessaries, encouraged me to go beyond⁵⁾ what I should have been able to have done upon another occasion.

My raft was now strong enough to bear any reasonable weight. My next care was what to load it with, and how to preserve what I laid upon it from the surf⁶⁾ of the sea; but I was not long considering this. I first laid all the plank or boards upon it that I could get, and having considered well what I most wanted, I first got three of the seamen's chests, which I had broken open and emptied, and lowered them down upon my raft; the first of these I filled with provisions, viz. bread, rice, three Dutch cheeses, five pieces of dried goats' flesh, (which we lived much upon,) and a little remainder of European corn, which had been laid by for some fowls which we brought to sea with us, but the fowls were killed. There had been some barley and wheat together, but, to my great disappointment, I found afterwards that the rats had eaten or spoiled it all. As for liquors, I found several cases of bottles belonging to our skipper⁷⁾, in which were some cordial waters⁸⁾; and, in all, about five or six gallons of rack⁹⁾. These I stowed by themselves¹⁰⁾, there being no need to put them into the chest, nor no room for them. While I was doing this, I found the tide began to flow, though very calm; and I had the mortification to see my coat, shirt, and waistcoat, which I had left on shore, upon the sand, swim away; as for my breeches, which were only linen, and open-knee'd, I swam on board in them, and my stockings. However, this put me upon rummaging¹¹⁾ for clothes, of which I found enough, but took no more than I wanted for present use, for I had other things which my eye was more upon; as, first, tools to work with on shore: and it was after long searching that I found out the carpenter's chest, which was indeed a very useful prize to me, and much more valuable than a ship-lading of gold would have been at that time. I

⁵⁾ *to go beyond* = darüber hinausgehen, mehr leisten. — ⁶⁾ *surf* ist der Wellenschlag. — ⁷⁾ *skipper* = Schiffer, Schiffsherr. — ⁸⁾ *cordial waters* = herzstärkende Liköre. — ⁹⁾ *rack* = *arrack* = Reisbranntwein. — ¹⁰⁾ *by themselves* = für sich allein, — ¹¹⁾ *to rummage* = stöbern.

got it down to my raft, even whole as it was, without losing time to look into it, for I knew in general what it contained.

My next care was for some ammunition and arms. There were two very good fowling-pieces¹²⁾ in the great cabin, and two pistols; these I secured first, with some powder-horns and a small bag of shot, and two old rusty swords. I knew there were three barrels¹³⁾ of powder in the ship, but knew not where our gunner had stowed them; but with much search I found them, two of them dry and good, the third had taken water. Those two I got to my raft, with the arms. And now I thought myself pretty well freighted, and began to think how I should get to shore with them, having neither sail, oar, or rudder¹⁴⁾; and the least cap-full¹⁵⁾ of wind would have upset all my navigation.

I had three encouragements: 1st, A smooth, calm sea; 2dly, The tide rising, and setting in to the shore; 3dly, What little wind there was blew me towards the land. And thus, having found two or three broken oars belonging to the boat, and besides the tools which were in the chest, I found two saws, an axe, and a hammer; and with this cargo I put to sea. For a mile, or thereabouts, my raft went very well, only that I found it drive a little distant from the place where I had landed before; by which I perceived that there was some indraft¹⁶⁾ of the water, and consequently I hoped to find some creek¹⁷⁾ or river there, which I might make use of as a port to get to land with my cargo.

As I imagined, so it was: there appeared before me a little opening of the land, and I found a strong current of the tide set into it; so I guided my raft, as well as I could, to keep in the middle of the stream.

But here I had like to have suffered a second shipwreck, which, if I had, I think verily¹⁸⁾ would have broke my heart; for knowing nothing of the coast, my raft ran aground at one

¹²⁾ *fowling-pièce* = Vogelflinte; NB. *piece*, Stück, bezeichnet nicht nur, wie im Deutschen, das Geschütz, die Kanone, sondern auch das Kleingewehr, die Flinte. — ¹³⁾ Spr. *bárrrel*. — ¹⁴⁾ *oar* ist der Riemen, das Handruder, *rudder* bezeichnet Ruder überhaupt, auch das Steuerruder. — ¹⁵⁾ Cf. II, 16. — ¹⁶⁾ *indraft* = Strömung (nach der Küste hin). — ¹⁷⁾ *creek* ist eigentlich eine kleine Bucht, in die ein kleiner Fluß mündet, ein solcher wird in Amerika auch mit dem Worte bezeichnet. — ¹⁸⁾ *verily* = wahrhaftig, wahrhaftiglich.

end of it upon a shoal¹⁹⁾, and not being aground at the other end, it wanted but a little that all my cargo had slipped off towards that end that was afloat, and so fallen into the water. I did my utmost, by setting my back against the chests, to keep them in their places, but could not thrust off the raft with all my strength; neither durst I stir from the posture I was in, but holding up the chests with all my might, I stood in that manner near half an hour, in which time the rising of the water brought me a little more upon a level; and a little after, the water still rising, my raft floated again, and I thrust her off with the oar I had into the channel, and then driving up higher, I at length found myself in the mouth of a little river, with land on both sides, and a strong current or tide running up. I looked on both sides for a proper place to get to shore, for I was not willing to be driven too high up the river; hoping, in time, to see some ship at sea, and therefore resolved to place myself as near the coast as I could.

At length I spied a little cove²⁰⁾ on the right shore of the creek, to which, with great pain and difficulty, I guided my raft, and at last got so near, as that reaching ground with my oar, I could thrust her directly in; but here I had like to have dipped all my cargo into the sea again; for that shore lying pretty steep, that is to say, sloping²¹⁾, there was no place to land, but where one end of my float, if it ran on shore, would lie so high, and the other sink lower, as before, that it would endanger my cargo again. All that I could do, was to wait till the tide was at the highest, keeping the raft with my oar like an anchor, to hold the side of it fast to the shore, near a flat piece of ground, which I expected the water would flow over; and so it did. As soon as I found water enough, for my raft drew about a foot of water²²⁾, I thrust her on upon that flat piece of ground, and there fastened or moored her, by sticking my two broken oars into the ground; one on one side, near one end, and one on the other side, near the other end: and thus I lay till the water ebbed away, and left my raft and all my cargo safe on shore.

¹⁹⁾ *shoal* = Untiefe; cf. VIII, 43. — ²⁰⁾ *cove* = Einbuchtung.
 — ²¹⁾ *sloping* = abschüssig. — ²²⁾ *drew about a foot of water*
 = hatte ungefähr einen Fuß Tiefgang.

My next work was to view the country, and seek a proper place for my habitation, and where to stow²³⁾ my goods, to secure them from whatever might happen. Where I was, I yet knew not; whether on the continent, or an island; whether inhabited, or not inhabited; whether in danger of wild beasts, or not. There was a hill, not above a mile from me, which rose up very steep and high, and which seemed to overtop some other hills, which lay as in a ridge from it, northward. I took out one of the fowling-pieces, and one of the pistols, and a horn of powder; and thus armed, I travelled for discovery up to the top of that hill; where, after I had, with great labour and difficulty, got to the top, I saw my fate, to my great affliction, viz. that I was in an island, environed every way with the sea, no land to be seen, except some rocks, which lay a great way off, and two small islands, less than this, which lay about three leagues to the west.

I found also that the island I was in was barren, and, as I saw good reason to believe, uninhabited, except by wild beasts, of whom, however, I saw none; yet I saw abundance of fowls, but knew not their kinds²⁴⁾; neither, when I killed them, could I tell what was fit for food, and what not. At my coming back, I shot at a great bird, which I saw sitting upon a tree, on the side of a great wood. I believe it was the first gun that had been fired there since the creation of the world: I had no sooner fired, but from all the parts of the wood, there arose an innumerable number of fowls, of many sorts, making a confused screaming²⁵⁾, and crying, every one according to his usual note; but not one of them of any kind that I knew. As for the creature I killed, I took it to be a kind of a hawk, its colour and beak resembling it, but it had no talons or claws²⁶⁾ more than common. Its flesh was carrion²⁷⁾, and fit for nothing.

Contented with this discovery, I came back to my raft, and fell to work to bring my cargo on shore, which took me up the rest of that day: what to do with myself at night I knew not, nor indeed where to rest: for I was afraid to lie down on the ground, not knowing but some wild beast might

²³⁾ Spr. stōw. — ²⁴⁾ *kìnd* = Gattung, Art. — ²⁵⁾ *to scrèam* = kreischen. — ²⁶⁾ *talon*, spr. táln, ist das französische, *claw* das deutsche Wort. — ²⁷⁾ *cárrion* = aasig, ungenießbar.

devour²⁸⁾ me; though, as I afterwards found, there was really no need for those fears.

However, as well as I could, I barricadoed myself round with the chests and boards that I had brought on shore, and made a kind of a hut for that night's lodging. As for food, I yet saw not which way to supply myself, except that I had seen two or three creatures, like hares, run out of the wood where I shot the fowl.

XI. — I now began to consider, that I might yet get a great many things out of the ship, which would be useful to me, and particularly some of the rigging and sails, and such other things as might come to land; and I resolved to make another voyage on board the vessel, if possible. And as I knew that the first storm that blew must necessarily break her all in pieces, I resolved to set all other things apart, till I got every thing out of the ship that I could get. Then I called a council, that is to say, in my thoughts, whether I should take back the raft; but this appeared impracticable: so I resolved to go as before, when the tide was down; and I did so, only that I stripped before I went from my hut; having nothing on but a chequered shirt, a pair of linen drawers, and a pair of pumps¹⁾ on my feet.

I got on board the ship as before, and prepared a second raft; and having had experience of the first I neither made this so unwieldly²⁾, nor loaded it so hard, but yet I brought away several things very useful to me: as, first, in the carpenter's stores, I found two or three bags full of nails and spikes³⁾, a great screw-jack⁴⁾, a dozen or two of hatchets; and, above all, that most useful thing called a grind-stone. All these I secured together, with several things belonging to the gunner; particularly two or three iron crows⁵⁾, and two barrels of musquet bullets, seven musquets, and another fowling-piece, with some small quantity of powder more; a large bag-full of small shot⁶⁾, and a great roll of sheet-

²⁸⁾ Spr. *dévour*'.

XI. — ¹⁾ *pumps* sind leichte Schuhe. — ²⁾ *unwieldly* = schwerfällig. — ³⁾ *spike*, Spiker, ist ein langer, eiserner Nagel. — ⁴⁾ *screw-jack* = Schraubenschlüssel. — ⁵⁾ *crow* = Brechstange = *crow-bar*. — ⁶⁾ *small shot* = feines Schrot.

lead⁷⁾; but this last was so heavy I could not hoist it up to get it over the ship's side.

Besides these things, I took all the men's clothes that I could find, and a spare fore-top sail, a hammock, and some bedding; and with this I loaded my second raft, and brought them all safe on shore, to my very great comfort.

I was under some apprehensions, during my absence from the land, that at least my provisions might be devoured on shore: but when I came back, I found no sign of any visitor; only there sat a creature like a wild cat, upon one of the chests, which, when I came towards it, ran away a little distance, and then stood still. She sat very composed and unconcerned⁸⁾, and looked full in my face, as if she had a mind to be acquainted with me. I presented my gun to her, but, as she did not understand it, she was perfectly unconcerned at it, nor did she offer to stir away⁹⁾; upon which I tossed her a bit of biscuit, though, by the way, I was not very free of¹⁰⁾ it, for my store was not great: however, I spared her a bit, I say, and she went to it, smelled of it, and ate it, and looked (as pleased) for more; but I thanked her, and could spare no more: so she marched off.

Having got my second cargo on shore, though I was fain to open the barrels of powder, and bring them by parcels, for they were too heavy, being large casks, I went to work to make me a little tent, with the sail, and some poles, which I cut for that purpose; and into this tent I brought every thing that I knew would spoil either with rain or sun; and I piled all the empty chests and casks up in a circle round the tent, to fortify it from any sudden attempt either from man or beast.

When I had done this, I blocked up the door of the tent with some boards within, and an empty chest set up an end without¹¹⁾, and spreading one of the beds upon the ground, laying my two pistols just at my head, and my gun at length by me, I went to bed for the first time, and slept very quietly all night, for I was very weary and heavy¹²⁾; for the night

⁷⁾ *sheet-lead* = Blattblei, Stangenblei. — ⁸⁾ *composed and unconcerned* = ruhig und ohne arg. — ⁹⁾ „auch schickte sie sich nicht an wegzugehen“. — ¹⁰⁾ *to be free of* = reich versehen sein mit. — ¹¹⁾ Erkläre: „welche draussen auf die Kante gestellt wurde“. — ¹²⁾ *heavy* schläfrig.

before I had slept little, and had laboured very hard all day, as well to fetch all those things from the ship, as to get them on shore.

I had the biggest magazine of all kinds now that ever was laid up, I believe, for one man; but I was not satisfied still: for while the ship sat upright in that posture, I thought I ought to get every thing out of her that I could: so every day, at low water, I went on board, and brought away something or other; but particularly the third time I went, I brought away as much of the rigging as I could, as also all the small ropes and rope-twine¹³⁾ I could get, with a piece of spare canvass¹⁴⁾, which was to mend the sails upon occasion, and the barrel of wet gunpowder. In a word, I brought away all the sails first and last; only that I was fain to cut them in pieces, and bring as much at a time as I could; for they were no more useful to be sails, but as mere canvass only.

But that which comforted me more still, was, that at last of all, after I had made five or six such voyages as these, and thought I had nothing more to except from the ship that was worth my meddling with¹⁵⁾; I say, after all this, I found a great hogshead¹⁶⁾ of bread, and three large runlets¹⁷⁾ of rum or spirits, and a box of sugar, and a barrel of fine flour; this was surprising to me, because I had given over expecting any more provisions, except what was spoiled by the water. I soon emptied the hogshead of that bread, and wrapped it up, parcel by parcel, in pieces of the sails, which I cut out; and, in a word, I got all this safe on shore also.

The next day I made another voyage, and now having plundered the ship of what was portable and fit to hand out, I began with the cables, and cutting the great cable into pieces, such as I could move, I got two cables and a hawser¹⁸⁾ on shore, with all the iron-work I could get; and having cut down every thing I could, to make a large raft, I loaded it with all those heavy goods; and came away; but my good luck began now to leave me; for this raft was so unwieldy, and so overladen, that after I was entered the little cove,

¹³⁾ *rope-twine* = Seilgarn, Bindfaden. — ¹⁴⁾ *cánvass* = (grobe) Hanfleinwand. — ¹⁵⁾ *my meddling with* = daßs ich mich damit befaßte. — ¹⁶⁾ *hogshead* = Oxhoft, denn in Fässern wird das Schiffsbrot verpackt. — ¹⁷⁾ *runlet* = *rundlet* = Fäfschen. — ¹⁸⁾ *håwser* = Schlepptau.

where I had landed the rest of my goods, not being able to guide it so handily as I did the other, it overset, and threw me and all my cargo into the water; as for myself, it was no great harm, for I was near the shore; but as to my cargo, it was a great part of it lost, especially the iron, which I expected would have been of great use to me: however, when the tide was out, I got most of the pieces of cable ashore, and some of the iron, though with infinite¹⁹⁾ labour; for I was fain²⁰⁾ to dip for it into the water, a work which fatigued me very much. After this I went every day on board, and brought away what I could get.

I had been now thirteen days on shore, and had been eleven times on board the ship; in which time I had brought away all that one pair of hands could well be supposed capable to bring; though I believe verily, had the calm weather held, I should have brought away the whole ship, piece by piece; but preparing the twelfth time to go on board, I found the wind began to rise: however, at low water, I went on board; and though I thought I had rummaged the cabin so effectually, as that nothing more could be found, yet I discovered a locker²¹⁾ with drawers in it, in one of which I found two or three razors²²⁾, and one pair of large scissars, with some ten or a dozen of good knives and forks: in another I found about thirty-six pounds value in money, some European coin, some Brasil, some pieces of eight, some gold, some silver.

I smiled to myself at the sight of this money: "O drug²³⁾!" said I aloud, "what art thou good for? Thou art not worth to me, no, not the taking off of the ground; one of those knives is worth all this heap: I have no manner of use for thee; e'en remain where thou art, and go to the bottom, as a creature whose life is not worth saving." However, upon second thoughts, I took it away; and wrapping all this in a piece of canvass, I began to think of making another raft;

¹⁹⁾ Spr. ín'-fènit. — ²⁰⁾ *to be fain* mit dem Infinitiv = etwas gern thun. — ²¹⁾ *locker* ist ein verschließbarer Schrank, *lock* = Schloß; *dråwer* = Zug, Auszug, Kasten; vgl. *chest of drawers* = Kommode (Kiste mit Auszügen). — ²²⁾ Spr. à. — ²³⁾ *drug* ist unser plattdeutsches drög = trocken, Dröges = etwas Getrocknetes, und bedeutet zunächst getrocknete Kräuter, Apothekerware, Drogue, wie man sich gewöhnlich mit der französischen Form ausdrückt, sodann heißt es auch verlegene, unverkäufliche Ware und steht hier in der Bedeutung von Plunder.

but while I was preparing this, I found the sky overcast, and the wind began to rise, and in a quarter of an hour it blew a fresh gale from the shore. It presently occurred to me, that it was in vain to pretend to make a raft with the wind off shore; and that it was my business to be gone before the tide of flood began, otherwise I might not be able to reach the shore at all. Accordingly I let myself down into the water, and swam across the channel which lay between the ship und the sands, and even that with difficulty enough, partly with the weight of the things I had about me, and partly the roughness of the water; for the wind rose very hastily, and before it was quite high water it blew a storm.

But I was gotten home to my little tent, where I lay, with all my wealth about me very secure. It blew very hard all that night, and in the morning, when I looked out, behold, no more ship was to be seen! I was a little surprised, but recovered myself with this satisfactory reflection, viz. that I had lost no time, nor abated no diligence²⁴⁾, to get every thing out of her that could be useful to me, and that, indeed, there was little left in her that I was able to bring away, if I had had more time.

I now gave over any more thoughts of the ship, or of any thing out of her, except what might drive on shore, from her wreck; as, indeed, divers²⁵⁾ pieces of her afterwards did; but those things were of small use to me.

XII. — My thoughts were now wholly employed about securing myself against either savages, if any should appear, or wild beasts, if any were in the island; and I had many thoughts of the method how to do this, and what kind of dwelling to make, whether I should make me a cave in the earth, or a tent upon the earth: and in short, I resolved upon both; the manner and description of which, it may not be improper to give an account of.

²⁴⁾ „und auch im Eifer nicht nachgelassen“. — ²⁵⁾ Die englischen Ausdrücke für verschieden = *different, distinct, various, several, sundry, divers* sind folgendermaßen auseinander zu halten: *different*, allgemeiner Ausdruck für verschieden, *distinct*, sich deutlich unterscheidend, *various*, verschiedenartig, mannigfaltig, *divers*, mehr als eins, mehrfache, *diverse*, aber nicht eine große Anzahl, *several*, verschiedene mehrere = *sundry*, welches mehr dichterisch ist.

I soon found the place I was in was not for my settlement, particularly because it was upon a low, moorish ground, near the sea, and I believed it would not be wholesome¹⁾; and more particularly because there was no fresh water near it: so I resolved to find a more healthy and more convenient spot of ground.

I consulted several things in my situation, which I found would be proper for me: 1st, Health and fresh water, I just now mentioned; 2dly, Shelter from the heat of the sun; 3dly, Security from ravenous creatures, whether men or beasts; 4thly, A view to the sea, that if God sent any ship in sight, I might not lose any advantage for my deliverance, of which I was not willing to banish all my expectation yet.

In search of a place proper for this, I found a little plain on the side of a rising hill, whose front towards this little plain was steep as a house-side, so that nothing could come down upon me from the top. On the side of this rock there was a hollow place, worn²⁾ a little way in, like the entrance or door of a cave; but there was not really any cave, or way into the rock, at all.

On the flat of the green, just before this hollow place, I resolved to pitch my tent³⁾. This plain was not above a hundred yards broad, and about twice as long, and lay like a green before my door; and, at the end of it, descended irregularly every way down into the low ground by the sea side. It was on the N. N. W. side of the hill; so that it was sheltered from the heat every day, till it came to a W. and by S.⁴⁾ sun, or thereabouts, which, in those countries, is near the setting.

Before I set up my tent, I drew a half-circle before the hollow place, which took in about ten yards in its semi-diameter⁵⁾ from the rock, and twenty yards in its diameter, from its beginning and ending.

XII. — 1) *whōlesome*, gesund, hängt zusammen mit heil und entspricht also genau unserm heilsam; dazu gehört natürlich auch *whole* = ganz. — 2) *worn in* = ausgehöhlt. — 3) *to pitch a tent* = ein Zelt aufschlagen. — 4) *W. by S.* = *West by South*. Dieser Punkt der zweiunddreißigteiligen Windrose liegt, vom Westpunkte aus gerechnet, um ein Teil nach dem Südpunkte zu. — 5) Spr. *sém'-mè-diám'-mètr*, wobei die erste Silbe den Nebenton, die vierte den Hauptton hat.

In this half-circle I pitched two rows⁶⁾ of strong stakes, driving them into the ground till they stood very firm like piles, the biggest end being out of the ground about five feet and a half and sharpened on the top. The two rows did not stand above six inches from one another.

Then I took the pieces of cable which I had cut in the ship, and laid them in rows, one upon another, within the circle, between these two rows of stakes, up to the top, placing other stakes in the inside, leaning against them, about two feet and a half high, like a spur⁷⁾ to a post; and this fence was so strong, that neither man nor beast could get into it or over it. This cost me a great deal of time and labour, especially to cut the piles in the woods, bring them to the place, and drive them into the earth.

The entrance into this place I made to be not by a door, but by a short ladder to go over the top; which ladder, when I was in, I lifted over after me; and so I was completely fenced in and fortified, as I thought, from all the world, and consequently slept secure in the night, which otherwise I could not have done; though, as it appeared afterwards, there was no need of all this caution from the enemies that I apprehended danger from.

Into this fence, or fortress, with infinite labour, I carried all my riches, all my provisions, ammunition, and stores, of which you have the account above; and I made me a large tent, which, to preserve me from the rains, that in one part of the year are very violent there, I made double, viz. one smaller tent within, and one larger tent above it, and covered the uppermost with a large tarpaulin⁸⁾, which I had saved among the sails.

And now I lay no more for a while in the bed which I had brought on shore, but in a hammock, which was indeed a very good one, and belonged to the mate⁹⁾ of the ship.

Into this tent I brought all my provisions, and every thing that would spoil by the wet; and having thus enclosed all my goods, I made up the entrance which till now I had left open, and so passed and repassed, as I said, by a short ladder.

⁶⁾ *rōw* = Reihe. — ⁷⁾ *spur*, eig. Sporn, ist die Strebe, die Stütze eines Pfostens. — ⁸⁾ *tarpaulin*, spr. *tārpå'-lín*, ist die Per-senning, ein Stück geteertes Segeltuch, womit man Sachen gegen die Nässe schützt. — ⁹⁾ Cf. II, 31.

When I had done this, I began to work my way into the rock, and bringing all the earth and stones that I dug down out through¹⁰⁾ my tent, I laid them up within my fence in the nature of a terrace, so that it raised the ground within about a foot and an half; and thus I made me a cave, just behind my tent, which served me like a cellar¹¹⁾ to my house.

It cost me much labour and many days, before all these things were brought to perfection; and therefore I must go back to some other things which took up¹²⁾ some of my thoughts. At the same time it happened, after I had laid my scheme for the setting up my tent, and making the cave, that a storm of rain falling from a thick, dark cloud, a sudden flash of lightning happened, and after that, a great clap of thunder, as is naturally the effect of it; I was not so much surprised with the lightning, as I was with a thought, which darted into my mind as swift as the lightning itself: O my powder! My very heart sunk within me when I thought, that at one blast, all my powder might be destroyed; on which, not my defence only, but the providing me food, as I thought, entirely depended. I was nothing near so anxious about my own danger, though, had the powder took¹³⁾ fire, I had never known who had hurt me.

Such impression did this make upon me, that after the storm was over, I laid aside all my works, my building and fortifying, and applied myself to make bags and boxes, to separate the powder, and to keep it a little and a little in a parcel¹⁴⁾, in hope that whatever might come, it might not all take fire at once; and to keep it so apart, that it should not be possible to make one part fire another. I finished this work in about a fortnight; and I think my powder, which in all was about 240lb¹⁵⁾, weight, was divided in not less than a hundred parcels. As to the barrel that had been wet I did not apprehend any danger from that; so I placed it in my new cave, which, in my fancy, I called my kitchen, and the rest I hid up and down¹⁵⁾ in holes among the rocks, so that no wet might come to it, marking very carefully where I laid it.

¹⁰⁾ Beziehung von *out through*. — ¹¹⁾ Spr. *c* = *s*. — ¹²⁾ *to take up* = in Anspruch nehmen. — ¹³⁾ Erkläre: in kleine Päckchen verteilt. — ¹⁴⁾ Cf. III, 19. — ¹⁵⁾ *up and down* = oben und unten, hier und da.

In the interval of time while this was doing¹⁶⁾, I went out once at least every day with my gun, as well to divert myself, as to see if I could kill any thing fit for food; and, as near¹⁷⁾ as I could, to acquaint myself with what the island produced. The first time I went out, I presently discovered that there were goats in the island, which was a great satisfaction to me; but then it was attended with this misfortune to me, viz. that they were so shy, so subtle¹⁸⁾, and so swift of foot, that it was the difficultest¹⁹⁾ thing in the world to come at them: but I was not discouraged at this, not doubting but I might now and then shoot one, as it soon happened; for after I had found their haunts²⁰⁾ a little, I laid wait²¹⁾ in this manner for them: I observed, if they saw me in the valleys, though they were upon the rocks, they would run away as in a terrible fright; but if they were feeding in the valleys, and I was upon the rocks, they took no notice of me; from whence I concluded, that by the position of their optics²²⁾, their sight was so directed downward, that they did not readily see objects that were above them: so, afterwards, I took this method, I always climbed²³⁾ the rocks first, to get above them, and then had frequently a fair mark²⁴⁾.

The first shot I made among these creatures, I killed a she-goat, which had a little kid by her, which she gave suck to, which²⁵⁾ grieved me heartily; but when the old one fell, the kid stood stock²⁶⁾ still by her, till I came and took her up; and not only so, but when I carried the old one with me, upon my shoulders, the kid followed me quite to my enclosure; upon which, I laid down the dam²⁷⁾, and took the kid in my arms, and carried it over my pale, in hopes to

¹⁶⁾ Dem passiven Partizip wird die Form des aktiven mit passiver Bedeutung vorgezogen, wenn das Subjekt nicht als selbstthätig gedacht werden kann, z. B. The book is printing = das Buch wird gedruckt; cf. Gesenius II, § 178. — ¹⁷⁾ *near* hier = eingehend. — ¹⁸⁾ *subtle*, mit stummem b, abgekürzt aus *subtile* = schlau. — ¹⁹⁾ NB. ?! — ²⁰⁾ *haunt* = häufig besuchter Ort, Lager, Standort. — ²¹⁾ *to lay wait* = einen Hinterhalt legen, — ²²⁾ *optics* = Sehwerkzeuge. — ²³⁾ *to climb*, mit stummem b, klimmen, erklimmen. — ²⁴⁾ *fair mark* = gutes Ziel, schönes Abkommen. — ²⁵⁾ Beziehung?! — ²⁶⁾ *stock* ist auch im Deutschen gewissermaßen Adverbium geworden und bezeichnet in Verbindung mit Adjektiven einen hohen Grad, denn außer stockstill haben wir noch stocktaub, stockstumm, stockblind etc. — ²⁷⁾ *dam* = Muttertier, im Gegensatz zu dem Jungen = *kid*.

have bred it up tame; but it would not eat; so I was forced to kill it, and eat it myself. These two supplied me with flesh a great while, for I ate sparingly, and saved my provisions, my bread especially, as much as possibly I could.

XIII. — Having now fixed my habitation, I found it absolutely necessary to provide a place to make a fire in, and fuel to burn; and what I did for that, as also how I enlarged my cave, and what conveniences¹⁾ I made, I shall give a full account of in its place: but I must first give some little account of myself, and of my thoughts about living, which, it may well be supposed, were not a few.

I had a dismal prospect of my condition, for as I was not cast away upon that island without being driven, as is said, by a violent storm, quite out of the course of our intended voyage, and a great way, viz. some hundreds of leagues, out of the ordinary course of the trade of mankind, I had great reason to consider it as a determination of Heaven, that in this desolate place, and in this desolate manner, I should end my life. The tears would²⁾ run plentifully down my face when I made these reflections; and sometimes I would expostulate with myself why Providence should thus completely ruin its creatures, and render them so absolutely miserable; so without help abandoned, so entirely depressed, that it could hardly be rational to be thankful for such a life.

But something always returned swift upon me to check these thoughts, and to reprove me: and particularly, one day, walking with my gun in my hand, by the sea side, I was very pensive upon the subject of my present condition, when reason, as it were, expostulated with me the other way, thus! "Well, you are in a desolate condition, it is true; but, pray remember³⁾, where are the rest of you? Did not you come eleven of you⁴⁾ into the boat? Where are the ten? Why were not they saved, and you lost? Why were you singled out? Is it better to be here or there?" And then I pointed to the sea. All evils are to be considered with the good that is in them, and with what worse attends them.

XIII. — ¹⁾ *convèniences* = bequeme Einrichtungen. — ²⁾ *would* = pflegten. — ³⁾ Wer ist damit angeredet?! — ⁴⁾ *cleven of you* = eurer elf.

Then it occurred to me again, how well I was furnished for my subsistence, and what would have been my case if it had not happened (which was a hundred thousand to one) that the ship floated from the place where the first struck, and was driven so near to the shore, that I had time to get all these things out of her: what would have been my case, if I had been to have lived in the condition in which I at first came on shore, without necessities of life, or necessities to supply and procure them? "Particularly," said I aloud (though to myself) "what should I have done without a gun, without ammunition, without any tools to make any thing, or to work with, without clothes, bedding, a tent, or any manner of covering?" and that now I had all these to a sufficient quantity, and was in a fair way to provide myself in such a manner as to live without my gun, when my ammunition was spent: so that I had a tolerable view of subsisting, without any want, as long as I lived; for I considered, from the beginning, how I would provide for the accidents that might happen, and for the time that was to come⁵), even not only after my ammunition should be spent, but even after my health and strength should decay.

I confess, I had not entertained any notion of my ammunition being destroyed at one blast, I mean my powder being blown up by lightning; and this made the thoughts of it so surprising to me, when it lightened and thundered, as I observed just now.

And now being to enter into a melancholy relation of a scene of silent life, such, perhaps, as was never heard of in the world before, I shall take it from its beginning, and continue it in its order. It was, by my account, the 30th of September, when, in the manner as above said, I first set foot upon this horrid island; when the sun being to us its autumnal equinox⁶), was almost just over my head: for I reckoned myself, by observation, to be in the latitude of 9 degrees 22 minutes north of the Line.

After I had been there about ten or twelve days, it came into my thoughts, that I should lose my reckoning of time for want of books, and pen and ink, and should even forget

⁵) NB. frz. *le temps à venir* = *l'avenir* = Zukunft. — ⁶) *autumnal équinocx* = Herbst-Tagundnachtgleiche.

the sabbath days from the working days: but to prevent this, I cut it with my knife upon a large post, in capital letters⁷⁾; and making it into a great cross, I set it up on the shore where I first landed, viz. "I came on shore here on the 30th of September, 1659."

Upon the sides of this square post I cut every day a notch with my knife, and every seventh notch was as long again as the rest, and every first day of the month as long again as that long one; and thus I kept my calendar, or weekly, monthly, and yearly reckoning of time.

In the next place we are to observe that among the many things which I brought out of the ship, in the several voyages which, as above mentioned, I made to it, I got several things of less value, but not all less useful to me, which I omitted setting down before; as, in particular, pens, ink, and paper; several parcels in the captain's, mate's, gunner's, and carpenter's keeping; three or four compasses, some mathematical instruments, dials⁸⁾, perspectives, charts, and books of navigation; all which I huddled⁹⁾ together, whether I might want them or no: also I found three very good bibles, which came to me in my cargo from England, and which I had packed up among my things; some Portuguese books also, and, among them, two or three popish¹⁰⁾ prayer books, and several other books, all which I carefully secured. And I must not forget, that we had in the ship a dog, and two cats, of whose eminent history I may have occasion to say something, in its place: for I carried both the cats with me; and as for the dog, he jumped out of the ship of himself, and swam on shore to me the day after I went on shore with my first cargo, and was a trusty servant to me many years: I wanted nothing that he could fetch me, nor any company that he could make up¹¹⁾ to me; I only wanted to have him talk to me, but that would not do. As I observed before, I found pens, ink, and paper, and I husbanded them to the utmost; and I shall show that while my ink lasted, I kept things

7) *capital letters* = Hauptbuchstaben, grofse Buchstaben. — 8) *dial* = Sonnenring, Sonnenuhr, vom lat. *dies*, *dialis*. — 9) *to huddle* = durcheinander werfen, ohne Ordnung zusammenlegen, ist unser mundartliches hudeln. — 10) *popish* = papistisch, päpstlich, katholisch. — 11) *to make up* = ersetzen.

very exact, but after that was gone I could not; for I could not make any ink, by any means that I could devise.

And this put me in mind that I wanted many things, notwithstanding all that I had amassed together; and of these, this of ink was one; as also a spade, pick-axe, and shovel, to dig or remove the earth; needles, pins, and thread: as for linen, I soon learned to want that without much difficulty.

This want of tools made every work I did go on heavily; and it was near a whole year before I had entirely finished my little pale, or surrounded my habitation. The piles or stakes, which were as heavy as I could well lift, were a long time in cutting¹²⁾ and preparing in the woods, and more, by far, in bringing home; so that I spent sometimes two days in cutting and bringing home one of those posts, and a third day in driving it into the ground; for which purpose, I got a heavy piece of wood at first, but at last bethought myself of one of the iron crows; which, however, though I found it, yet it made driving those posts or piles very laborious and tedious work. But what need I have been concerned¹³⁾ at the tediousness of any thing I had to do, seeing I had time enough to do it in? nor had I any other employment, if that had been over, at least that I could foresee, except the ranging the island to seek for food, which I did, more or less, every day.

XIV. — Having now brought my mind a little to relish my condition, and given over¹⁾ looking out to sea, to see if I could spy a ship; I say, giving over these things, I began to apply myself to accommodate my way of living, and to make things as easy to me as I could.

I have already described my habitation, which was a tent under the side of a rock, surrounded with a strong pale²⁾ of posts and cables; but I might now rather call it a wall, for I raised a kind of wall up against it of turfs³⁾, about two feet thick on the outside: and after some time (I think it was a year and a half) I raised rafters from it, leaning to

¹²⁾ *to be a long time in*, c. Ger. = langer Zeit bedürfen, um c. Inf. Praes. Pass. — ¹³⁾ Erkläre: „Aber was zwang mich denn, ungehalten zu sein —“.

XIV. — ¹⁾ *to give over* = aufgeben. — ²⁾ *pale* = Pfahl und Pfahlwerk, Zaun. — ³⁾ *turfs* = Rasenstücke; NB. vgl. unser Torf.

the rock, and thatched⁴⁾ or covered it with boughs⁵⁾ of trees, and such things as I could get, to keep out the rain; which I found, at some times of the year, very violent.

I have already observed how I brought all my goods into this pale, and into the cave which I had made behind me. But I must observe too, that at first this was a confused heap of goods, which, as they lay in no order, so they took up all my place; I had no room to turn myself: so I set myself to enlarge my cave, and work farther into the earth; for it was a loose, sandy rock, which yielded easily to the labour I bestowed on it: and so when I found I was pretty safe as to beasts of prey, I worked sideways, to the right hand, into the rock, and then turning to the right again, worked quite out, and made me a door to come out on the outside of my pale or fortification.

This gave me not only egress and regress, as it was a back-way to my tent and to my storehouse, but gave me room to stow my goods.

And now I began to apply myself to make such necessary things as I found I most wanted, as particularly a chair and a table; for without these I was not able to enjoy the few comforts I had in the world; I could not write, or eat, or do several things with so much pleasure, without a table: so I went to work. And here I must needs observe, that as reason is the substance and original of the mathematics, so by stating and squaring every thing by reason, and by making the most rational judgment of things, every man may be, in time, master of every mechanic⁶⁾ art. I had never handled a tool in my life; and yet, in time, by labour, application, and contrivance, I found, at last, that I wanted nothing but I could have made it, especially if I had had tools. However, I made abundance of things, even without tools; and some with no more tools than an adze⁷⁾ and a hatchet, which perhaps were never made that way before, and that with infinite labour. For example, if I wanted a board, I had no other way but to cut down a tree, set it on an edge before me, and hew it flat on either side with my axe, till I had brought it to

⁴⁾ *to thatch* = (mit Stroh) eindecken, von *thatch* = Strohdach, verwandt mit Dach und Decken. — ⁵⁾ Spr. bous. — ⁶⁾ Spr. mèkán'-ik. — ⁷⁾ *ádze* ist die Krummaxt, das Böttcherbeil (dessen Schneide nicht geradlinig, sondern an der untern Ecke abgerundet ist).

be thin as a plank, and then dub⁸⁾ it smooth with my adze. It is true, by this method I could make but one board out of a whole tree; but this I had no remedy for but patience, any more than I had for the prodigious deal of time and labour which it took me up to make a plank or board: but my time or labour was little worth, and so it was as well employed one way as another.

However, I made me a table and a chair, as I observed above, in the first place; and this I did out of the short pieces of boards that I brought on my raft from the ship. But when I had wrought out some boards, as above, I made large shelves, of the breadth of a foot and a half, one over another all along one side of my cave, to lay all my tools, nails, and iron-work on; and, in a word, to separate every thing at large in their places, that I might come easily at them. I knocked pieces into the wall of the rock to hang my guns and all things that would hang up: so that had my cave been to be seen, it looked like a general magazine of all necessary⁹⁾ things; and I had every thing so ready at my hand, that it was a great pleasure to me to see all my goods in such order, and especially to find my stock of all necessaries so great.

And now it was when I began to keep a journal of every day's employment; for, indeed, at first, I was in too much hurry, and not only hurry as to labour, but in too much discomposure of mind; and my journal would have been full of many dull things: for example, I must have said thus, "*Sept. the 30th.* After I got to shore, and had escaped drowning¹⁰⁾, instead of being thankful to God for my deliverance, having first vomited¹¹⁾ with the great quantity of salt water which was gotten into my stomach, and recovering myself a little, I ran about the shore, wringing my hands, and beating my head and face; exclaiming at my misery, and crying out, 'I was undone, undone!' till, tired and faint, I was forced to lie down on the ground to repose; but durst not sleep, for fear of being devoured."

Some days after this, and after I had been on board the ship, and got all that I could out of her, yet I could not

⁸⁾ *to dúb* = schlagen, bearbeiten, arbeiten; es ist ein selteneres und provinziell gebräuchliches Wort mit der übertragenen Bedeutung zum Ritter schlagen, ernennen. — ⁹⁾ Der Ton liegt auf der ersten Silbe. — ¹⁰⁾ *drowning* = Ertrinken. — ¹¹⁾ Spr. *vóm'-ited*.

forbear¹²⁾ getting up to the top of a little mountain, and looking out to sea, in hopes of seeing a ship; then, fancy¹³⁾ at a vast distance, I spied a sail, please myself with the hopes of it, and, then after looking steadily, till I was almost blind, lose it quite and sit down and weep like a child, and thus encrease my misery by my folly.

But, having gotten over these things in some measure, and having settled my household-stuff and habitation, made me a table and a chair, and all as handsome about me as I could, I began to keep my journal; of which I shall here give you the copy (though in it will be told all these particulars over again) as long as it lasted; for, having no more ink, I was forced to leave it off.

THE JOURNAL.

XV. — *September 30th, 1659.* I, poor miserable Robinson Crusoe, being shipwrecked¹⁾, during a dreadful storm, in the offing, came on shore on this dismal unfortunate island, which I called the ISLAND OF DESPAIR; all the rest of the ship's company being drowned, and myself almost dead.

All the rest of that day I spent in afflicting myself at the dismal circumstances I was brought to, viz. I had neither food, house, clothes, weapon, nor place to fly to: and, in despair of any relief, saw nothing but death before me; either that I should be devoured by wild beasts, murdered by savages, or starved to death for want of food. At the approach of night I slept in a tree, for fear of wild creatures; but slept soundly, though it rained all night.

October 1. In the morning I saw, to my great surprise, the ship had floated²⁾ with the high tide, and was driven on shore again much nearer the island; which, as it was some comfort on one hand, for seeing her sit upright, and not broken to pieces, I hoped, if the wind abated, I might get on board, and get some food and necessaries out of her for my relief, so, on the other hand, it renewed my grief at the loss of my comrades, who, I imagined, if we had all staid on board,

¹²⁾ *I cannot forbear* = ich kann nicht umhin, kann mich nicht enthalten. — ¹³⁾ *fancy* = man stelle sich vor.

XV. — ¹⁾ NB. das w ist stumm. — ²⁾ *to float*, vom Wasser getragen werden, schwimmen, hängt zusammen mit flott und flößen.

might have saved the ship, or, at least, that they would not have been all drowned, as they were; and that, had the men been saved, we might perhaps have built us a boat, out of the ruins of the ship, to have carried us to some other part of the world. I spent great part³⁾ of this day in perplexing⁴⁾ myself on these things; but, at length, seeing the ship almost dry, I went upon the sand as near as I could, and then swam on board. This day also it continued raining, though with no wind at all.

From the 1st of *October* to the 24th. All these days entirely spent in many several voyages to get all I could out of the ship, which I brought on shore, every tide of flood, upon rafts. Much rain also in these days, though with some intervals of fair weather: but, it seems, this was the rainy season.

Oct. 20. I overset my raft, and all the goods I had got upon it; but being in shoal water, and the things being chiefly heavy, I recovered many of them when the tide was out.

Oct. 25. It rained all night and all day, with some gusts⁵⁾ of wind; during which time the ship broke in pieces, the wind blowing a little harder than before, and was no more to be seen, except the wreck of her, and that only at low water. I spent this day in covering and securing the goods which I had saved, that the rain might not spoil them.

Oct. 26. I walked about the shore almost all day, to find out a place to fix my habitation, greatly concerned to secure myself from any attack in the night, either from wild beasts or men. Towards night I fixed upon⁶⁾ a proper place, under a rock, and marked out a semi-circle for my encampment; which I resolved to strengthen with a work, wall, or fortification, made of double piles, lined within with cables, and without with turf.

From the 26th to the 30th, I worked very hard in carrying all my goods to my new habitation, though some part of the time it rained exceeding hard.

The 31st, in the morning, I went out into the island with my gun, to see for some food, and discover the country;

3) Der Artikel fehlt, weil der Ausdruck fast zum Adverbium geworden ist; ebenso wird *plenty* = eine Menge, sehr viel, gebraucht.

— 4) *to perplex* = quälen, plagen ist veraltet. — 5) *gust*, Windstofs, = *squall*, ist ganz andern Ursprungs als *gust* = Geschmack vom lat. *gustus*. — 6) *to fix upon* = die Augen heften auf, wählen.

when I killed a she-goat, and her kid followed me home, which I afterwards killed also, because it would not feed.

November 1. I set up my tent under a rock, and lay there for the first night; making it as large as I could, with stakes driven in to swing⁷⁾ my hammock upon.

Nov. 2. I set up all my chests and boards, and the pieces of timber which made my rafts, and with them formed a fence round me, a little within the place I had marked out for my fortification.

Nov. 3. I went out with my gun, and killed two fowls like ducks, which were very good food. In the afternoon went to work to make me a table.

Nov. 4. This morning I began to order my times of work, of going out with my gun, time of sleep, and time of diversion; viz. every morning I walked out with my gun for two or three hours, if it did not rain; then employed myself to work till about eleven o'clock; then eat what I had to live on; and from twelve to two I lay down to sleep, the weather being excessive hot; and then, in the evening to work again. The working part of this day and of the next were wholly employed in making my table, for I was yet but a very sorry workman⁸⁾, though time and necessity made me a complete natural mechanic⁸⁾ soon after, as I believe they would do any one else.

Nov. 5. This day went abroad with my gun and my dog, and killed a wild cat; her skin pretty soft, but her flesh good for nothing: every creature that I killed I took off the skins, and preserved them. Coming back by the sea-shore, I saw many sorts of sea-fowls which I did not understand⁹⁾, but was surprised, and almost frightened, with two or three seals¹⁰⁾, which, while I was gazing at, not well knowing what they were, got into the sea, and escaped me for that time.

Nov. 6. After my morning walk, I went to work with my table again, and finished it, though not to my liking; nor was it long before I learned to mend it.

⁷⁾ *to swing* = (schwingend) aufhängen. — ⁸⁾ *a very sorry workman* = ein ganzer Stümper von einem Handarbeiter; *a complete natural mechanic* = ein vollkommener Handwerker, der alles aus sich gelernt hat. Beachte auch den Gegensatz zwischen *workman* und *mechanic*. — ⁹⁾ *to understand* hier = kennen. — ¹⁰⁾ *sèal*, Seehund, heisst schon ahd. *selach*, *selah*; *sèal*, Siegel, dagegen vom lat. *sigillum*.

Nov. 7. Now it began to be settled fair¹¹⁾ weather. The 7th, 8th, 9th, 10th, and part of the 12th (for the 11th was Sunday) I took wholly up to make me a chair, and with much ado¹²⁾, brought it to a tolerable shape, but never to please me; and, even in the making, I pulled it in pieces several times.

Note. I soon neglected my keeping Sundays; for, omitting my mark for them on my post, I forgot which was which¹³⁾.

Nov. 13. This day it rained; which refreshed me exceedingly, and cooled the earth: but it was accompanied with terrible thunder and lightening, which frightened me dreadfully, for fear of my powder. As soon as it was over, I resolved to separate my stock of powder into as many little parcels as possible, that it might not be in danger.

Nov. 14, 15, 16. These three days I spent in making little square chests or boxes, which might hold about a pound, or two pound at most, of powder; and so, putting the powder in, I stowed it in places as secure and remote from one another as possible. On one of these three days I killed a large bird that was good to eat, but I knew not what to call it.

Nov. 17. This day I began to dig behind my tent, into the rock, to make room for my farther conveniency.

Note. Three things I wanted exceedingly for this work, viz. a pick-axe, a shovel, and a wheel-barrow¹⁴⁾, or basket; so I desisted from my work, and began to consider how to supply that want, and make me some tools. As for a pick-axe, I made use of the iron crows, which were proper enough, though heavy; but the next thing was a shovel or spade; this was so absolutely necessary, that, indeed, I could do nothing effectually without it; but what kind of one to make I knew not.

Nov. 18. The next day, in searching the woods, I found a tree of that wood, or like it, which, in the Brásils, they call the iron tree¹⁵⁾, for its exceeding hardness; of this, with great labour, and almost spoiling my axe, I cut a piece, and brought it home, too, with difficulty enough, for it was exceeding heavy. The excessive hardness of the wood, and my having no other way, made me a long while upon this ma-

¹¹⁾ *settled fair* = beständig schön. — ¹²⁾ *adò*, Mühe, ist entstanden zu denken aus *at* und *do*. — ¹³⁾ *which* = der betreffende. — ¹⁴⁾ *wheel-barrow* = Radbahre, Schubkarren. — ¹⁵⁾ *iron tree* = Eisenholzbaum (*Robinia panacoca*).

chine¹⁶⁾, for I worked it effectually, by little and little, into the form of a shovel or spade; the handle exactly shaped like ours in England, only that the broad part having no iron shod¹⁷⁾ upon it at bottom, it would not last me so long; however it served well enough for the uses which I had occasion to put it to; but never was a shovel, I believe, made after that fashion, or so long a-making¹⁸⁾.

I was still deficient, for I wanted a basket, or a wheelbarrow. A basket I could not make by any means, having no such things as twigs that would bend to make wicker-ware¹⁹⁾, at least, none yet found out; and as to a wheelbarrow, I fancied I could make all but the wheel, but that I had no notion of; neither did I know how to go about it; besides, I had no possible way to make the iron gudgeons²⁰⁾ for the spindle²⁰⁾ or axis of the wheel to run in, so I gave it over, and, so for carrying away the earth which I dug out of the cave, I made me a thing like a hod²¹⁾, which the labourers carry mortar in, when they serve the bricklayers²²⁾. This was not so difficult to me as the making the shovel; and yet this and the shovel, and the attempt which I made in vain to make a wheelbarrow, took me up no less than four days, I mean, always excepting my morning walk with my gun, which I seldom failed, and very seldom failed also bringing home something fit to eat.

Nov. 23. My other work having now stood still, because of my making these tools, when they were finished I went on, and working every day, as my strength and time allowed, I spent eighteen days entirely in widening and deepening my cave, that it might hold my goods commodiously.

Note. During all this time, I worked to make this room, or cave, spacious enough to accommodate me as a warehouse or magazine, a kitchen, a dining-room, and a cellar. As for my lodging, I kept to the tent; except that sometimes, in the wet season of the year, it rained so hard that I could not keep myself dry, which caused me afterwards to cover all

¹⁶⁾ Spr. máshèn'. — ¹⁷⁾ *shod* = *shoe* = Beschlag. — ¹⁸⁾ *to be a-making* = in der Mache, in Arbeit sein. — ¹⁹⁾ *wicker* = Weidengeflecht, *wicker-ware* = Korbmacherware. — ²⁰⁾ *gudgeons*, spr. gúd'-jns, sind die Lager, in denen der Zapfen, *spindle*, läuft. — ²¹⁾ *hod*, Kalkmulde, von unserm mundartlichen Hotze (Tragkorb). — ²²⁾ *bricklayer* = Barnsteinleger, Maurer.

my place within my pale with long poles, in the form of rafters, leaning against the rock, and loaded them with flags²³⁾ and large leaves of trees, like a thatch.

December 10. I began now to think my cave or vault finished; when on a sudden (it seems I had made it too large) a great quantity of earth fell down from the top and one side, so much, that, in short, it frightened me, and not without reason too; for if I had been under it, I had never wanted a grave-digger. Upon this disaster, I had a great deal of work to do over again, for I had the loose earth to carry out; and, which was of more importance, I had the ceiling to prop up²⁴⁾, so that I might be sure no more would come down.

Dec. 11. This day I went to work with it accordingly, and got two shores²⁵⁾ or posts pitched upright to the top, with two pieces of boards across over each post; this I finished the next day; and setting more posts up with boards, in about a week more I had the roof secured; and the posts, standing in rows, served me for partitions to part off my house.

Dec. 17. From this day to the 20th, I placed shelves, and knocked up nails on the posts, to hang every thing up that could be hung up; and now I began to be in some order within doors.

Dec. 20. Now I carried every thing into the cave, and began to furnish my house, and set up some pieces of boards, like a dresser²⁶⁾, to order my victuals upon; but boards began to be very scarce with me: also I made me another table.

Dec. 24. Much rain all night and all day: no stirring out.

Dec. 25. Rain all day.

Dec. 26. No rain, and the earth much cooler than before, and pleasanter.

Dec. 27. Killed a young goat, and lamed another, so as that I caught it, and led it home in a string; when I had it home, I bound and splintered up²⁷⁾ its leg, which was broke.

N. B. I took such care of it that it lived; and the leg grew well, and as strong as ever; but, by my nursing it so

²³⁾ *flags* sind Rasenstücke. — ²⁴⁾ *to prop up* = stützen, absteifen. — ²⁵⁾ *shore* heißt im Bauwesen die Strebe, der Stützbalken. — ²⁶⁾ *dresser* ist eigentlich die Anrichte, der Tisch, auf dem die Speisen zurecht gemacht werden (*to dress*). — ²⁷⁾ *to bind up* = verbinden; *to splinter up* = schienen, mit Splint in die richtige Lage bringen.

long, it grew tame, and fed upon the little green at my door, and would not go away. This was the first time that I entertained a thought of breeding up some tame creatures, that I might have food when my powder and shot was all spent.

Dec. 28, 29, 30, 31. Great heats²⁸), and no breeze; so that there was no stirring abroad, except in the evening, for food: this time I spent in putting all my things in order within doors.

XVI. — January 1. Very hot still, but I went abroad early and late with my gun, and lay still in the middle of day. This evening, going farther into the vallies¹) which lay towards the centre of island, I found there was plenty of goats, though exceeding shy, and hard to come at; however, I resolved to try if I could not bring my dog to hunt them down²).

Jan. 2. Accordingly, the next day, I went out with my dog, and set him upon the goats; but I was mistaken, for they all faced about upon³) the dog, and he knew his danger too well, for he would not come near them.

Jan. 3. I began my fence or wall; which, being still jealous⁴) of my being attacked by somebody, I resolved to make very thick and strong.

N. B. This wall being described before, I purposely omit what was said in the journal; it is sufficient to observe, that I was no less time than from the 3d of January to the 14th of April, working, finishing, and perfecting this wall; though it was no more than about 24 yards in length, being a half-circle, from one place in the rock to another place, about eight yards from it, the door of the cave being in the centre, behind it.

All this time I worked very hard; the rains hindering me many days, nay, sometimes weeks together: but I thought I should never be perfectly secure till this wall was finished; and it is scarce credible what inexpressible labour every thing was done with, especially the bringing piles out of the woods, and driving them into the ground; for I made them much bigger than I needed to have done.

²⁸) Beachte den Plural!

XVI. — ¹) *vallies* = *valleys* ist ganz veraltet. — ²) *to hunt down* = niedersetzen. — ³) *to face about upon* = Front machen gegen. — ⁴) *jèalous* = eifersüchtig, misstrauisch, besorgt, ängstlich.

When this wall was finished, and the outside double-fenced, with a turf-wall raised up close to it, I persuaded myself that if any people were to come on shore there they would not perceive any thing like a habitation; and it was very well I did so, as may be observed hereafter, upon a very remarkable occasion.

During this time, I made my rounds in the woods for game every day, when the rain permitted me, and made frequent discoveries, in these walks, of something or other to my advantage; particularly I found a kind of wild pigeons, who build, not as wood-pigeons, in a tree, but rather as house-pigeons, in the holes of the rocks; and, taking some young ones, I endeavoured to breed them up tame, and did so; but when they grew older, they flew all away, which, perhaps, was at first for want of feeding them, for I had nothing to give them; however, I frequently found their nests, and got their young ones, which were very good meat. And now, in the managing my household affairs, I found myself wanting in many things, which I thought at first it was impossible for me to make; as indeed, as to some of them, it was: for instance, I could never make a cask to be hooped⁵⁾. I had a small runlet or two, as I observed before, but I could never arrive to the capacity of making one by them, though I spent many weeks about it; I could neither put in the heads⁶⁾ or join the staves so true to one another as to make them hold water; so I gave that also over. In the next place, I was at great loss for candles; so that as soon as ever it was dark, which was generally by seven o'clock, I was obliged to go to bed. I remembered the lump of beeswax with which I made candles in my African adventure; but I had none of that now; the only remedy I had was, that when I had killed a goat, I saved⁷⁾ the tallow, and with a little dish made of clay, which I baked in the sun, to which I added a wick of some oakum⁸⁾, I made me a lamp; and this gave me light, though not a clear steady light like a candle. In the middle of all my labours it happened, that rummaging my things, I found a little bag; which, as I hinted before, had been filled with corn, for the

⁵⁾ *to hoop* = mit Reifen (*hoops*) belegen, binden. — ⁶⁾ *head* heisst merkwürdigerweise der Boden beim Fasse. — ⁷⁾ *to save* hier = sparen. — ⁸⁾ *a wick of some oakum* = ein Docht aus etwas Werg.

feeding of poultry, not for this voyage, but before, as I suppose, when the ship came from Lisbon. What little remainder of corn had been in the bag was all devoured with the rats, and I saw nothing in the bag but husks and dust; and being willing to have the bag for some other use (I think, it was to put powder in, when I divided it for fear of the lightning, or some such use) I shook the husks of corn out of it, on one side of my fortification, under the rock.

It was a little before the great rains just now mentioned, that I threw this stuff away, taking no notice of any thing, and not so much remembering that I had thrown any thing there; when about a month after, or thereabouts, I saw some few stalks⁹⁾ of something green, shooting out of the ground, which I fancied might be some plant I had not seen; but I was surprised, and perfectly astonished, when, after a little longer time, I saw about ten or twelve ears come out, which were perfect green barley of the same kind as our European, nay, as our English barley.

It is impossible to express the astonishment and confusion of my thoughts on this occasion: I had hitherto acted upon no religious foundation at all; indeed, I had very few notions of religion in my head, nor had entertained any sense of any thing that had befallen me, otherwise than as chance, or, as we lightly say, what pleases God; without so much as inquiring into the end of Providence in these things, or his order in governing events in the world. But after I saw barley grow there, in a climate which I knew was not proper for corn, and especially that I knew not how it came there, it startled me strangely, and I began to suggest, that God had miraculously caused this grain to grow without any help of seed sown, and that it was so directed purely for my sustenance, on that wild miserable place.

This touched my heart a little, and brought tears out of my eyes, and I began to bless myself that such a prodigy of nature should happen upon my account; and this was the more strange to me, because I saw near it still, all along by the side of the rock, some other straggling stalks, which proved to be stalks of rice, and which I knew, because I had seen it grow in Africa, when I was ashore there.

⁹⁾ *stalk* = Halm; NB. das 1 ist stumm.

I not only thought these the pure productions of Providence for my support, but, not doubting but that there was more in the place, I went all over that part of the island where I had been before, peering¹⁰⁾ in every corner, and under every rock, to see for more of it, but I could not find any. At last it occurred to my thoughts¹¹⁾, that I had shook a bag of chicken's meat¹²⁾ out in that place, and then the wonder began to cease; and I must confess, my religious thankfulness to God's providence began to abate too, upon the discovering that all this was nothing but what was common; though I ought to have been as thankful for so strange and unforeseen providence, as if it had been miraculous; for it was really the work of Providence as to me, that should order or appoint that ten or twelve grains of corn should remain unspoiled, when the rats had destroyed all the rest, as if it had been dropt from heaven; as also, that I should throw it out in that particular place, where, it being in the shade of a high rock, it sprang up immediately; whereas, if I had thrown it any where else, at that time, it had been burnt up and destroyed.

I carefully saved the ears of this corn, you may be sure, in their season, which was about the end of June; and, laying up every corn, I resolved to sow them all again, hoping, in time, to have some quantity sufficient to supply me with bread. But it was not till the fourth year that I could allow myself the least grain of this corn to eat, and even then but sparingly, as I shall say afterwards, in its order; for I lost all that I sowed the first season, by not observing the proper time; for I sowed it just before the dry season, so that it never came up at all, at least not as it would have done: of which in its place.

Besides this barley, there were, as above, twenty or thirty stalks of rice, which I preserved with the same care, and whose use was of the same kind, or to the same purpose, viz. to make me bread, or rather food; for I found ways to cook it up without baking, though I did that also after some time. — But to return to my Journal.

¹⁰⁾ *to peer*, gucken, erinnert an unser mundartliches pieren, z. B. der Hund piert, wenn er jemanden essen sieht. — ¹¹⁾ Erkläre: es fiel mir ein. — ¹²⁾ *chicken's meat* = Kükenfutter; denn *mèat* = Fleisch, Speise, Nahrung überhaupt; NB. spr. tshík'-kn.

I worked excessive hard these three or four months, to get my wall done; and 14th of April, I closed it up, contriving to go into it, not by a door, but over the wall, by a ladder, that there might be no sign on the outside of my habitation.

April 16. I finished the ladder; so I went up with the ladder to the top, and then pulled it up after me, and let it down in the inside: this was a complete enclosure to me; for within I had room enough, and nothing could come at me from without, unless it could first mount my wall.

XVII. — The very next day¹⁾ after this wall was finished, I had almost had all my labour overthrown at once, and myself killed; the case was thus: — As I was busy in the inside of it, behind my tent, just at the entrance into my cave, I was terribly frightened with a most dreadful surprising thing indeed; for, all on a sudden, I found the earth come crumbling²⁾ down from the roof of my cave, and from the edge of the hill over my head, and two of the posts I had set up in the cave cracked in a frightful manner. I was heartily scared³⁾, but thought nothing of what was really the cause, only thinking that the top of my cave was falling in, as some of it had done before: and for fear I should be buried in it, I ran forward to my ladder, and not thinking myself safe there neither⁴⁾, I got over my wall for fear of the pieces of the hill which I expected might roll down upon me. I was no sooner stepped down upon the firm ground, but I plainly saw it was a terrible earthquake: for the ground I stood on shook three times at about eight minutes distance, with three such shocks as would have overturned the strongest building that could be supposed to have stood on the earth; and a great piece of the top of a rock, which stood about half a mile from me, next the sea, fell down, with such a terrible noise as I never heard in all my life. I perceived also the very sea was put into violent motion⁵⁾ by it; and I believe the shocks were stronger under the water than on the island.

XVII. — ¹⁾ *the very next day* = gerade am nächsten Tage. — ²⁾ *to crumble*, bröckeln, ist unser krümeln, — ³⁾ *heartily scared* = im Herzen erschrocken. — ⁴⁾ *not — there neither* = auch dort nicht. — ⁵⁾ Natürlich giebt es auch Seebeben.

I was so much amazed with the thing itself, having never felt the like, nor discoursed with any one that had, that I was like one dead or stupified; and the motion of the earth made my stomach sick, like one that was tossed at sea; but the noise of the falling of the rock awaked me, as it were, and rousing me from the stupified condition I was in, filled me with horror, and I thought of nothing then but the hill falling upon my tent and all my household goods, and burying all at once; and this sunk my very soul within me a second time.

After the third shock was over, and I felt no more for some time, I began to take courage; and yet I had not heart enough to go over my wall again, for fear of being buried alive, but sat still upon the ground greatly cast down, and disconsolate, not knowing what to do. All this while, I had not the least serious religious thought; nothing but the common *Lord have mercy upon me!* and when it was over, that went away too.

While I sat thus, I found the air overcast⁶⁾, and grow⁷⁾ cloudy, as if it would rain; soon after that the wind rose by little and little, so that in less than half an hour it blew a most dreadful hurricane: the sea was, all on a sudden, covered over with foam and froth; the shore was covered with the breach of the water; the trees were torn up by the roots; and a terrible storm it was. This held about three hours, and then began to abate; and in two hours more it was stark calm, and began to rain very hard. All this while I sat upon the ground, very much terrified and dejected; when on a sudden it came into my thoughts, that these winds and rain being the consequences of the earthquake, the earthquake itself was spent and over, and I might venture into my cave again. With this thought my spirits began to revive; and the rain also helping to persuade⁸⁾ me, I went in, and sat down in my tent; but the rain was so violent, that my tent was ready to be beaten down with it; and I was forced to go into my cave, though very much afraid and uneasy, for fear it should fall on my head. This violent rain forced me to a new work, viz. to cut a hole through my new fortification, like a sink⁹⁾,

⁶⁾ *to overcast* = beziehen, bedecken; *air* = Himmel ist allerdings selten. — ⁷⁾ *grow* = *grown*. — ⁸⁾ Wie so das? — ⁹⁾ *sink* Abzug; cf. Senkgrube.

to let the water go out, which would else have drowned my cave. After I had been in my cave for some time, and found still no more shocks of the earthquake follow, I began to be more composed. And now to support my spirits, which indeed wanted it very much, I went to my little store, and took a small sup¹⁰⁾ of rum; which, however, I did then, and always, very sparingly knowing I could have no more when that was gone. It continued raining all that night, and great part of the next day, so that I could not stir abroad: but my mind being more composed, I began to think of what I had best do; concluding, that if the island was subject to these earthquakes, there would be no living for me in a cave, but I must consider of building me some little hut in an open place, which I might surround with a wall, as I had done here, and so make myself secure from wild beasts or men; but concluded if I staid where I was, I should certainly, one time or other, be buried alive.

With these thoughts, I resolved to remove my tent from the place where it now stood, which was just under the hanging precipice¹¹⁾ of the hill, and which, if it should be shaken again, would certainly fall upon my tent: and I spent the two next days, being the 19th and 20th of April, in contriving where and how to remove my habitation. The fear of being swallowed up alive, made me, that I never slept in quiet; and yet the apprehension of lying abroad, without any fence, was almost equal to it: but still, when I looked about, and saw how every thing was put in order, how pleasantly concealed I was, and how safe from danger, it made me very loth¹²⁾ to remove. In the mean time, it occurred to me that it would require a vast deal of time for me to do this, and that I must be contented to run the venture where I was, till I had formed a camp for myself, and had secured it so as to remove to it. So with this resolution I composed myself for a time; and resolved that I would go to work with all speed to build me a wall with piles and cables, &c. in a circle as before, and set my tent up in it when it was finished; but that I would venture to stay where I was till it was finished, and fit to remove to. This was the 21st.

¹⁰⁾ *súp* = Schluck. — ¹¹⁾ *hanging precipice*, spr. prés'-sépís, überhängender Rand. — ¹²⁾ Cf. VII, 3.

April 22. The next morning I began to consider of means to put this resolve into execution; but I was at a great loss¹³⁾ about my tools. I had three large axes, and abundance of hatchets (for we carried the hatchets for traffic with the Indians) but with much chopping and cutting knotty hard wood, they were all full of notches, and dull, and though I had a grindstone, I could not turn it and grind my tools too. This cost me as such thought as a statesman would have bestowed upon a grand point of politics, or a judge upon the life and death of a man. At length I contrived a wheel with a string, to turn it with my foot, that I might have both my hands at liberty.

Note. I had never seen any such thing in England, or at least not to take notice how it was done, though since I have observed it is very common there: besides that, my grindstone was very large and heavy. This machine cost me a full week's work to bring it to perfection.

April 28, 29. These two whole days I took up in grinding my tools, my machine for turning my grindstone performing¹⁴⁾ very well.

April 30. Having perceived my bread had been low a great while, now I took a survey of it, and reduced myself to one biscuit-cake a day, which made my heart very heavy.

May 1. In the morning, looking toward the sea-side, the tide being low, I saw something lie on the shore bigger than ordinary, and it looked like a cask; when I came to it, I found a small barrel, and two or three pieces of the wreck of the ship, which were driven on shore by the late hurricane; and looking towards the wreck itself, I thought it seemed to lie higher out of the water than it used to do. I examined the barrel which was driven on shore, and soon found it was a barrel of gunpowder, but it had taken water, and the powder was caked as hard as a stone; however, I rolled it farther on shore for the present, and went on upon the sands, as near as I could to the wreck of the ship, to look for more.

When I came down to the ship, I found it strangely removed. The fore-castle, which lay before buried in sand, was heaved up at least six feet, and the stern, which was broke

¹³⁾ *to be at a great loss* = sehr in Verlegenheit sein. — ¹⁴⁾ *to perform* = gehen (funktionieren).

to pieces, and parted from the rest, by the force of the sea, soon after I had left rummaging her, was tossed, as it were, up, and cast on one side, and the sand was thrown so high on that side next her stern, that whereas there was a great place of water before, so that I could not come within a quarter of a mile of the wreck without swimming, I could now walk quite up to her when the tide was out. I was surprised with this at first, but soon concluded it must be done by the earthquake; and as by this violence the ship was more broke open than formerly, so many things came daily on shore, which the sea had loosened, and which the winds and water rolled by degrees to the land.

This wholly diverted my thoughts from the design of removing my habitation, and I busied myself mightily, that day expecially, in searching whether I could make any way into the ship; but I found nothing was to be expected of that kind, for all the inside of the ship was choked up with sand. However, as I had learned not to despair of any thing, I resolved to pull every thing to pieces that I could of the ship, concluding that every thing I could get from her would be of some use or other to me.

XVIII. — *May 3.* I began with my saw, and cut a piece of a beam through, which I thought held some of the upper part or quarter deck together, and when I had cut it through, I cleared away the sand as well as I could from the side which lay highest; but the tide coming in, I was obliged to give over for that time.

May 4. I went a-fishing¹⁾, but caught not one fish that I durst eat of, till I was weary of my sport²⁾; when, just going to leave off, I caught a young dolphin. I had made me a long line of some ropeyarn, but I had no hooks: yet I frequently caught fish enough, as much as I cared to eat; all which I dried in the sun, and eat them dry.

XVIII. — ¹⁾ Cf. IV, 8. — ²⁾ *spōrt*, abgekürzt aus *to disport*, ist ebenso unübersetzbar als *gentleman*, denn z. B. *sportsman* ist keineswegs bloß = Jäger, sondern es bezeichnet einen Mann, der Vergnügungen der Art mit Leidenschaft und Geschick betreibt. Jagen, Fischen, Boxen, Pferderennen, Entenschießen, Fuchshetzen, Hahnenkämpfe etc., alles das ist in England *sport*.

May 5. Worked on the wreck; cut another beam asunder, and brought three great fir-planks off from the decks, which I tied together, and made swim on shore when the tide of flood came on.

May 6. Worked on the wreck; got several iron bolts out of her, and other pieces of iron-work; worked very hard, and came home very much tired, and had thoughts of giving it over.

May 7. Went to the wreck again, but not with an intent to work, but found the weight of the wreck had broke itself down, the beams being cut; that several pieces of the ship seemed to lie loose, and the inside of the hold lay so open that I could see into it, but almost full of water and sand.

May 8. Went to the wreck, and carried an iron crow to wrench up the deck, which lay now quite clear of the water or sand. I wrenched open two planks, and brought them on shore also with the tide. I left the iron crow in the wreck for next day.

May 9. Went to the wreck, and with the crow made way into the body of the wreck, and felt several casks and loosened them with the crow, but could not break them up. I felt also a roll of English lead, and could stir it, but it was too heavy to remove.

May 10—14. Went every day to the wreck; and got a great deal of pieces of timber, and boards, or plank³⁾, and two or three hundred weight of iron.

May 15. I carried two hatchets, to try if I could not cut a piece off of the roll of lead, by placing the edge of one hatchet, and driving it with the other; but as it lay about a foot and a half in the water, I could not make any blow to drive the hatchet.

May 16. It had blown hard in the night, and the wreck appeared more broken by the force of the water; but I staid so long in the woods, to get pigeons for food, that the tide prevented my going to the wreck that day.

May 17. I saw some pieces of the wreck blown on shore, at a great distance, near two miles off me, but resolved to see what they were, and found it was a piece of the head, but too heavy for me to bring away.

³⁾ *timber* = Zimmerholz, Balken; *boards* = Bretter; *plank* = Planken.

May 24. Every day, to this day, I worked on the wreck; and with hard labour I loosened some things so much with the crow, that the first blowing tide several casks floated out, and two of the sea-men's chests; but the wind blowing from the shore, nothing came to land that day but pieces of timber, and a hogshead, which had some Brasil pork in it, but the salt-water and the sand had spoiled it. I continued this work every day to the 15th of June, except the time necessary to get food, which I always appointed, during this part of my employment, to be when the tide was up, that I might be ready when it was ebbed out: and by this time I had gotten timber, and plank, and iron-work, enough to have built a good boat, if I had known how; and also I got, at several times, and in several pieces, near one hundred weight of the sheet-lead.

June 16. Going down to the sea-side, I found a large tortoise, or turtle⁴⁾. This was the first I had seen, which, it seems, was only my misfortune, not any defect of the place, or scarcity; for had I happened to be on the other side of the island, I might have had hundreds of them every day, as I found afterwards; but perhaps had paid dear⁵⁾ enough for them.

June 17. I spent in cooking the turtle. I found in her threescore⁶⁾ eggs; and her flesh was to me, at that time, the most savoury⁷⁾ and pleasant⁸⁾ that ever I tasted in my life, having had no flesh, but of goats and fowls, since I landed in this horrid place.

June 18. Rained all day, and I staid within. I thought, at this time, the rain felt cold⁹⁾, and I was something chilly¹⁰⁾; which I knew was not usual in that latitude.

June 19. Very ill, and shivering, as if the weather had been cold.

June 20. No rest all night; violent pains in my head, and feverish.

⁴⁾ *tortoise*, spr. *tór'-tís*, ist die dem Altfranzösischen näher stehende Form für *turtle* = Schildkröte. — ⁵⁾ *to pay dear for* = teuer zu stehen kommen; auf dem Ende der Insel landeten nämlich, wie später erzählt wird, die Menschenfresser. — ⁶⁾ *three-score* = drei Stiegen = sechzig; vgl. frz. *quatre-vingt*. — ⁷⁾ *savoury*, schmackhaft, geht zu lat. *sapere* = schmecken. — ⁸⁾ Spr. *éa*. — ⁹⁾ *to feel cold* = sich kalt anfühlen, kalt vorkommen, kalt sein. — ¹⁰⁾ *I was chilly* = es fröstelte mir.

June 21. Very ill; frightened almost to death with the apprehensions of my sad condition, to be sick, and no help: prayed to God, for the first time since the storm off of Hull, but scarce knew what I said, or why; my thoughts being all confused.

June 22. A little better; but under dreadful apprehensions of sickness.

June 23. Very bad again; cold and shivering, and then a violent head-ache.

June 24. Much better.

June 25. An ague¹¹⁾ very violent: the fit¹²⁾ held me seven hours; cold fit¹¹⁾, and hot, with faint sweats after it.

June 26. Better; and having no victuals to eat, took my gun, but found myself very weak: however, I killed a she-goat, and with much difficulty got it home, and broiled¹³⁾ some of it, and eat. I would fain have stewed¹⁴⁾ it, and made some broth, but had no pot.

June 27. The ague again so violent that I lay a-bed¹⁵⁾ all day¹⁶⁾, and neither eat nor drank. I was ready to perish for thirst; but so weak, I had not strength to stand up, or to get myself any water to drink. Prayed to God again, but was light-headed, and when I was not, I was so ignorant that I knew not what to say; only I lay and cried, "Lord, look upon me! Lord, pity me! Lord, have mercy upon me!" I suppose I did nothing else for two or three hours; till the fit wearing off, I fell asleep, and did not wake till far in the night. When I awoke, I found myself much refreshed, but weak, and exceeding thirsty: however, as I had no water in my whole habitation, I was forced to lie till morning, and went to sleep again. In this second sleep I had this terrible dream: I thought that I was sitting on the ground, on the outside of my wall, where I sat when the storm blew after the earthquake, and that I saw a man descend from a great black cloud, in a bright flame of fire, and light upon the

¹¹⁾ *ague*, spr. à'-gù, ist das Fieber, *fit* der einzelne Fieberanfall. — ¹²⁾ *fit* hier = *ague fit* = das ganze Fieberschauer. — ¹³⁾ *to broil* = auf dem Roste, am Spießse braten, denn er hatte noch keine Bratpfanne. — ¹⁴⁾ *to stew*, spr. stù, heißt schmoren und die dabei gewonnene Kraftbrühe = *broth*. — ¹⁵⁾ *to lie a-bed* = im Bett liegen; NB. das *a* ist aus *on* entstanden. — ¹⁶⁾ *all day* = den ganzen Tag = *all day long*.

ground: he was all over as bright as a flame, so that I could but just bear to look towards him: his countenance was most inexpressibly dreadful, impossible for words to describe; when he stepped upon the ground with his feet, I thought the earth trembled, just as it had done before in the earthquake, and all the air looked, to my apprehension, as if it had been filled with flashes of fire. He was no sooner landed upon the earth, but he moved forward towards me, with a long spear or weapon in his hand, to kill me; and when he came to a rising ground¹⁷⁾, at some distance, he spoke to me, or I heard a voice so terrible that it is impossible to express the terror of it; all that I can say I understood, was this: "Seeing all these things have not brought thee to repentance, now thou shalt die;" at which words I thought he lifted up the spear that was in his hand, to kill me.

No one that shall ever read this account, will expect that I should be able to describe the horrors of my soul at this terrible vision; I mean, that even while it was a dream, I even dreamed of those horrors; nor is it any more possible to describe the impression that remained upon my mind when I awaked, and found it was but a dream.

I had, alas! no divine knowledge¹⁸⁾; what I had received by the good instruction of my father was then worn out, by an uninterrupted series, for eight years, of seafaring wickedness, and a constant conversation with none but such as were, like myself, wicked and profane to the last degree. I do not remember that I had, in all that time, one thought that so much as tended¹⁹⁾ either to looking upwards towards God, or inwards towards a reflection upon my own ways; but a certain stupidity of soul, without desire of good, or conscience of evil, had entirely overwhelmed me; and I was all that the most hardened, unthinking, wicked creature among our common sailors, can be supposed to be; not having the least sense, either of the fear of God, in danger, or of thankfulness to God, in deliverance.

¹⁷⁾ *a rising ground* = eine Erhöhung des Bodens, Bodenanschwellung. — ¹⁸⁾ *divine knowledge* = Kenntniss von göttlichen Dingen; NB. k stumm vor n, also: nól'-lídj. — ¹⁹⁾ „der auch nur soviel bezweckte“.

XIX. — In the relating what is already past of my story, this will be the more easily believed, when I shall add, that through all the variety of miseries that had to this day befallen me, I never had so much as one thought of it being the hand of God, or that it was a just punishment for my sin; my rebellious behaviour against my father, or my present sins, which were great, or so much as a punishment for the general course of my wicked life. When I was on the desperate expedition on the desert shores of Africa, I never had so much as one thought of what would become of me, or one wish to God to direct me whither I should go, or to keep me from the danger which apparently surrounded me, as well from voracious creatures as cruel savages; but I was merely thoughtless of a God or a Providence, acted like a mere brute, from the principles of nature, and by the dictates of common sense only, and indeed hardly that. When I was delivered and taken up at sea by the Portugal captain, well used¹⁾, and dealt justly and honourably with¹⁾, as well as charitably, I had not the least thankfulness in my thoughts. When, again, I was shipwrecked, ruined, and in danger of drowning, on this island, I was as far from remorse, or looking on it as a judgment; I only said to myself often, that I was an unfortunate dog, and born to be always miserable.

Now, as the apprehension of the return of my distemper²⁾ terrified me very much, it occurred to my thought³⁾, that the Brazilians take no physic but their tobacco for almost all distempers, and I had a piece of a roll of tobacco in one of the chests, which was quite cured⁴⁾, and some also that was green, and not quite cured.

I went, directed by Heaven no doubt, for in this chest I found a cure both for soul and body. I opened the chest, and found what I looked for, viz. the tobacco; and as the few books I had saved lay there too, I took out one of the Bibles which I mentioned before, and which to this time I had not found leisure, or so much as inclination, to look into. I say, I took it out, and brought both that and the tobacco with me to the table. What use to make of the tobacco I knew not,

XIX. — ¹⁾ *to use well* = gut behandeln, *to deal with* = verfahren, umgehen mit; beide Ausdrücke sind aktivisch mit dem Subjekt man zu geben. — ²⁾ Cf. II, 22. — ³⁾ Cf. XVI, 11. — ⁴⁾ *to cure* hier = trocknen, z. B. *to cure hay* = Heu trocknen.

as to my distemper, or whether it was good for it or no; but I tried several experiments⁵⁾ with it, as if I was resolved it should hit one way or other. I first took a piece of a leaf, and chewed⁶⁾ it in my mouth, which, indeed, at first, almost stupified my brain, the tobacco being green and strong, and that I had not been much used to. Then I took some and steeped⁷⁾ it an hour or two in some rum, and resolved to take a dose of it when I lay down; and, lastly, I burnt some upon a pan of coals, and held my nose close over the smoke of it as long as I could bear it, as well for the heat, as almost for suffocation. In the interval of this operation, I took up the Bible, and began to read, but my head was too much disturbed with the tobacco to bear reading, at least at that time; only, having opened the book casually, the first words that occurred to me were these. "Call on me in the day of trouble, and I will deliver thee, and thou shalt glorify me⁸⁾." These words were very apt to my case, and made some impression upon my thoughts at the time of reading them, though not so much as they did afterwards, for, as for being *delivered*, the word had no sound, as I may say, to me, the thing was so remote, so impossible in my apprehension of things, that, I began to say as the children of Israel did when they were promised flesh to eat, "Can God spread a table in the wilderness⁹⁾?" so I began to say, Can God himself deliver me from this place? And as it was not for many years that any hopes appeared, this prevailed very often upon my thoughts; but, however, the words made a great impression upon me, and I mused upon them very often. It grew now late, and the tobacco had, as I said, dozed¹⁰⁾ my head so much that I inclined to sleep; so I left my lamp burning in the cave, lest I should want any thing in the night, and went to bed. But before I lay down, I did what I never had done in all my life; I kneeled down, and prayed to God to fulfil the promise to me, that if I called upon him in the day of trouble, he would deliver me. After my broken and imperfect prayer was over, I drank the rum in which I had steeped the tobacco;

⁵⁾ *to try experiments* = Versuche anstellen. — ⁶⁾ Spr. ch = tsh. — ⁷⁾ *to steep*, tauchen, ist unser stippen. — ⁸⁾ Psalm 50, 15. — ⁹⁾ II. Mose XVI. und IV. Mose XI. — ¹⁰⁾ *to doze*, einschläfern, betäuben, hängt mit unserm mundartlichen dusig, duseln zusammen.

which was so strong and rank ¹¹⁾ of the tobacco, that indeed I could scarce get it down; immediately upon this I went to bed. I found presently it flew ¹²⁾ up into my head violently; but I fell into a sound sleep, and waked no more till, by the sun, it must necessarily be near three o'clock in the afternoon the next day: nay, to this hour I am partly of opinion, that I slept all the next day and night, and till almost three the day after ¹³⁾; for otherwise, I know not how I should lose a day out of my reckoning in the days of the week, as it appeared some years after I had done; for if I had lost it by crossing and recrossing the Line ¹⁴⁾, I should have lost more than one day; but certainly I lost a day in my account, and never knew which way. Be that, however, one way or the other, when I awaked I found myself exceedingly refreshed, and my spirits lively ¹⁵⁾ and cheerful; when I got up, I was stronger than I was the day before, and my stomach better, for I was hungry; and, in short, I had no fit the next day, but continued much altered for the better ¹⁶⁾. This was the 29th.

The 30th was my well day ¹⁷⁾, of course, and I went abroad with my gun, but did not care to travel too far. I killed a sea-fowl or two, something like a brand goose ¹⁸⁾ and brought them home; but was not very forward to eat them; so I eat some more of the turtle's eggs, which were very good. This evening I renewed the medicine, which I had supposed did me good the day before, viz. the tobacco steeped in rum; only I did not take so much as before, nor did I chew any of the leaf, or hold my head over the smoke; however, I was not so well the next day, which was the 1st of July, as I hoped I should have been; for I had a little spice ¹⁹⁾ of the cold fit, but it was not much.

July 2. I renewed the medicine all the three ways: and dosed myself with it as at first, and doubled the quantity which I drank.

¹¹⁾ *rank* = stark schmeckend. — ¹²⁾ *to fly* hier = steigen. — ¹³⁾ *three the day after* = der drittnächste Tag. — ¹⁴⁾ Da *Line* Äquator bedeutet, so ist Defoe hier im Irrtum; anders verhält es sich bei Seefahrten in west-östlicher Richtung, wo in der That bei Überschreitung des 180. Längengrades die Zeitrechnung korrigiert werden muß. — ¹⁵⁾ *Spr, i.* — ¹⁶⁾ „zum bessern gewendet“. — ¹⁷⁾ *well day* = Tag der Genesung. — ¹⁸⁾ *brand goose* ist die Brandgans oder Rotgans (*Anas bernicla*). — ¹⁹⁾ *spice* ist der leichte Krankheitsanfall.

July 3. I missed the fit for good and all²⁰⁾, though I did not recover my full strength for some weeks after. While I was thus gathering strength, my thoughts ran exceedingly upon this scripture²¹⁾: "I will deliver thee;" and the impossibility of my deliverance lay much upon my mind, in bar of my ever expecting it²²⁾; but as I was discouraging myself with such thoughts, it occurred to my mind that I pored²³⁾ so much upon my deliverance from the main affliction²⁴⁾, that I disregarded the deliverance I had received; and I was, as it were, made to ask myself such questions as these, viz. Have I not been delivered and wonderfully too, from sickness? from the most distressed condition that could be, and that was so frightful to me? and what notice had I taken of it? Had I done my part? God had delivered me, but I had not glorified him; that is to say, I had not owned and been thankful for that as a deliverance: and how could I expect greater deliverance? This touched my heart very much; and immediately I knelt down, and gave God thanks aloud for my recovery from my sickness.

July 4. In the morning I took the Bible; and beginning at the New Testament, I began seriously to read it, and imposed upon myself to read awhile every morning and every night; not tying myself to the number of chapters, but as long as my thoughts should engage me. It was not long after I set seriously to this work, but I found my heart more deeply and sincerely affected with the wickedness of my past life. The impression of my dream revived; and the words, "All these things have not brought thee to repentance," ran seriously in my thoughts. I was earnestly begging of God to give me repentance, when it happened providentially, the very day, that, reading the scripture, I came to these words, "He is exalted²⁵⁾ a Prince and a Saviour; to give repentance, and to give remission." I threw down the book; and with my heart as well as my hands lifted up to heaven, in a kind of ecstasy²⁶⁾ of joy, I cried out aloud, "Jesus, thou son of David!

²⁰⁾ *for good and all* = zum Glück. — ²¹⁾ *scripture* = Stelle der heiligen Schrift, Bibelstelle. — ²²⁾ Erkläre: „das Hindernis war ja zu groß, als daß ich sie je hätte erwarten können“. — ²³⁾ *to pore upon* = brüten über. — ²⁴⁾ *the main affliction* = die größte Not, das Hauptunglück; stärker in seiner Bedeutung ist noch *tribulation* = Drangsal. — ²⁵⁾ *to exalt* = erheben. — ²⁶⁾ Cf. IX, 7.

Jesus, thou exalted Prince and Saviour! give me repentance!" This was the first time I could say, in the true sense of the words, that I prayed in all my life; for now I prayed with a sense of my condition, and with a true scripture view of hope²⁷⁾, founded on the encouragement of the word of God; and from this time, I may say, I began to have hope that God would hear me.

XX. — My condition began now to be, though not less miserable as to my way of living, yet much easier to my mind: and my thoughts being directed, by a constant reading the Scripture and praying to God, to things of a higher nature; I had a great deal of comfort within, which, till now, I knew nothing of; also, as my health and strength returned, I bestirred¹⁾ myself to furnish myself with every thing that I wanted, and make my way of living as regular as I could.

From the 4th of July to the 14th, I was chiefly employed in walking about with my gun in my hand, a little and a little at a time, as a man that was gathering up his strength after a fit of sickness: for it is hardly to be imagined how low²⁾ I was, and to what weakness I was reduced. The application which I made use of was perfectly new, and perhaps what had never cured an ague before; neither can I recommend it to any one to practise, by this experiment: and though it did carry off the fit, yet it rather contributed to weakening me; for I had frequent convulsions in my nerves and limbs for some time: I learned from it also this, in particular, that being abroad in the rainy season was the most pernicious thing to my health that could be, especially in those rains which came attended with storms and hurricanes of wind; for as the rain which came in the dry season was almost always accompanied with such storms, so I found that rain was much more dangerous than the rain which fell in September and October.

I had been now in this unhappy island above ten months: all possibility of deliverance from this condition seemed to be entirely taken from me; and I firmly believed that no human shape³⁾ had ever set foot upon that place. Having now se-

²⁷⁾ *scripture view of hope* = biblischer Hoffnungsblick.

XX. — ¹⁾ *to bestir one's self* = sich anregen, antreiben. — ²⁾ *low* = herunter. — ³⁾ *human shape* = menschliche Gestalt, menschliches Wesen.

cured my habitation, as I thought, fully to my mind, I had a great desire to make a more perfect discovery of the island, and to see what other productions I might find, which I yet knew nothing of.

It was on the 15th of July that I began to take a more particular survey of the island itself. I went up the creek first, where, as I hinted, I brought my rafts on shore. I found, after I came about two miles up, that the tide did not flow any higher; and that it was no more than a little brook of running water, and very fresh and good: but this being the dry season, there was hardly any water in some parts of it; at least, not enough to run in any stream, so as it could be perceived. On the banks of this brook I found many pleasant savannahs⁴⁾ or meadows⁵⁾, plain, smooth⁶⁾, and covered with grass; and on the rising parts of them, next to the higher grounds, where the water as it might be supposed, never overflowed, I found a great deal of tobacco, green, and growing to a great and very strong stalk⁷⁾: there were divers other plants, which I had no notion of, or understanding about, and might, perhaps, have virtues of their own⁸⁾, which I could not find out. I searched for the cassava root⁹⁾, which the Indians, in all that climate, make their bread of, but I could find none. I saw large plants of aloes¹⁰⁾, but did not understand them. I saw several sugarcanes, but wild, and, for want of cultivation, imperfect. I contented myself with these discoveries for this time, and came back, musing with myself what course I might take to know the virtue and goodness of any of the fruits or plants which I should discover; but could bring it to no conclusion; for, in short, I had made so little observation while I was in the Brasils, that I knew little of the plants in the field; at least, very little that might serve me to any purpose now in my distress.

⁴⁾ *sávánnā*, mit dem Ton auf der zweiten. = Aue, Wiesenplan; mit diesem spanischen Namen werden die Prärieen Nordamerikas ebenfalls bezeichnet. — ⁵⁾ Spr. méadōw. — ⁶⁾ *smooth* bedeutet nicht nur glatt, sondern auch eben. — ⁷⁾ Cf. XVI, 9. — ⁸⁾ *of their own* = ihnen eigentümlich. — ⁹⁾ Die Cassavawurzel gehört zu einem ziemlich hohen Strauche von der Familie der Euphorbiaceen (*Jatropha Manihot*) und liefert das sogenannte Maniokmehl. — ¹⁰⁾ Spr. á'-lōz.

The next day, the 16th, I went up the same way again; and after going something farther than I had gone the day before, I found the brook and the savannahs began to cease, and the country became more woody than before. In this part I found different fruits, and particularly I found melons upon the ground, in great abundance, and grapes upon the trees; the vines¹¹⁾, had spread indeed, over the trees, and the clusters of grapes were just now in their prime, very ripe and rich. This was a surprising discovery, and I was exceeding glad of them; but I was warned by my experience to eat sparingly of them, remembering that when I was ashore in Barbary¹²⁾, the eating of grapes killed several of our Englishmen, who were slaves there, by throwing them into fluxes¹³⁾ and fevers. But I found an excellent use for these grapes; and that was, to cure or dry them in the sun, and keep them as dried grapes or raisins are kept, which I thought would be, as indeed they were, as wholesome as agreeable to eat, when no grapes might be to be had.

I spent all that evening there, and went not back to my habitation; which, by the way, was the first night, as I might say, I had lain from home. In the night, I took my first contrivance, and got up into a tree, where I slept well; and the next morning proceeded upon my discovery, travelling near four miles, as I might judge by the length of the valley, keeping still due north, with a ridge of hills on the south and north side of me. At the end of this march I came to an opening, where the country seemed to descend to the west; and a little spring of fresh water, which issued out of the side of the hill by me, ran the other way, that is, due east; and the country appeared so fresh, so green, so flourishing, every thing being in a constant verdure, or flourish of spring¹⁴⁾, that it looked like a planted garden. I descended a little on the side of that delicious vale, surveying it with a secret kind of pleasure, though mixed with my other afflicting thoughts, to think that this was all my own; that I was king and lord of all this country indefeasibly¹⁵⁾, and had a right of possession; and, if I could convey it, I might have it in in-

¹¹⁾ *vines* = Weinreben. — ¹²⁾ *Bārbariy*, Barbarei, die Nord-westküste von Afrika. — ¹³⁾ *flux* = Fluß, Ausfluß, Ruhr. — ¹⁴⁾ *flourish of spring* = Frühlingsblüte. — ¹⁵⁾ *indefeasibly* = unumstößlich, unbestreitbar.

heritance as completely as any lord of a manor¹⁶⁾ in England. I saw here abundance of cocoa trees¹⁷⁾, orange, and lemon, and citron trees; but all wild, and very few bearing any fruit, at least not then. However, the green limes¹⁸⁾ that I gathered were not only pleasant to eat, but very wholesome; and I mixed their juice afterwards with water, which made it very wholesome, and very cool and refreshing. I found now I had business enough to gather and carry home; and I resolved to lay up a store, as well of grapes as limes and lemons to furnish myself for the wet season, which I knew was approaching. In order to this, I gathered a great heap of grapes in one place, a lesser heap in another place, and a great parcel of limes and lemons in another place; and, taking a few of each with me, I travelled homeward; and resolved to come again, and bring a bag or sack, or what I could make to carry the rest home. Accordingly, having spent three days in this journey, I came home (so I must now call my tent and my cave:) but before I got thither, the grapes were spoiled; the richness of the fruit, and the weight of the juice, having broken them and bruised¹⁹⁾ them, they were good for little or nothing: as to the limes, they were good, but I could bring but a few.

The next day, being the 19th, I went back, having made me two small bags to bring home my harvest; but I was surprised, when, coming to my heap of grapes, which were so rich and fine when I gathered them, I found them all spread about, trod the pieces, and dragged about, some here, some there, and abundance eaten and devoured. By this I concluded there were some wild creatures thereabouts which had done this; but what they were I knew not. However, as I found there was no laying them up on heaps, and no carrying them away in a sack, but that one way they would be destroyed, and the other way they would be crushed²⁰⁾ with

¹⁶⁾ *mánor*, Herrensitz, adeliges Gut, hängt zusammen mit *mansion* = Herrenhaus und frz. *maison*, da alle zurückgehen auf lat. *manere* = bleiben, wohnen. — ¹⁷⁾ *cocoa* oder *cacao*, spr. beides *kō'-kō*, Kakao, ist bekanntlich der Hauptbestandteil der Chokolade. — ¹⁸⁾ *limes*, Limonen, sind eine Art hellgelber Citronen, wie denn auch die obenerwähnten Orangen-, Limonen- und Citronenbäume alle zu der an Arten zahlreichen Gattung *citrus* gehören. — ¹⁹⁾ Cf. IX, 18. — ²⁰⁾ *to be crushed* = zerdrückt werden.

their own weight, I took another course; for I gathered a large quantity of the grapes, and hung them upon the out-branches of the trees, that they might cure and dry in the sun; and as for the limes and lemons, I carried as many back as I could well stand under.

When I came home from this journey, I contemplated with great pleasure the fruitfulness of that valley, and the pleasantness of the situation; the security from storms on that side the water and the wood: and concluded that I had pitched upon a place to fix my abode, which was by far the worst part of the country. Upon the whole, I began to consider of removing my habitation; and to look out for a place equally safe as where now I was situate²¹⁾, if possible, in that pleasant fruitful part of the island.

This thought ran long in my head, and I was exceeding fond of it for some time, the pleasantness of the place tempting me; but when I came to a nearer view of it, I considered that I was now by the sea-side, where it was at least possible that something might happen to my advantage, and, by the same ill fate that brought me hither, might bring some other unhappy wretches to the same place; and though it was scarce probable that any such thing should ever happen, yet to enclose myself among the hills and woods in the centre of the island, was to anticipate my bondage²²⁾, and to render such an affair not only improbable, but impossible; and that therefore I ought not by any means to remove. However, I was so enamoured of this place, that I spent much of my time there for the whole remaining part of the month of July; and though, upon second thoughts²³⁾, I resolved, as above not to remove, yet I built me a little kind of a bower²⁴⁾, and surrounded it at a distance with a strong fence, being a double hedge, as high as I could reach, well staked, and filled between with brush-wood; and here I lay very secure, sometimes two or three nights together; always going over it with a ladder, as before; so that I fancied now I had my country house and my sea-coast house; and this work took me up to the beginning of August.

²¹⁾ *situate* = *situated*. — ²²⁾ *to anticipate the bondage* = die Gefangenschaft selber bestimmen, sich in die Knechtschaft ergeben.

— ²³⁾ *upon second thoughts* = bei nochmaliger Überlegung. —

²⁴⁾ *bower* = Laube, Gartenhaus, ländliche Wohnung.

I had but newly finished my fence, and began to enjoy my labour, but the rains came on, and made me stick close to²⁵⁾ my first habitation; for though I had made me a tent like the other, with a piece of a sail, and spread it very well, yet I had not the shelter of a hill to keep me from storms, nor a cave behind me to retreat into when the rains were extraordinary.

XXI. — About the beginning of August, as I said, I had finished my bower, and began to enjoy myself. The 3d of August, I found the grapes I had hung up were perfectly dried, and indeed were excellent good raisins of the sun; so I began to take them down from the trees, and it was very happy that I did so, for the rains, which followed would have spoiled them, and I had lost the best part of my winter food; for I had above two hundred large bunches of them. No sooner had I taken them all down, and carried most of them home to my cave, but it began to rain; and from hence, which was the 14th of August, it rained, more or less, every day till the middle of October; and sometimes so violently, that I could not stir out of my cave for several days.

In this season, I was much surprised with the increase of my family; I had been concerned for the loss of one of my cats, who ran away from me, or, as I thought, had been dead, and I heard no more tale or tidings¹⁾ of her, till, to my astonishment, she came home about the end of August with three kittens²⁾. This was the more strange to me, because, though I had killed a wild cat, as I called it, with my gun, yet I thought it was a quite differing kind from our European cats; yet the young cats were the same kind of house-breed³⁾ like the old one; and both my cats being females, I thought it very strange. But from these three cats, I afterwards came to be so pestered⁴⁾ with cats, that I was forced to kill them like vermin⁵⁾, or wild beasts, and to drive them from my house as much as possible.

²⁵⁾ *to stick close to* = festhalten an.

XXI. — ¹⁾ *tidings* = Zeitungen, Nachrichten. — ²⁾ *kitten* ist die Kitze, das Kätzchen. — ³⁾ *house-breed* = Hausbrut, gezähmte Art. — ⁴⁾ *to pester* = quälen, plagen, hängt natürlich zusammen mit *pest* = Pestilenz. — ⁵⁾ *vermin*, eig. Gewürm, dann Ungeziefer überhaupt.

From the 14th of August to the 26th, incessant rain, so that I could not stir, and was now very careful not to be much wet. In this confinement, I began to be straitened⁶⁾ for food; but venturing out twice, I one day killed a goat, and the last day, which was the 26th, found a very large tortoise, which was a treat⁷⁾ to me, and my food was regulated thus; I eat a bunch of raisins for my breakfast, a piece of the goat's flesh, or of the turtle, for my dinner, broiled; for, to my great misfortune, I had no vessel to boil or stew any thing; and two or three of the turtle's eggs for my supper.

During this confinement in my cover by the rain, I worked daily two or three hours at enlarging my cave, and by degrees worked it on towards one side, till I came to the outside of the hill, and made a door, or way out, which came beyond my fence or wall; and so I came in and out this way. But I was not perfectly easy at lying so open; for as I had managed⁸⁾ myself before, I was in a perfect enclosure; whereas now, I thought I lay exposed, and open for any thing to come in upon me; and yet I could not perceive that there was any living thing to fear, the biggest creature that I had yet seen upon the island being a goat.

Sept. 30. I was now come to the unhappy anniversary⁹⁾ of my landing. I cast up¹⁰⁾ the notches on my post, and found I had been on shore three hundred and sixty-five days. I kept this day as a solemn fast, setting it apart to religious exercise, prostrating myself on the ground with the most serious humiliation, confessing my sins to God, acknowledging his righteous judgments upon me, and praying to him to have mercy on me through Jesus Christ; and not having tasted the least refreshment for twelve hours, even till the going down of the sun, I then eat a biscuit-cake and a bunch of grapes, and went to bed, finishing the day as I began it. I had all this time observed no sabbath-day, for as at first I had no sense of religion upon my mind, I had, after some time, omitted to distinguish the weeks, by making a longer notch than ordinary for the sabbath-day, and so did not really know what any of the days were; but now having cast up the days, as

6) Cf. VIII, 12. — 7) *trèat* = Traktierung, Schmaus. — 8) *to manage* = handhaben, einrichten. — 9) Der Ton liegt auf der dritten Silbe. — 10) *to cast up* = zusammenwerfen, summieren.

above, I found I had been there a year, so I divided it into weeks, and set apart every seventh day for a sabbath; though I found at the end of my account, I had lost a day or two in my reckoning. A little after this, my ink began to fail me, and so I contented myself to use it more sparingly, and to write down only the most remarkable events of my life, without continuing a daily memorandum of other things.

The rainy season and the dry season began now to appear regular to me, and I learned to divide them so as to provide for them accordingly; but I bought¹¹⁾ all my experience before I had it, and this I am going to relate was one of the most discouraging experiments that I had made at all.

I have mentioned that I had saved the few ears¹²⁾ of barley and rice, which I had so surprisingly found spring up, as I thought, of themselves, and I believe there were about thirty stalks of rice, and about twenty of barley; and now I thought it a proper time to sow it after the rains, the sun being in its southern position, going from me. Accordingly I dug up a piece of ground as well as I could with my wooden spade, and dividing it into two parts, I sowed my grain; but as I was sowing, it casually occurred to my thoughts that I would not sow it all at first, because I did not know when was the proper time for it, so I sowed¹³⁾ about two-thirds of the seed, leaving about a handful of each. It was a great comfort to me afterwards that I did so, for not one grain of what I sowed this time came to any thing, for the dry months following, the earth having had no rain after the seed was sown, it had no moisture to assist its growth, and never came up at all till the wet season had come again, and then it grew as if it had been but newly sown. Finding my first seed did not grow, which I easily imagined was by the drought¹⁴⁾, I sought for a moister piece of ground to make another trial in, and I dug up a piece of ground near my new bower, and sowed the rest of my seed in February, a little before the vernal equinox; and this having the rainy months of March and April to water it, sprung up very pleasantly, and yielded a very good crop; but having part of the seed left

¹¹⁾ *to buy* = (teuer) erkaufen. — ¹²⁾ *ear* = Ähre; daselbe Wort bedeutet auch Ohr, ist aber dann anderer Herkunft. — ¹³⁾ *Spr. ow* = ō. — ¹⁴⁾ *drought*, *spr. drout*, = Dürre.

only, and not daring to sow all that I had, I had but a small quantity at last, my whole crop not amounting to above half a peck¹⁵⁾ of each kind. But by this experiment I was made master of my business, and knew exactly when the proper season was to sow, and that I might expect two seed-times, and two harvests every year.

While this corn was growing, I made a little discovery, which was of use to me afterwards. As soon as the rains were over, and the weather began to settle, which was about the month of November, I made a visit up the country to my bower, where, though I had not been some months, yet I found all things just as I left them. The circle or double hedge that I had made was not only firm and entire, but the stakes which I had cut out of some trees that grew thereabouts, were all shot out, and grown with long branches, as much as a willow-tree usually shoots the first year after lopping its head. I could not tell what tree to call it that these stakes were cut from¹⁶⁾. I was surprised, and yet very well pleased to see the young trees grow, and I pruned¹⁷⁾ them, and led them up to grow as much alike as I could; and it is scarce credible how beautiful a figure they grew into in three years; so that though the edge¹⁸⁾ made a circle of about twenty-five yards in diameter, yet the trees, for such I might now call them, soon covered it, and it was a complete shade, sufficient to lodge under all the dry season. This made me resolve to cut some more stakes, and make me a hedge like this, in a semi-circle round my wall, (I mean that of my first dwelling) which I did; and placing the trees or stakes in a double row, at about eight yards distance from my first fence, they grew presently, and were at first a fine cover to my habitation, and afterwards served for a defence also, as I shall observe in its order¹⁹⁾.

I found now that the seasons of the year might generally be divided, not into summer and winter, as in Europe, but

¹⁵⁾ *peck*, (grofse) Metze, Viert, ist der vierte Teil des englischen Scheffels (*bushel*), der 36,35 Liter hält, wogegen der amerikanische *bushel* nur 35,24 Liter hat. — ¹⁶⁾ Konstruktion?! — ¹⁷⁾ *to prune*, ausputzen, ist nicht verwandt mit *prune* = Pflaume. — ¹⁸⁾ *edge* = Rand. — ¹⁹⁾ *in its order* = an seiner (gehörigen) Stelle, gehörigen Orts.

into the rainy seasons and the dry seasons; which were generally thus:

Half <i>February</i> ,	{	rainy, the sun being then on, or near the equinox.
<i>March</i> ,		
Half <i>April</i> ,	{	dry, the sun being then to the north of the line ²⁰).
<i>April</i> ,		
<i>May</i> ,	{	rainy, the sun being then come back.
<i>June</i> ,		
<i>July</i> ,	{	dry, the sun being then to the south of the line.
Half <i>August</i> ,		
Half <i>August</i> ,	{	
<i>September</i> ,		
Half <i>October</i> ,	{	
Half <i>October</i> ,		
<i>November</i> ,	{	
<i>December</i> ,		
<i>January</i> ,	{	
Half <i>February</i> ,		

XXII. — The rainy season sometimes held longer or shorter as the winds happened to blow, but this was the general observation I made. After I had found by experience the ill consequences of being abroad in the rain, I took care to furnish myself with provisions beforehand, that I might not be obliged to go out; and I sat within doors as much as possible during the wet months. This time I found much employment, and very suitable also to the time, for I found great occasion for many things which I had no way to furnish myself with but by hard labour and constant application; particularly, I tried many ways to make myself a basket, but all the twigs I could get for the purpose proved so brittle¹), that they would do nothing. It proved of excellent advantage to me now, that when I was a boy, I used to take great delight in standing at a basket-maker's in the town where my father lived, to see them make their wicker-ware²); and being, as boys usually are, very officious³) to help, and a great observer of the manner how they worked those things, and sometimes lending a hand, I had by these means full knowledge of the methods of it, that I wanted nothing but the materials;

²⁰) Cf. III, 23.

XXII. — ¹) *brittle* = brüchig. — ²) Cf. XV, 19. — ³) *officious*, spr. offish'-ús, dienstfertig; die Harzer Korbflechter zogen noch vor zwanzig Jahren weit und breit im Lande umher und trieben auf den Strafsen ihr Handwerk.

when it came into my mind that the twigs of that tree from whence I cut my stakes that grew, might possibly be as tough⁴⁾ as the sallogs, willows, and osiers⁵⁾ in England, and I resolved to try. Accordingly, the next day, I went to my country house, as I called it, and cutting some of the smaller twigs, I found them to my purpose as much as I could desire; whereupon I came the next time prepared with a hatchet to cut down a quantity, which I soon found, for there was great plenty of them. These I set up to dry within my circle or hedge, and when they were fit for use, I carried them to my cave; and here, during the next season, I employed myself in making, as well as I could, a great many baskets, both to carry earth, or to carry or lay up any thing, as I had occasion; and though I did not finish⁶⁾ them very handsomely, yet I made them sufficiently serviceable for my purpose; and thus, afterwards, I took care never to be without them; and as my wicker-ware decayed⁷⁾, I made more, especially strong deep baskets to place my corn in, instead of sacks, when I should come to have any quantity of it.

Having mastered this difficulty, and employed a world of time⁸⁾ about it, I bestirred myself to see, if possible, how to supply two wants. I had no vessel to hold any thing that was liquid, except two runlets, which were almost full of rum, and some glass bottles, some of the common size, and others for the holding of waters, spirits, &c. I had not so much as a pot to boil any thing, except a great kettle, which I saved out of the ship, and which was too big for such use as I desired it, viz. to make broth⁹⁾, and stew a bit of meat by itself. The second thing I fain would have had, was a tobacco-pipe; but it was impossible to me to make one, however, I found a contrivance for that too at last. I employed myself in planting my second rows of stakes or piles, and in this wicker-working, all the summer or dry season, when another business took me up more time than it could be imagined I could spare.

⁴⁾ Spr. túff. — ⁵⁾ *sallow* ist die Sahlweide (*Salix caprea*); *willow* die Weide allgemein (hier ist wohl die weisse, *Salix alba*, gemeint), *osier*, spr. ō'-shúr, ist die Korbweide (*Salix viminalis*). —

⁶⁾ *to finish* = fertig bringen. — ⁷⁾ *to decay*, spr. děkà', = entzweigen. — ⁸⁾ *a world of time* = eine Unmasse von Zeit. —

⁹⁾ Cf. XVIII, 14.

I mentioned before that I had a great mind to see the whole island, and that I had travelled up the brook, and so on to where I built my bower, and where I had an opening quite to the sea, on the other side of the island. I now resolved to travel quite across to the sea-shore on that side; so taking my gun, a hatchet, and my dog, and a larger quantity of powder and shot than usual, with two biscuit-cakes, and a great bunch of raisins in my pouch¹⁰⁾ for my store, I began my journey. When I had passed the vale where my bower stood, as above, I came within view of the sea to the west, and it being a very clear day, I fairly descried land, whether an island or a continent could not tell; but it lay very high, extending from the W. to the W. S. W. at a very great distance; by my guess¹¹⁾, it could not be less than fifteen or twenty leagues off.

I could not tell what part of the world this might be, otherwise than that I knew it must be part¹²⁾ of America, and, as I concluded, by all my observations, must be near the Spanish dominions, and perhaps was all inhabited by savages, where, if I should have landed, I had been in a worse condition than I was now; and therefore I acquiesced in the dispositions of Providence, which I began now to own and to believe ordered every thing for the best; I say I quieted my mind with this, and left afflicting myself with fruitless wishes of being there.

Besides, after some pause upon this affair, I considered that if this land was the Spanish coast, I should certainly, one time or other, see some vessel pass or repass one way or other; but if not, then it was the savage coast between the Spanish country and Brasils, which are indeed the worst of savages; for they are cannibals, or men-eaters, and fail not to murder and devour all the human bodies that fall into their hands.

With these considerations I walked very leisurely forward; I found that side of the island, where I now was, much pleasanter than mine, the open or savannah fields sweet, adorned with flowers and grass, and full of very fine woods. I saw abundance¹²⁾ of parrots, and fain I would have caught one, if

¹⁰⁾ Spr. poutsh. — ¹¹⁾ *by my guess* = meiner Vermutung nach.
— ¹²⁾ Cf. Gesenius II, § 15; dahin gehört auch *abundance*.

possible, to have kept it to be tame, and taught it to speak to me. I did, after some pains-taking¹³⁾, catch a young parrot, for I knocked it down with a stick, and having recovered it, I brought it home; but it was some years before I could make him speak: however, at last I taught him to call me by my name very familiarly. But the accident that followed, though it be a trifle, will be very diverting in its place.

I was exceedingly diverted with this journey. I found in the low grounds hares, as I thought them to be, and foxes; but they differed greatly from all the other kinds I had met with, nor could I satisfy myself to eat them, though I killed several. But I had no need to be venturous, for I had no want of food, and of that which was very good too; especially these three sorts, viz. goats, pigeons, and turtle, or tortoise; which, added to my grapes, Leadenhall-Market¹⁴⁾ could not have furnished a table better than I, in proportion to the company; and though my case was deplorable enough, yet I had great cause for thankfulness, that I was not driven to any extremities for food, but had rather plenty, even to dainties¹⁵⁾.

I never travelled in this journey above two miles outright¹⁶⁾ in a day, or thereabouts; but I took so many turns and returns, to see what discoveries I could make, that I came weary enough to the place where I resolved to sit down for all night; and then I either reposed myself in a tree, or surrounded myself with a row of stakes, set upright in the ground, either from one tree to another, or so as no wild creature could come at me without waking me.

As soon as I came to the sea-shore, I was surprised to see that I had taken up my lot on the worst side of the island, for here indeed the shore was covered with innumerable turtles; whereas, on the other side, I had found but three in a year and a half. Here was also an infinite number of fowls of many kinds, some which I had seen, and some which I had not seen of before, and many of them very good meat, but such as I knew not the names of, except those called Penguins.

I could have shot as many as I pleased, but was very sparing of my powder and shot, and therefore had more mind

¹³⁾ *painstaking* = Mühwaltung, Mühe. — ¹⁴⁾ In London belegen, und zwar links von der Themse, nicht weit vom Tower. —

¹⁵⁾ *dainties* sind Leckerbissen. — ¹⁶⁾ *outright* hier = wohlgemessen.

to kill a she-goat, if I could, which I could better feed on; and though there were many goats here, more than on my side the island, yet it was with much more difficulty that I could come near them, the country being flat and even, and they saw me much sooner than when I was on the hill.

I confess this side of the country was much pleasanter¹⁷⁾ than mine; but yet I had not the least inclination to remove, for as I was fixed in my habitation, it became natural to me, and I seemed all the while I was here to be as it were upon a journey, and from home. However, I travelled along the shore of the sea towards the east, I suppose about twelve miles, and then setting up a great pole upon the shore for a mark, I concluded I would go home again; and that the next journey I took should be on the other side of the island, east from my dwelling, and so round till I came to my post again; of which in its place¹⁸⁾.

I took another way to come back than that I went, thinking I could easily keep all the island so much in my view, that I could not miss finding my first dwelling by viewing the country; but I found myself mistaken; for being come about two or three miles, I found myself descended into a very large valley; but so surrounded with hills, and those hills covered with wood, that I could not see which was my way by any direction but that of the sun, nor even then, unless I knew very well the position of the sun at that time of the day. It happened to my farther misfortune, that the weather proved hazy¹⁹⁾ for three or four days while I was in this valley, and not being able to see the sun, I wandered about very uncomfortably, and at last was obliged to find out the sea-side, look for my post, and come back the same way I went; and then by easy journies I turned homeward, the weather being exceeding hot, and my gun, ammunition, hatchet, and other things very heavy.

XXIII. — In this journey my dog surprised a young kid, and seized upon it, and I running in to take hold of it, caught it, and saved it alive from the dog. I had a great mind to bring it home if I could, for I had often been musing

¹⁷⁾ NB.?! — ¹⁸⁾ Cf. XXI, 19. — ¹⁹⁾ *hàzy* = nebelig, von *haze* = dicker Nebel.

whether it might not be possible to get a kid or two, and so raise a breed of tame goats, which might supply me when my powder and shot should be all spent. I made a collar to this little creature, and with a string which I made of some rope-yarn, which I always carried about me, I led him along, though with some difficulty, till I came to my bower, and there I enclosed him and left him, for I was very impatient to be at home, from whence I had been absent above a month.

I cannot express what a satisfaction it was to me to come into my old hutch, and lie down in my hammock-bed. This little wandering journey, without settled place of abode, had been so unpleasant to me, that my own house, as I called it to myself, was a perfect settlement to me, compared to that; and it rendered every thing about me so comfortable, that I resolved I would never go a great way from it again, while it should be my lot to stay on the island.

I reposed myself here a week, to rest and regale myself after my long journey; during which, most of the time was taken up in the weighty affair of making a cage for my Pol¹⁾, who began now to be a mere domestic, and to be mighty well acquainted with me. Then I began to think of the poor kid which I had penned²⁾ in within my little circle, and resolved to go and fetch it home, or give it some food; accordingly I went, and found it where I left it, for indeed it could not get out, but was almost starved for want of food. I went and cut boughs of trees, and branches of such shrubs³⁾ as I could find, and threw it over, and having fed it, I tied it as I did before, to lead it away; but it was so tame with being hungry, that I had no need to have tied it, for it followed me like a dog; and as I continually fed it, the creature became so loving⁴⁾, so gentle, and so fond, that it became from that time one of my domestics also, and would never leave me afterwards.

XXIII. — ¹⁾ *Pol*, eig. eine aus *Mary* entstandene Abkürzung (*Mary* = *Mall* = *Moll* = *Poll*), dient als Name für den Papagei. — ²⁾ *to pen*, einsperren, ist das niederdeutsche pennen = verriegeln. — ³⁾ *shrub* = Strauch; das Wort *scrub* ist neuerdings ins Deutsche übergegangen als Bezeichnung der Akazien-Dickichte auf Neuholland. — ⁴⁾ *loving* = zuthunlich.

The rainy season of the autumnal equinox was now come, and I kept the 30th of September in the same solemn manner as before, being the anniversary of my landing on the island, having now been there two years, and no more prospect of being delivered than the first day I came there. I spent the whole day in humble and thankful acknowledgments of the many wonderful mercies which my solitary condition was attended with, and without which it might have been infinitely⁵⁾ more miserable. I gave humble and hearty thanks that God had been pleased to discover to me, even that it was possible I might be more happy in this solitary condition, than I should have been in a liberty of society, and in all the pleasures of the world: that he could fully make up to me the deficiencies of my solitary state, and the want of human society, by his presence, and the communications of his grace to my soul, supporting, comforting, and encouraging me to depend upon his providence here, and hope for his eternal presence hereafter.

It was now that I began sensibly to feel how much more happy this life I now led was, with all its miserable circumstances, than the wicked, cursed, abominable life I led all the past part of my days; and now I changed both my sorrows and my joys; my very desires altered, my affections changed their gusts, and my delights were perfectly new from what they were at my first coming, or indeed for the two years past.

Before, as I walked about, either on my hunting, or for viewing the country, the anguish of my soul at my condition would break out upon me on a sudden, and my very heart would die within me, to think of the woods, the mountains, the deserts I was in, and how I was a prisoner, locked up with the eternal bars and bolts of the ocean, in an uninhabited wilderness, without redemption. In the midst of the greatest composures of my mind, this would break out upon me like a storm, and make me wring my hands, and weep like a child: sometimes it would take me in the middle of my work, and I would immediately sit down and sigh, and look upon the ground for an hour or two together; and this was still worse to me, for if I could burst out into tears, or

⁵⁾ Spr. ín'-fènítlý.

vent myself⁶⁾ by words, it would go off, and the grief having exhausted itself, would abate.

But now I began to exercise myself with new thoughts; I daily read the word of God, and applied all the comforts of it to my present state. One morning, being very sad, I opened the Bible upon these words, "I will never, never leave thee, nor forsake thee;" immediately it occurred that these words were to me; why else should they be directed in such a manner, just at the moment when I was mourning over my condition, as one forsaken of God and man? "Well then," said I, "if God does not forsake me, of what ill consequence can it be, or what matters it, though the world should all forsake me, seeing on the other hand, if I had all the world, and should lose the favour and blessing of God, there would be no comparison in the loss?"

From this moment I began to conclude in my mind, that it was possible for me to be more happy in this forsaken solitary condition, than it was probable I should ever have been in any other particular state in the world, and with this thought I was going to give thanks to God for bringing me to this place. I know not what it was, but something shocked my mind at that thought, and I durst not speak the words. "How canst thou be such a hypocrite," said I, even audibly, "to pretend to be thankful for a condition, which, however thou mayest endeavour to be contented with, thou wouldest⁷⁾ rather pray heartily to be delivered from?" So I stopped there, but though I could not say I thanked God for being there, yet I sincerely gave thanks to God for opening my eyes, by whatever afflicting providences⁸⁾, to see the former condition of my life, and to mourn for my wickedness, and repent. I never opened the Bible, or shut it, but my very soul within me blessed God for directing my friend in England, without any order of mine, to pack it up among my goods, and for assisting me afterwards to save it out of the wreck of the ship.

Thus, and in this disposition of mind, I began my third year, and though I have not given the reader, the trouble of

⁶⁾ *to vent one's self* = sich Luft machen. — ⁷⁾ Veraltete Form für *wouldst*. — ⁸⁾ *afflicting providences* = Heimsuchungen, von der Vorsehung verhängte Schicksalsschläge.

so particular an account of my works this year as the first; yet in general it may be observed, that I was very seldom idle, but having regularly divided my time, according to the several daily employments that were before me, such as, first, My duty to God, and the reading the Scriptures, which I constantly set apart some time for, thrice every day; secondly, The going abroad with my gun for food, which generally took me up three hours in every morning, when it did not rain; thirdly, The ordering, curing, preserving, and cooking what I had killed or caught for my supply; these took up great part of the day; also it is to be considered, that in the middle of the day, when the sun was in the zenith⁹⁾, the violence of the heat was too great to stir out; so that about four hours in the evening was all the time I could be supposed to work in, with this exception, that sometimes I changed my hours of hunting and working, and went to work in the morning, and abroad with my gun in the afternoon.

To this short time allowed for labour, I desire may be added the exceeding laboriousness of my work; the many hours which for want of tools, want of help, and want of skill, every thing I did took up out of my time: for example, I was full two and forty days making me a board for a long shelf, which I wanted in my cave, whereas, two sawyers, with their tools and a saw-pit, would have cut six of them out of the same tree in half a day.

XXIV. — My case was this, it was to be a large tree which was to be cut down, because my board was to be a broad one. This tree I was three days a cutting down, and two more cutting off the boughs, and reducing it to a log, or piece of timber. With inexpressible hacking¹⁾ and hewing¹⁾, I reduced both the sides of it into chips²⁾ till it began to be light enough to move, then I turned it, and made one side of it smooth and flat as a board from end to end; then turning that side downward, cut the other side, till I brought the plank to be about three inches thick, and smooth on both sides. Any one may judge the labour of my hands

⁹⁾ Spr. zè'-nith.

XXIV. — ¹⁾ *to hew*, spr. ew = eù, ist das mehr planmäßsige behauen, während *to hack* einfach = hacken, zerhacken ist. — ²⁾ *chips* sind hier die (langen Hau-) Späne.

in such a piece of work, but labour and patience carried me through that, and many other things; I only observe this in particular, to show the reason why so much of my time went away with so little work, viz. that what might be a little to be done with help and tools, was a vast labour, and required a prodigious time to do alone, and by hand. But notwithstanding this, with patience and labour I went through many things, and, indeed, every thing that my circumstances made necessary to me to do, as will appear by what follows.

I was now in the months of November and December, expecting my crop of barley and rice. The ground I had manured³⁾ or dug up for them was not great, for as I observed, my seed of each was not above the quantity of half a peck⁴⁾, for I had lost one whole crop by sowing in the dry season; but now my crop promised very well, when, on a sudden, I found I was in danger of losing it all again by enemies of several sorts, which it was scarce possible to keep from it; as, first the goats, and wild creatures which I called hares, who⁵⁾, tasting the sweetness of the blade, lay in it night and day, as soon as it came up, and eat it so close, that it could get no time to shoot up into stalk.

This I saw no remedy for, but by making an enclosure about it with a hedge, which I did with a great deal of toil, and the more, because it required speed. However, as my arable⁶⁾ land was but small, suited to my crop, I got it totally well fenced, in about three weeks' time, and shooting some of the creatures in the day-time, I set my dog to guard it in the night, tying him up to a stake at the gate, where he would stand and bark all night long; so in a little time the enemies forsook the place, and the corn grew very strong and well, and began to ripen apace⁷⁾.

But as the beasts ruined me before, while my corn was in the blade, so the birds were as likely to ruin me now, when it was in the ear; for going along by the place to see how it throve, I saw my little crop surrounded with fowls, of I know not how many sorts, who⁵⁾ stood, as it were,

³⁾ *to manure*, spr. mán'-ùr, urbarmachen, geht mit frz. *manoeuvre* auf lat. *manus* = Hand und *opus* = Werk zurück. — ⁴⁾ Cf. XXI, 15. — ⁵⁾ NB.?! — ⁶⁾ *arable*, spr. ár'-rábl, pflugbar, urbar. — ⁷⁾ *apàce*, eig. im Schritt, zusehends.

watching till I should be gone. I immediately let fly⁸⁾ among them, for I always had my gun with me, I had no sooner shot, but there rose up a little cloud of fowls, which I had not seen at all, from among the corn itself.

This touched me sensibly, for I foresaw that in a few days they would devour all my hopes, that I should be starved, and never be able to raise a crop at all, and what to do I could not tell; however, I resolved not to lose my corn, if possible though I should watch it night and day. In the first place, I went among it, to see what damage was already done, and found they had spoiled a good deal of it, but that as it was yet too green for them, the loss was not so great, but that the remainder was like to be a good crop, if it could be saved.

I staid by it to load my gun, and then coming away, I could easily see the thieves sitting upon all the trees about me, as if they only waited till I was gone away, and the event proved it to be so; for as I walked off, as if was gone, I was no sooner out of their sight, than they dropt down, one by one, into the corn again. I was so provoked, that I could not have patience to stay till more come on, knowing that every grain that they eat now was, as it might be said, a peck-loaf⁹⁾ to me in the consequence; but coming up to the hedge, I fired again, and killed three of them. This was what I wished for; so I took them up, and served them as we serve notorious thieves in England, viz. hanged them in chains, for a terror to others. It is impossible to imagine almost that this should have such an effect as it had, for the fowls would not only not come at the corn, but, in short, they forsook all that part of the island, and I could never see a bird near the place as long as my scare-crows¹⁰⁾ hung there. This I was very glad of, you may be sure, and about the latter end of December, which was our second harvest of the year, I reaped my corn.

⁸⁾ *to let fly*, eig. fliegen lassen, losschießen, ist noch von der Zeit her im Gebrauch, als Bogen und Pfeile unsere Schusswaffen waren. — ⁹⁾ *a peck-loaf* = soviel Brot als man von einem Viert Korn backen kann. — ¹⁰⁾ *scare-crows* = Vogelscheuchen, wie man solche auch bei uns herstellt, indem man einige Krähen schießt und dieselben an Stöcken aufhängt.

I was sadly put to it for a scythe¹¹⁾ or sickle to cut it down, and all I could do was to make one as well as I could, out of one of the broad swords, or cutlasses, which I saved among the arms out of the ship. However, as my first crop was but small, I had no great difficulty to cut it down; in short, I reaped it my way, for I cut nothing off but the ears, and carried it away in a great basket which I had made, and so rubbed it out with my hands, and at the end of all my harvesting, I found that out of my half peck of seed I had near two bushels¹²⁾ of rice, and above two bushels and a half of barley, that is to say, by my guess, for I had no measure at that time.

However, this was a great encouragement to me, and I foresaw that, in time, it would please God to supply me with bread: and yet here I was perplexed again, for I neither knew how to grind, or make meal of my corn, or indeed how to clean it and part¹³⁾ it; nor if made into meal, how to make bread of it, and if how to make it, yet I knew not how to bake it; these things being added to my desire of having a good quantity for store, and to secure a constant supply, I resolved not to taste any of this crop, but to preserve it all for seed against the next season, and, in the mean time, to employ all my study and hours of working to accomplish this great work of providing myself with corn and bread.

It might be truly said, that now I worked for my bread. 'T is a little wonderful, and what I believe few people have thought much upon, viz. the strange multitude of little things necessary in the providing, producing, curing, dressing, making, and finishing this one article of bread.

I, that was reduced to a mere state of nature, found this to my daily discouragement, and was made more sensible of it every hour, even after I had got the first handful of seed-corn, which, as I have said, came up unexpectedly, and indeed to a surprise.

First, I had no plough to turn up the earth, no spade or shovel to dig it. Well, this I conquered by making a wooden spade, as I observed before, but this did my work but in a wooden manner, and though it cost me a great many days to

¹¹⁾ Spr. sìth. — ¹²⁾ Cf. XXI, 15. — ¹³⁾ *to part* = (das gute vom schlechten) sondern.

make it, yet, for want of iron, it not only wore out the sooner, but made my work the harder, and made it be performed much worse. However, this I bore with¹⁴⁾, and was content to work it out with patience, and bear with the badness of the performance. When the corn was sown, I had no harrow, but was forced to go over it myself, and drag a great heavy bough of a tree over it, to scratch it, as it may be called, rather than rake and harrow¹⁵⁾ it. When it was growing and grown, I have observed already how many things I wanted to fence it, secure it, mow¹⁶⁾ or reap it, cure and carry it home, trash, part it from the chaff¹⁷⁾, and save it. Then I wanted a mill to grind it, sieves to dress it, yeast¹⁸⁾ and salt to make it into bread, and an oven to bake it, and yet all these things I did without, as shall be observed; and yet the corn was an inestimable comfort and advantage to me too. All this, as I said, made every thing laborious and tedious to me, but that there was no help for; neither was my time so much loss to me, because, as I had divided it, a certain part of it was every day appointed to these works, and as I resolved to use none of the corn for bread till I had a greater quantity by me, I had the next six months to apply myself wholly, by labour and invention, to furnish myself with utensils¹⁹⁾ proper for the performing all the operations necessary for making the corn, when I had it, fit for my use.

But first I was to prepare more land, for I had now seed enough to sow above an acre²⁰⁾ of ground. Before I did this, I had a week's work at least to make me a spade, which, when it was done, was but a sorry one indeed, and very heavy, and required double labour to work with it; however, I went through that, and sowed my seed in two large flat pieces of ground, as near my house as I could find them to my mind, and fenced them in with a good hedge, the stakes of which were all cut of that wood which I had set before, and knew it would grow; so that in one year's time, I knew I should have a quick²¹⁾ or living hedge, that would want

¹⁴⁾ *to bear with* = ertragen. — ¹⁵⁾ *rake* ist unser Rechen, *harrow* die Harke, ebenso entsprechen sich die betreffenden Zeitwörter. — ¹⁶⁾ Spr. mōw. — ¹⁷⁾ *chaff*, spr. tsháff, = Kaff, Spreu. — ¹⁸⁾ *yéast* = Gest, Gäsch, (Bier-)Hefen. — ¹⁹⁾ Spr. ütén'-sílz. — ²⁰⁾ Der englische *acre* hat 1,6 Morgen preussisch. — ²¹⁾ Zu *quick* = lebendig vergleiche unser Quecksilber.

but little repair. This work was not so little as to take me up less than three months, because a great part of that time was of the wet season, when I could not go abroad. Within doors, that is, when it rained, and I could not go out, I found employment on the following occasions; always observing, that all the while I was at work, I diverted myself with talking to my parrot, and teaching him to speak, and I quickly learned him to know his own name, and at last to speak it out pretty loud, Pol, which was the first word I ever heard spoken in the island by any mouth but my own. This, therefore, was not my work, but an assistant to my work, for now, as I said, I had a great employment upon my hands as follows; viz. I had long studied, by some means or other, to make myself some earthen vessels, which indeed I wanted sorely²²⁾, but knew not where to come at them: however, considering the heat of the climate, I did not doubt but if I could find out any such clay, I might botch up²³⁾ some such pot as might, being dried in the sun, be hard enough and strong enough to bear handling²⁴⁾, and to hold any thing that was dry, and required to be kept so; and as this was necessary in the preparing corn, meal, &c. which was the thing I was upon, I resolved to make some as large as I could, and fit only to stand like jars, to hold what should be put into them.

XXV. — It would make the reader pity me, or rather laugh at me, to tell how many awkward ways I took to raise this paste¹⁾; what odd, misshapen, ugly things I made; how many of them fell in, and how many fell out, the clay not being stiff enough to bear its own weight; how many cracked by the over violent heat of the sun, being set out too hastily; and how many fell in pieces with only removing, as well before as after they were dried; and, in a word, how, after having laboured hard to find the clay, to dig it, to temper²⁾ it, to bring it home, and work it, I could not make above two large earthen ugly things (I cannot call them jars) in about two month's labour.

²²⁾ *sore* hängt zusammen mit sehr und (ver)sehen. — ²³⁾ *to botch up* = (auf unvollkommene Weise) zusammenflicken. — ²⁴⁾ *to bear handling* = die Handhabung ertragen.

XXV. — ¹⁾ *to raise the paste* eig. = den Teig gähren machen, hier = die Sache ins Werk setzen. — ²⁾ *to temper* hier = zurichten.

However, as the sun baked these two very dry and hard, I lifted them very gently up, and set them down again in two great wicker baskets, which I had made on purpose for them, that they might not break; and as between the pot and the basket there was a little room to spare³⁾, I stuffed it full of the rice and barley-straw, and these two pots being to stand always dry, I thought would hold my dry corn, and perhaps the meal, when the corn was bruised⁴⁾.

Though I miscarried so much in my design for large pots, yet I made several smaller things with better success; such as little round pots, flat dishes, pitchers⁵⁾, and pipkins⁶⁾, and any things my hand turned to; and the heat of the sun baked them strangely hard.

But all this would not answer my end, which was to get an earthen pot to hold what was liquid, and bear the fire, which none of these could do. It happened after some time, making a pretty large fire for cooking my meat, when I went to put it out after I had done with it, I found a broken piece of one of my earthen-ware vessels in the fire, burnt as hard as a stone, and red as a tile. I was agreeably surprised to see it, and said to myself, that certainly they might be made to burn whole, if they would burn broken.

This set me to study how to order my fire, so as to make it burn some pots. I had no notion of a kiln⁷⁾, such as the potters burn in, or of glazing them with lead, though I had some lead to do it with; but I placed three large pipkins, and two or three pots in a pile, one upon another, and placed my fire-wood all round it, with a great heap of embers under them. I plied⁸⁾ the fire with fresh fuel round the outside, and upon the top, till I saw the pots in the inside red-hot quite through, and observed that they did not crack at all; when I saw them clear red, I let them stand in that heat about five or six hours, till I found one of them, though it did not crack, did melt or run, for the sand which was mixed with the clay melted by the violence of the heat, and would have run into glass, if I had gone on, so I slacked my fire

³⁾ *a little room to spare* = ein kleiner Zwischenraum. —
⁴⁾ Cf. IX, 18. — ⁵⁾ *pitcher* ist der Krug (gewöhnlich mit Henkeln). — ⁶⁾ *pipkin*, Verkleinerungswort von *pipe*, bedeutet einen kleinen irdenen Topf. — ⁷⁾ *kiln* = Brennofen, *oven* = Backofen, *stove* Stubenofen. — ⁸⁾ *to ply* = versehen.

gradually till the pots began to abate of the red colour; and watching them all night, that I might not let the fire abate too fast, in the morning I had three very good, I will not say handsome pipkins, and two other earthen pots, as hard burnt as could be desired, and one of them perfectly glazed with the running of the sand.

After this experiment, I need not say that I wanted no sort of earthen-ware for my use; but I must needs⁹⁾ say, as to the shapes of them, they were very indifferent, as any one may suppose, when I had no way of making them, but as the children make dirt pies¹⁰⁾, or as a woman would make pies that never learned to raise paste¹¹⁾.

No joy at a thing of so mean a nature was ever equal to mine, when I found I had made an earthen pot that would bear the fire; and I had hardly patience to stay till they were cold, before I set one on the fire again, with some water in it, to boil me some meat, which it did admirably well; and with a piece of a kid I made some very good broth, though I wanted oatmeal, and several other ingredients requisite to make it so good as I would have had it been¹²⁾.

My next concern was to get me a stone mortar to stamp or beat some corn in; for as to the mill, there was no thought of arriving to that perfection of art with one pair of hands. To supply this want I was at a great loss; for, of all the trades in the world, I was as perfectly unqualified for a stone-cutter, as for any whatever; neither had I any tools to go about it with. I spent many a day to find out a great stone big enough to cut hollow, and make fit for a mortar, and could find none at all, except what was in the solid rock, and which I had no way to dig or cut out; nor indeed were the rocks in the island of hardness sufficient¹³⁾, but were all of a sandy crumbling stone, which neither would bear the weight of a heavy pestle¹⁴⁾, or would break the corn without filling it with sand; so, after a great deal of time lost in searching for a stone, I gave it over, and resolved to look out for a great block of hard wood, which I found indeed much easier; and getting one as big as I had strength to stir, I rounded

⁹⁾ *needs*, durchaus, notgedrungen, = Plural von *need* = Not. — ¹⁰⁾ *dirt pies* = Sandkuchen. — ¹¹⁾ Cf. Note 1. — ¹²⁾ Konstruktion?! — ¹³⁾ Stellung! — ¹⁴⁾ *pestle*, mit stummem t, ist der Stößel, die Mörserkeule.

it, and formed it on the outside with my axe and hatchet, and then, with the help of fire, and infinite labour, made a hollow place in it, as the Indians in Brasil make their canoes. After this, I made a great heavy pestle, or beater, of the wood called the iron-wood; and this I prepared and laid by against¹⁵⁾ I had my next crop of corn, when I proposed to myself to grind, or rather pound¹⁶⁾ my corn into meal, to make my bread.

My next difficulty was to make a sieve, or searce¹⁷⁾, to dress my meal, and to part it from the bran and the husk¹⁸⁾, without which I did not see it possible I could have any bread. This was a most difficult thing, so much as but to think on, for to be sure I had nothing like the necessary thing to make it; I mean fine thin canvass or stuff, to searce the meal through. And here I was at a full stop¹⁹⁾ for many months; nor did I really know what to do; linen I had none left, but what was mere rags; I had goats'-hair; but neither knew how to weave it or spin it; and had I known how, there were no tools to work it with; all the remedy that I found for this was, that at last I did remember I had, among the seamen's clothes which were saved out of the ship, some neckcloths of calico²⁰⁾ or muslin²¹⁾; and with some pieces of these I made three small sieves, proper enough for the work; and thus I made shift²²⁾ for some years; how I did afterwards, I shall show in its place.

The baking part was the next thing to be considered, and how I should make bread when I came to have corn; for, first, I had no yeast²³⁾; as to that part there was no supplying the want, so I did not concern myself much about it; but for an oven I was indeed in great pain. At length I found out an experiment for that also, which was this; I made some earthen vessels very broad, but not deep, that is to say, about two feet diameter, and not above nine inches deep; these I

¹⁵⁾ *to lay by against* = zurücklegen bis. — ¹⁶⁾ *to pound* = zerstoßen. — ¹⁷⁾ *séarce* ist das feine Sieb, das Haarsieb; das Wort gilt indessen für veraltet. — ¹⁸⁾ *bran* = Kleie, *husk* = Hülsen, Spelzen. — ¹⁹⁾ *to be at a full stop*, eig. = bei einem Punkte (Endzeichen) sein, dann = innehalten, festgefahren sein. — ²⁰⁾ *calico*, Kattun, so benannt nach der Stadt Calicut in Ostindien, woher das Zeug zuerst kam. — ²¹⁾ *muslin*, Nesselstuch, von Mossul in Mesopotamien. — ²²⁾ *to make shift* = sich behelfen. — ²³⁾ Cf. XXIV, 18.

burned in the fire, as I had done the other, and laid them by; and when I wanted to bake, I made a great fire upon my hearth, which I had paved with some square tiles, of my own making and burning also; but I should not call them square²⁴⁾.

When the fire-wood was burned pretty much into embers, or live coals²⁵⁾, I drew them forward upon this earth, so as to cover it all over, and there I let them lie till the hearth was very hot; then sweeping away all the embers, I set down my loaf, or loaves, and *whelming*²⁶⁾ down the earthen pot upon them, drew the embers all round the outside of the pot, to keep in and add to the heat; and thus, as well as in the best oven in the world, I baked my barley-loaves, and became, in little time, a mere²⁷⁾ pastry-cook into the bargain²⁸⁾; for I made myself several cakes of the rice, and puddings; indeed I made no pies, neither had I any thing to put into them, supposing I had, except the flesh either of fowls or goats.

It need to be wondered at, if all these things took me up most part of the third year of my abode here; for, it is to be observed, that in the intervals of these things, I had my new harvest and husbandry to manage; for I reaped my corn in its season, and carried it home as well as I could, and laid it up in the ear, in my large baskets, till I had time to rub it out, for I had no floor to thrash it on, or instrument to thrash it with.

And now, indeed, my stock of corn increasing, I really wanted to build my barns bigger; I wanted a place to lay it up in, for the increase of the corn now yielded me so much, that I had of the barley about twenty bushels, and of the rice as much, or more, insomuch that now I resolved to begin to use it freely; for my bread had been quite gone a great while; also I resolved to see what quantity would be sufficient for me a whole year, and to sow but once a year²⁹⁾.

Upon the whole, I found that the forty bushels of barley and rice were much more than I could consume in a year; so I resolved to sow just the same quantity every year that

²⁴⁾ Warum nicht? — ²⁵⁾ *live coals* = glühende Kohlen. —

²⁶⁾ *to whelm down upon* = darüber stülpen; NB. w ist stumm! —

²⁷⁾ *mère* = bloß, unvermischt, vollkommen. — ²⁸⁾ *into the bargain* = in den Handel, obendrein. — ²⁹⁾ Beachte den Unterschied im Gebrauch des Artikels.

I sowed the last, in hopes that such a quantity would fully provide me with bread, &c.

All the while these things were doing, you may be sure my thoughts ran many times upon the prospect of land which I had seen from the other side of the island, and I was not without secret wishes that I were on shore there, fancying the seeing the main land, and in an inhabited country, I might find some way or other to convey myself farther, and perhaps at last find some means of escape.

But all this while I made no allowance for the dangers of such a condition, and how I might fall into the hands of savages, and perhaps such as I might have reason to think far worse than the lions and tigers of Africa; that if I once came in their power, I should run a hazard more than a thousand to one of being killed, and perhaps of being eaten; for I had heard that the people of the Caribbean coast were cannibals³⁰⁾, or man-eaters, and I knew by the latitude, that I could not be far off from that shore. That suppose they were not cannibals, yet that they might kill me, as many Europeans who had fallen into their hands had been served³¹⁾, even when they had been ten or twenty together, much more I, that was but one, and could make little or no defence; all these things, I say, which I ought to have considered well of, and did cast up in my thoughts afterwards, yet took up none of my apprehensions at first, and my head ran mightily upon the thought of getting over to the shore.

XXVI. — Now I wished for my boy Xury, and the long-boat with the shoulder-of-mutton¹⁾ sail, with which I sailed above a thousand miles on the coast of Africa; but this was in vain: then I thought I would go and look at our ship's boat, which, as I have said, was blown up upon the shore a great way, in the storm, when we were first cast away. She lay almost where she did at first, but not quite; and was turned, by the force of the waves and the winds, almost bottom upward, against a high ridge of beachy rough sand²⁾,

³⁰⁾ Der Name der wilden Bewohner der karaibischen Inseln *Caribales* wurde neulat. zu *Canibales* und allmählich zum Appellativum. — ³¹⁾ *to serve* hier = behandeln.

XXVI. — ¹⁾ Cf. IV, 15. — ²⁾ *beachy rough sand* = grober Strandsand.

but no water about her, as before. If I had had hands to have refitted her, and to have launched her into the water, the boat would have done well enough, and I might have gone back into the Brasils with her easily enough; but I might have foreseen that I could no more turn her and set her upright upon her bottom, than I could remove the island; however, I went to the woods, and cut levers and rollers, and brought them to the boat, resolving to try what I could do; suggesting to myself, that if I could but turn her down, I might repair the damage she had received, and she would be a very good boat, and I might go to sea in her very easily.

I spared no pains, indeed, in this piece of fruitless toil, and spent, I think, three or four weeks about it; at last, finding it impossible to heave it up with my little strength, I fell to digging away the sand, to undermine it, and so to make it fall down, setting pieces of wood to thrust and guide it right in the fall.

But when I had done this, I was unable to stir it up again, or to get under it, much less to move it forward towards the water; so I was forced to give it over; and yet, though I gave over the hopes of the boat, my desire to venture over for the main increased, rather than decreased, as the means for it seemed impossible.

This at length put me upon thinking, whether it was not possible to make myself a canoe³⁾, or *periagua*³⁾, such as the natives of those climates make, even without tools, or, as I might say, without hands, of the trunk of a great tree. This I not only thought possible, but easy, and pleased myself extremely with the thoughts of making it, and with my having much more convenience for it than any of the Negroes or Indians, but not all considering the particular inconveniences which I lay under more than the Indians did, viz. want of hands to move it, when it was made, into the water, a difficulty much harder for me to surmount than all the consequences of want of tools could be to them; for what was it to me, if that when I had chosen a vast tree in the woods, I might with much trouble cut it down, if after I might be able with my tools to hew and dub⁴⁾ the outside into the

³⁾ *canoe*, spr. *kánò*, ist eigentlich der aus Baumrinde gefertigte Kahn der Wilden, während *periagua*, auf der dritten betont, aus einem Baumstamme ausgehöhlt ist. — ⁴⁾ *to dub* = bearbeiten.

proper shape of a boat, and burn or cut out the inside to make it hollow, so to make a boat of it; if, after all this, I must leave it just there where I found it, and was not able to launch it into the water?

One would have thought I could not have had the least reflection upon my mind of my circumstance while I was making this boat, but I should have immediately thought how I should get it into the sea; but my thoughts were so intent upon my voyage over the sea in it, that I never once⁵⁾ considered how I should get it off of the land; and it was really, in its own nature, more easy for me to guide it over forty-five miles of sea, than about forty-five fathom of land, where it lay, to set it afloat in the water.

I went to work upon this boat the most like a fool that ever man did, who had any of his senses awake. I pleased myself with the design, without determining whether I was ever able to undertake it; not but that the difficulty of launching my boat came often into my head; but I put a stop⁶⁾ to my own inquiries into it, by this foolish answer, which I gave myself: Let's first make it, I'll warrant I'll find some way or other to get it along when it is done.

This was a most preposterous method; but the eagerness of my fancy prevailed, and to work I went. I felled a cedar tree, and I question much whether Solomon ever had such a one for the building of the Temple at Jerusalem; it was five feet ten inches diameter at the lower part next the stump, and four feet eleven inches diameter at the end of twenty-two feet, after which it lessened for awhile, and then parted into branches. It was not without infinite labour that I felled this tree; I was twenty days hacking and hewing at it at the bottom; I was fourteen more getting the branches and limbs, and the vast spreading head of it, cut off, which I hacked and hewed through with axe and hatchet, and inexpressible labour; after this, it cost me a month to shape it and dub it to a proportion, and to something like the bottom of a boat, that it might swim upright as it ought to do. It cost me near three months more to clear the inside, and work it out so as to make an exact boat of it; this I did, indeed, without

⁵⁾ *never once* = auch nicht ein einziges Mal. — ⁶⁾ *to put a stop* = Einhalt thun.

fire, by mere mallet⁷⁾ and chisel, and by the dint⁸⁾ of hard labour, till I had brought it to be a very handsome periagua, and big enough to have carried six and twenty men, and consequently big enough to have carried me and all my cargo.

When I had gone through this work, I was extremely delighted with it. The boat was really much bigger than I ever saw a canoe or periagua, that was made of one tree, in my life. Many a weary stroke it had cost, you may be sure: and had I gotten it into the water, I make no question but I should have begun the maddest voyage, and the most unlikely to be performed, that ever was undertaken.

But all my devices to get it into the water failed me; though they cost me infinite labour too. It lay about one hundred yards from the water, and not more; but the first inconvenience was, it was up hill towards the creek. Well, to take away this discouragement, I resolved to dig into the surface of the earth, and so make a declivity: this I begun, and it cost me a prodigious deal of pains; but who grudge pains⁹⁾ that have their deliverance in view? but when this was worked through, and this difficulty managed, it was still much at one, for I could no more stir the canoe than I could the other boat. Then I measured the distance of ground, and resolved to cut a dock¹⁰⁾ or canal, to bring the water up to the canoe, seeing I could not bring the canoe down to the water. Well, I began this work; and when I began to enter upon it, and calculate how deep it was to be dug, how broad, how the stuff to be thrown out, I found that by the number of hands I had, being none but my own, that it must have been ten or twelve years before I could have gone through with it; for the shore lay high, so that at the upper end it must have been at least twenty feet deep; so at length, though with great reluctancy¹¹⁾, I gave this attempt over also.

This grieved me heartily; and now I saw, though too late, the folly of beginning a work before we count the cost, and before we judge rightly of our own strength to go through with it.

⁷⁾ *mallet*, Verkleinerung von *mall*, = Hammer, Schlägel. — ⁸⁾ *by (the) dint of* = kraft, vermittelt, hat präpositionale Bedeutung; das Substantiv *dint* = Schlag, Streich, gilt als veraltet. — ⁹⁾ *to grudge pains* = sich die Mühe verdriessen lassen. — ¹⁰⁾ *dock* hier = Graben. — ¹¹⁾ *reluctancy* = Widerwillen.

In the middle of this work, I finished my fourth year in this place, and kept my anniversary with the same devotion, and with as much comfort as ever before; for, by a constant study and serious application to the word of God, and by the assistance of his grace, I gained a different knowledge from what I had before. I entertained different notions¹²⁾ of things. I looked now upon the world as a thing remote, which I had nothing to do with, no expectation from, and, indeed, no desires about: in a word, I had nothing indeed to do with it, nor was ever likely to have; so I thought it looked, as we may perhaps look upon it hereafter, viz. as a place I had lived in, but was come out of it; and well might I say, as father Abraham to Dives¹³⁾, "Between me and thee is a great gulf fixed."

In the first place, I was removed from all the wickedness of the world here; I had neither the lust of the flesh, the lust of the eye, or the pride of life. I had nothing to covet, for I had all that I was now capable of enjoying: I was lord of the whole manor¹⁴⁾; or, if I pleased, I might call myself king or emperor over the whole country which I had possession of; there were no rivals; I had no competitor, none to dispute sovereignty or command with me: I might have raised ship-loadings of corn, but I had no use for it; so I let as little grow as I thought enough for my occasion. I had tortoise or turtles enough, but now and then one was as much as I could put to any use: I had timber enough to have built a fleet of ships; and I had grapes enough to have made wine, or to have cured into raisins, to have loaded that fleet when they had been built.

But all I could make use of was all that was valuable: I had enough to eat and supply my wants, and what was all the rest to me? If I killed more flesh than I could eat, the dog must eat it, or vermin¹⁵⁾; if I sowed more corn than I could eat, it must be spoiled; the trees that I cut down were lying to rot on the ground; I could make no more use of them than for fuel, and that I had no occasion for but to dress my food.

¹²⁾ „Ich hegte ganz andere Vorstellungen“. — ¹³⁾ *Dives* ist die Bezeichnung für den reichen Mann im Evangelium; cf. Lukas XVI, 26. — ¹⁴⁾ Cf. XX, 16. — ¹⁵⁾ Cf. XXI, 5.

In a word, the nature and experience of things dictated to me, upon just reflection, that all the good things of this world are no farther good to us than they are for our use; and that whatever we may heap up indeed to give others, we enjoy just as much as we can use and no more. The most covetous griping miser¹⁶⁾ in the world would have been cured of the vice of covetousness, if he had been in my case; for I possessed infinitely more than I knew what to do with. I had no room for desire, except it was of things which I had not, and they were but trifles, though indeed of great use to me. I had, as I hinted before, a parcel of money, as well gold as silver, about thirty-six pounds sterling. Alas! there the nasty, sorry, useless stuff¹⁷⁾ lay; I had no manner of business for it; and I often thought with myself, that I would have given a handful of it for a gross of tobacco-pipes, or for a hand-mill to grind my corn; nay, I would have given it all for sixpenny-worth of turnip and carrot seed out of England, or for a handful of peas and beans, and a bottle of ink. As it was, I had not the least advantage by it, or benefit from it; but there it lay in a drawer, and grew mouldy¹⁸⁾ with the damp of the cave in the wet seasons; and if I had had the drawer full of diamonds, it had been the same case, they had been of no manner of value to me because of no use.

XXVII. — I had now brought my state of life to be much easier in itself than it was at first, and much easier to my mind, as well as to my body. I frequently sat down to meat with thankfulness, and admired the hand of God's providence, which had thus spread my table in the wilderness; I learned to look more upon the bright side of my condition, and less upon the dark side, and to consider what I enjoyed, rather than what I wanted; and this gave me sometimes such secret comforts, that I cannot express them; and which I take notice of here, to put those discontented people in mind of it, who cannot enjoy comfortably what God has given them, because they see and covet something that he has not given them. All our discontents about what we want, appeared to

¹⁶⁾ „Der begehrllichste, habgierigste Geizhals (*miser*)“. — ¹⁷⁾ *stuff* = Zeug. — ¹⁸⁾ *mouldy* = schimmelig, dumpfig, ist das mundartliche mulstrig.

me to spring from the want of thankfulness for what we have.

Another reflection was of great use to me, and doubtless would be so to any one that should fall into such distress as mine was; and this was, to compare my present condition with what I at first expected it should be; nay, with what it would certainly have been, if the good providence of God had not wonderfully ordered the ship to be cast up nearer to the shore, where I not only could come at her, but could bring what I got out of her to the shore, for my relief and comfort; without which, I had wanted for tools to work, weapons for defence, or gunpowder and shot for getting my food.

I spent whole hours, I may say whole days, in representing to myself, in the most lively colours, how I must have acted if I had got nothing out of the ship. How I could not have so much as got any food, except fish and turtles; and that, as it was long before I found any of them, I must have perished first; that I should have lived, if I had not perished, like a mere savage; that if I had killed a goat or a fowl, by any contrivance, I had no way to flay or open it, or part the flesh from the skin and the bowels¹⁾, or to cut it up; but must gnaw²⁾ it with my teeth, and pull it with my claws, like a beast.

These reflections made me very sensible of the goodness of Providence to me, and very thankful for my present condition, with all its hardships and misfortunes: and this part also I cannot but recommend to the reflection of those who are apt, in their misery, to say, Is any affliction like mine? Let them consider how much worse the cases of some people are, and their case might have been, if Providence had thought fit.

I had another reflection, which assisted me also to comfort my mind with hopes; and this was comparing my present situation with what I had deserved, and had therefore reason to expect from the hand of Providence. I had lived a dreadful life, perfectly destitute of the knowledge and fear of God. I had been well instructed by father and mother; neither had they been wanting to me, in their early endeavours to infuse a religious awe of God into my mind, a sense of my

duty, and what the nature and end of my being required of me. But, alas! falling early into the seafaring³⁾ life, which, of all lives, is the most destitute of the fear of God, though his terrors are always before them; I say, falling early into the seafaring life, and into seafaring company, all that little sense of religion which I had entertained was laughed out of me by my messmates⁴⁾; by a hardened despising of dangers, and the views of death, which grew habitual to me; by my long absence from all manner of opportunities to converse with any thing but what was like myself, or to hear any thing that was good, or tended towards it.

So void was I of every thing that was good, or of the least sense of what I was, or was to be, that in the greatest deliverances I enjoyed, such as my escape from Sallee; my being taken up by the Portuguese master of the ship; my being planted so well in the Brasils; my receiving the cargo from England, and the like; I never had once the words, Thank God, so much as on my mind, or in my mouth; nor in the greatest distress had I so much as a thought to pray to him, or so much as to say, Lord, have mercy upon me! no, nor to mention the name of God, unless it was to swear by, and blaspheme it.

I had terrible reflections upon my mind for many months, as I have already observed, on account of my wicked and hardened life past; and when I looked about me, and considered what particular providences had attended me since my coming into this place, and how God had dealt bountifully with me; had not only punished me less than my iniquity had deserved, but had so plentifully provided for me; this gave me great hopes that my repentance was accepted, and that God had yet mercy in store⁵⁾ for me.

With these reflections, I worked my mind up⁶⁾, not only to a resignation to the will of God in the present disposition of my circumstances, but even to a sincere thankfulness for my condition; and that I, who was yet a living man, ought not to complain, seeing I had not the due punishment of my

³⁾ *seafaring life* = Seefahrerleben, Matrosenlaufbahn. — ⁴⁾ *messmates*, eig. = Tischgenossen, die von demselben Gerichte (*mess*) essen, dann = Kameraden. — ⁵⁾ *store* = Vorrat, Fülle; *to have in store* = aufbewahrt, aufbehalten haben, ist mehr biblisch. —

⁶⁾ „Ich brachte mein Herz dahin“.

sins; that I enjoyed so many mercies which I had no reason to have expected in that place; that I ought never more to repine at my condition, but to rejoice, and to give daily thanks for that daily bread, which nothing but a crowd of wonders could have brought; that I ought to consider I had been fed even by a miracle, even as great as that of feeding Elijah⁷⁾ by ravens⁸⁾; nay, by a long series of miracles: and that I could hardly have named a place in the uninhabitable part of the world where I could have been cast more to my advantage; a place where, as I had no society, which was my affliction on one hand, so I found no ravenous beasts, no furious wolves or tigers, to threaten my life; no venomous creatures or poisonous⁹⁾, which I might feed on to my hurt; no savages to murder and devour me.

I had now been here so long, that many things which I brought on shore for my help were either quite gone, or very much wasted, and near¹⁰⁾ spent.

My ink, as I observed, had been gone some time, all but a very little, which I eked¹¹⁾ out with water, a little and a little, till it was so pale, it scarce left any appearance of black upon the paper. As long as it lasted, I made use of it to minute down the days of the month on which any remarkable thing happened to me: and, first, by casting up times past, I remember that there was a strange concurrence of days in the various providences which befel me¹²⁾, and which, if I had been superstitiously inclined to observe days as fatal or fortunate, I might have had reason to have looked upon with a great deal of curiosity.

First, I had observed, that the same day that I broke away from my father and my friends, and ran away to Hull, in order to go to sea, the same day afterwards I was taken by the Sallee man of war, and made a slave; the same day of the year that escaped out of the wreck of that ship in Yarmouth Roads, that same day-year afterwards I made my escape from Sallee in the boat; the same day of the year I

7) Spr. i. — 8) Cf. I. Könige XVII, 4. — 9) *poison* ist das allgemeine Wort für Gift und wird durch den Mund in den Körper aufgenommen, *venom* ist mehr das tierische Gift, welches äußerlich (durch Bisse etc.) übertragen wird. — 10) *near* ist auch in dieser Form Adverbium der Zeit, des Raumes und des Grades. — 11) *to eke out* = vermehren, ist veraltet. — 12) „Heimsuchungen, die mich trafen“.

was born on, viz. the 30th of September, that same day I had my life so miraculously saved twenty-six years after, when I was cast on shore in this island; so that my wicked life and my solitary life began both on a day.

The next thing to my ink being wasted, was that of my bread, I mean the biscuit which I brought out of the ship; this I had husbanded to the last degree, allowing myself but one cake of bread a day for above a year; and yet I was quite without bread for near a year before I got any corn of my own; and great reason I had to be thankful that I had any at all, the getting it being¹³⁾, as has been already observed, next to miraculous.

My clothes too began to decay mightily; as to linen, I had had none a good while, except some chequered shirts which I found in the chests of the other seamen, and which I carefully preserved, because many times I could bear no other clothes on but a shirt; and it was a very great help to me that I had, among all the men's clothes of the ship, almost three dozen of shirts. There were also, several thick watch-coats of the seamen's which were left indeed, but they were too hot to wear: and though it is true that the weather was so violent hot that there was no need of clothes, yet I could not go quite naked, no, though I had been inclined to it, which I was not, nor could I abide the thought of it, though I was all alone. The reason why I could not go quite naked was, I could not bear the heat of the sun so well when quite naked as with some clothes on; nay, the very heat frequently blistered¹⁴⁾ my skin; whereas, with a shirt on, the air itself made some motion, and whistling¹⁵⁾ under that shirt, was twofold cooler than without it. No more could I ever bring myself to go out in the heat of the sun without a cap or a hat; the heat of the sun beating with such violence as it does in that place, would give me the head-ache¹⁶⁾ presently, by darting so directly on my head, without a cap or hat on, so that I could not bear it; whereas, if I put on my hat, it would presently go away.

¹³⁾ *the getting it being next to miraculous* = da dessen Er-
langung nahe ans Wunderbare grenzte. — ¹⁴⁾ *to blister* = mit
Blasen bedecken. — ¹⁵⁾ *to whistle*, mit stummem t, eig. = pfeifen
(flöten), dann auch vom Winde gesagt, hier = wehen. — ¹⁶⁾ Spr. àk.

Upon those views, I began to consider about putting the few rags I had, which I called clothes, into some order; I had worn out all the waistcoats I had, and my business was now to try if I could not make jackets out of the great watchcoats which I had by me, and with such other materials as I had; so I set to work a tailoring¹⁷⁾, or rather, indeed, a botching¹⁸⁾, for I made most piteous work of it. However, I made shift to make two or three new waistcoats, which I hoped would serve me a great while; as for breeches or drawers¹⁹⁾, I made but a very sorry shift²⁰⁾ indeed till afterwards.

XXVIII. — I have mentioned, that I saved the skins of all the creatures that I killed, I mean four-footed ones, and I had hung them up stretched out with sticks in the sun, by which means some of them were so dry and hard that they were fit for little, but others it seems were very useful. The first thing I made of these was a great cap for my head, with the hair on the outside, to shoot off¹⁾ the rain; and this I performed so well, that after this I made me a suit of clothes wholly of these skins, that is to say, a waistcoat, and breeches open at the knees, and both loose, for they were rather wanting to keep me cool than to keep me warm. I must not omit to acknowledge that they were wretchedly made; for if I was a bad carpenter, I was a worse tailor. However, they were such as I made very good shift with, and when I was abroad, if it happened to rain, the hair of my waistcoat and cap being outermost, I was kept very dry.

After this I spent a great deal of time and pains to make me an umbrella; I was indeed in great want of one, and had a great mind to make one; I had seen them made in the Brasils, where they are very useful in the great heats which are there, and I felt the heats every jot²⁾ as great here, and

¹⁷⁾ *I set to work a tailoring* = ich machte mich ans Schneidern; dazu vergleiche IV, 8. — ¹⁸⁾ *to botch* = flicken; cf. XXIV, 23. —

¹⁹⁾ *breeches* sind eigentlich die Kniehosen, *drawers* die Unterhosen, beide Wörter stehen aber auch für Hosen allgemein; NB. *a pair of breeches*, *a pair of drawers* = ein Paar Hosen, weil dies Kleidungsstück, früher ähnlich ein Paar sehr langen Strümpfen, aus zwei Teilen, für jedes Bein einer, bestand. — ²⁰⁾ *I made but a very sorry shift* = ich behalf mich nur sehr kümmerlich; dagegen *I made shift* = ich bemühte mich.

XXVIII. — ¹⁾ *to shoot off* hier = ablaufen lassen. — ²⁾ *every jot* = jedes Jota, jedes Pünktchen, in jeder Beziehung.

greater too, being nearer the equinox; besides, as I was obliged to be much abroad, it was a most useful thing to me, as well for the rains as the heats. I took a world of pains at it, and was a great while before I could make any thing likely to hold; nay, after I thought I had hit the way, I spoiled two or three before I made one to my mind, but at last I made one that answered indifferently well³⁾; the main difficulty I found was to make it to let down. I could make it to spread, but if it did not let down too, and draw in, it was not portable for me any way but just over my head, which would not do. However, at last, as I said, I made one to answer, and covered it with skins, the hair upwards, so that it cast off the rain like a pent-house⁴⁾, and kept off the sun so effectually, that I could walk out in the hottest of the weather with greater advantage than I could before in the coolest, and when I had no need of it, could close it, and carry it under my arm.

Thus I lived mighty comfortably, my mind being entirely composed by resigning to the will of God, and throwing myself wholly upon the disposal of his providence. This made my life better than sociable, for when I began to regret the want of conversation, I would ask myself, whether thus conversing mutually with my own thoughts, and, as I hope I may say, with even God himself, by ejaculations, was not better than the utmost enjoyment of human society in the world?

I cannot say that after this, for five years, any extraordinary thing happened to me, but I lived on in the same course, in the same posture and place, just as before; the chief things I was employed in, besides my yearly labour of planting my barley and rice, and curing my raisins, of both which⁵⁾ I always kept up just enough to have sufficient stock of one year's provisions beforehand, I say, besides this yearly labour, and my daily labour of going out with my gun, I had one labour, to make me a canoe, which at last I finished; so that by digging a canal to it of six feet wide, and four feet deep, I brought it into the creek, almost half a mile. As for the first, which was so vastly big, as I made it without considering beforehand, as I ought to do, how I should be

3) „Der leidlich gut ausfiel“. — 4) *pent-house* = Wetterdach.
— 5) Stellung?!

able to launch⁶⁾ it; so, never being able to bring it to the water, or bring the water to it, I was obliged to let it lie where it was, as a memorandum to teach me to be wiser next time; indeed, the next time, though I could not get a tree proper for it, and in a place where I could not get the water to it at any less distance than, as I have said, near half a mile; yet as I saw it was practicable at last, I never gave it over; and though I was near two years about it, yet I never grudged my labour, in hopes of having a boat to go off to sea at last.

However, though my little periagua was finished, yet the size of it was not at all answerable to the design which I had in view when I made the first; I mean, of venturing over to the *terra firma*, where it was above forty miles broad; accordingly, the smallness of my boat assisted to put an end to that design, and now I thought no more of it. But as I had a boat, my next design was to make a tour round the island; for as I had been on the other side in one place, crossing, as I have already described it, over the land; so the discoveries I made in that little journey made me very eager to see other parts of the coast; and now I had a boat, I thought of nothing but sailing round the island.

For this purpose, that I might do every thing with discretion and consideration, I fitted up a little mast to my boat, and made a sail to it out of some of the pieces of the ship's sails, which lay in store; and of which I had a great stock by me. Having fitted my mast and sail, and tried the boat, I found she would sail very well; then I made little lockers⁷⁾, or boxes, at either end of my boat, to put provisions, necessaries, ammunition, &c. into, to be kept dry, either from rain or the spray of the sea; and a little long hollow place I cut in the inside of the boat, where I could lay my gun, making a flap to hang down over it, to keep it dry.

I fixed my umbrella also in a step at the stern, like a mast, to stand over my head, and keep the heat of the sun off me, like an awning⁸⁾, and thus I every now and then took a little voyage upon the sea, but never went far out, nor far from the little creek; but at last, being eager to

⁶⁾ *to launch*, spr. lántsh, vom Stapel laufen lassen. — ⁷⁾ Cf. XI, 21. — ⁸⁾ *awning* ist das leinene Schirmdach, das Sommerzelt.

view the circumference of my little kingdom, I resolved upon my tour, and accordingly I victualled⁹⁾ my ship for the voyage, putting in two dozen of my loaves, cakes I should rather call them, of barley bread, an earthen pot full of parched¹⁰⁾ rice, a food I eat a great deal of, a little bottle of rum, half a goat, and powder and shot for killing more, and two large watch-coats, of those which, as I mentioned before, I had saved out of the seamen's chests; these I took, one to lie upon, and the other to cover me in the night.

It was the 6th of November, in the sixth year of my reign, or my captivity, which you please, that I set out on this voyage, and I found it much longer than I expected; for though the island itself was not very large, yet when I came to the east side of it, I found a great ledge of rocks¹¹⁾ lie out above two leagues into the sea, some above water, some under it, and beyond that a shoal of sand, lying dry half a league more; so that I was obliged to go a great way out to sea to double the point.

When first I discovered them, I was going to give over my enterprise, and come back again, not knowing how far it might oblige me to go out to sea, and, above all, doubting how I should get back again, so I came to an anchor; for I had made me a kind of an anchor with a piece of a broken grappling¹²⁾ which I got out of the ship.

Having secured my boat, I took my gun and went on shore, climbing up upon a hill, which seemed to overlook that point, where I saw the full extent of it, and resolved to venture.

In my viewing the sea from that hill, where I stood, I perceived a strong, and indeed a most furious current, which ran to the east, and even came close to the point; and I took the more notice of it, because I saw there might be some danger, that when I came into it, I might be carried out to sea by the strength of it, and not be able to make the island again; and, indeed, had I not gotten first up upon this hill, I believe it would have been so; for there was the same current on the other side the island, only that it set off at a farther distance; and I saw there was a strong eddy under

⁹⁾ Spr. vít'-tld. — ¹⁰⁾ to *pārch* = rösten. — ¹¹⁾ a ledge of rocks = ein Felsenriff. — ¹²⁾ *grappling* = *grapple* = Schiffshaken, Enterhaken.

the shore; so I had nothing to do but to get in out of the first current, and I should presently be in an eddy.

I lay here, however, two days; because the wind blowing pretty fresh at E. S. E. and that being just contrary to the said current, made a great breach of the sea upon the point; so that it was not safe for me to keep too close to the shore for the breach, nor to go too far off because of the stream.

The third day, in the morning, the wind having abated over-night, the sea was calm and I ventured; but I am a warning-piece¹³⁾ again to all rash and ignorant pilots; for no sooner was I come to the point, when even I was not my boat's length from the shore, but I found myself in a great depth of water, and a current like the sluice¹⁴⁾ of a mill; it carried my boat along with it with such violence, that all I could do could not keep her so much as on the edge of it, but I found it hurried me farther and farther out from the eddy, which was on my left hand. There was no wind stirring to help me, and all I could do with my paddles¹⁵⁾ signified nothing; and now I began to give myself over for lost; for as the current was on both sides the island, I knew in a few leagues distance they must join again, and then I was irrecoverably¹⁶⁾ gone; nor did I see any possibility of avoiding it; so that I had no prospect before me but of perishing; not by the sea, for that was calm enough, but of starving for hunger. I had indeed found a tortoise on the shore, as big almost as I could lift, and had tossed it into the boat; and I had a great jar of fresh water, that is to say, one of my earthen pots; but what was all this to being driven into the vast ocean, where, to be sure, there was no shore, no mainland or island, for a thousand leagues at least.

XXIX. — And now I saw how easy it was for the providence of God to make the most miserable condition mankind could be in, worse. Now I looked back upon my desolate solitary island, as the most pleasant place in the world, and all the happiness my heart could wish for was to be but there again. I stretched out my hands to it, with eager wishes;

¹³⁾ *warning-piece* = warnendes Beispiel. — ¹⁴⁾ Das *ui* lautet wie jenes in *fruit* = uh. — ¹⁵⁾ *paddles* sind die Pätschen (Schaufelruder). — ¹⁶⁾ Auf der dritten betont!

“O happy desert!” said I, “I shall never see thee more. O miserable creature,” said I “whither am I going?” Then I reproached myself with my unthankful temper, and how I had repined at my solitary condition; and now what would I give to be on shore there again. Thus we never see the true state of our condition till it is illustrated to us by its contraries, nor know how to value what we enjoy, but by the want of it. It is scarce possible to imagine the consternation I was now in, being driven from my beloved island (for so it appeared to me now to be) into the wide ocean, almost two leagues, and in the utmost despair of ever recovering it again. However, I worked hard, till indeed my strength was almost exhausted, and kept my boat as much to the northward, that is, towards the side of the current which the eddy lay on, as possibly I could; when about noon, as the sun passed the meridian, I thought I felt a little breeze of wind in my face, springing up from the S. S. E. This cheered my heart a little, and especially when, in about half an hour more, it blew a pretty small gentle gale. By this time I was gotten at a frightful distance from the island, and had the least cloud or hazy¹⁾ weather intervened²⁾, I had been undone another way too; for I had no compass on board, and should never have known how to have steered towards the island, if I had but once lost sight of it; but the weather continuing clear, I applied myself to get up my mast again, and spread my sail, standing away to the north as much as possible, to get out of the current.

Just as I had set my mast and sail, and the boat began to stretch away³⁾, I saw even by the clearness of the water some alteration of the current was near; for where the current was so strong, the water was foul⁴⁾; but perceiving the water clear, I found the current abate; and presently I found to the east, at about half a mile, a breach of the sea upon some rocks; these rocks I found caused the current to part again, and as the main stress⁵⁾ of it ran away more southerly, leaving the rocks to the north-east; so the other returned by the repulse of the rocks, and made a strong eddy, which ran back again to the north-west, with a very sharp stream.

XXIX. — ¹⁾ Cf. XXII, 19. — ²⁾ Spr. intervèn'-d. — ³⁾ *to stretch away* = fortstreben. — ⁴⁾ *foul* vom Wasser gesagt = trübe. — ⁵⁾ *the main stress* = die Hauptgewalt.

They who know what it is to have a reprieve⁶⁾ brought to them upon the ladder, or to be rescued from thieves just a going to murder them, or who have been in such-like extremities, may guess what my present surprise of joy was, and how gladly I put my boat into the stream of this eddy; and the wind also freshening, how gladly I spread my sail to it, running cheerfully before the wind, and with a strong tide or eddy under foot.

This eddy carried me about a league in my way back again, directly towards the island, but about two leagues more to the northward than the current which carried me away at first; so that when I came near the island, I found myself open⁷⁾ to the northern shore of it, that is to say, the other end of the island, opposite to that which I went out from.

When I had made something more than a league of way by the help of this current or eddy, I found it was spent, and served me no farther. However, I found that being between the two great currents, viz. that on the south side, which had hurried me away, and that on the north, which lay about a league on the other side; I say, between these two, in the wake⁸⁾ of the island, I found the water at least still, and running no way, and having still a breeze of wind fair for me, I kept on steering directly for the island, though not making such fresh way⁹⁾ as I did before.

About four o'clock in the evening, being then within about a league of the island, I found the point of the rocks which occasioned this disaster stretching out, as is described before, to the southward, and casting off the current more southerly, had, of course, made another eddy to the north, and this I found very strong, but not directly setting the way my course lay, which was due west, but almost full north. However, having a fresh gale, I stretched across this eddy, slanting¹⁰⁾ north-west; and, in about an hour, came within about a mile of the shore, where, it being smooth water, I soon got to land.

⁶⁾ Cf. IX, 9. — ⁷⁾ *open* hier = gegenüber. — ⁸⁾ *wake* heißt eigentlich das Kielwasser, die Spur, welche das Schiff im Wasser zurückläßt; hier bedeutet es denjenigen Meeresteil, welcher unter dem Schutze der Insel liegt, also deswegen von der Strömung nicht getroffen werden kann. — ⁹⁾ *fresh way* = schnelle Fahrt. — ¹⁰⁾ *to slant* = sich wenden.

When I was on shore, I fell on my knees, and gave God thanks for my deliverance, resolving to lay aside all thoughts of my deliverance by my boat, and refreshing myself with such things as I had, I brought my boat close to the shore, in a little cove that I had spied under some trees, and laid me down to sleep, being quite spent¹¹⁾ with the labour and fatigue of the voyage.

I was now at a great loss which way to get home with my boat; I had run so much hazard, and knew too much of the case, to think of attempting it by the way I went out; and what might be at the other side (I mean the west side) I knew not, nor had I any mind to run any more ventures; so I only resolved in the morning to make my way westward along the shore, and to see if there was no creek where I might lay up my frigate¹²⁾ in safety, so as to have her again, if I wanted her. In about three miles, or thereabouts, coasting the shore, I came to a very good inlet or bay, about a mile over, which narrowed till it came to a very little rivulet or brook, where I found a very convenient harbour for my boat, and where she lay as if she had been in a little dock made on purpose for her. Here I put in¹³⁾, and having stowed¹⁴⁾ my boat very safe, I went on shore, to look about me, and see where I was.

I soon found I had but a little passed by the place where I had been before, when I travelled on foot to that shore; so taking nothing out of my boat but my gun and my umbrella, for it was exceeding hot, I began my march. The way was comfortable enough after such a voyage as I had been upon, and I reached my old bower in the evening, where I found every thing standing as I left it; for I always kept it in good order, being, as I said before, my country house.

I got over the fence, and laid me down in the shade, to rest my limbs, for I was very weary, and fell asleep; but judge you, if you can, that read my story, what a surprise I must be in, when I was waked out of my sleep by a voice, calling me by my name several times, "Robin, Robin, Robin Crusoe, poor Robin Crusoe! Where are you, Robin Crusoe? Where are you? Where have you been?"

¹¹⁾ *spent* = verbraucht, erschöpft. — ¹²⁾ *frigate*, spr. fríg'-gát, bezeichnet auch das Fahrzeug im allgemeinen. — ¹³⁾ *to put in* = einlaufen. — ¹⁴⁾ *to stow* = festlegen.

I was so dead asleep at first, being fatigued with rowing, or paddling¹⁵⁾, as it is called, the first part of the day, and with walking the latter part, that I did not wake thoroughly; but dozing between sleeping and waking, thought I dreamed that somebody spoke to me; but as the voice continued to repeat Robin Crusoe, Robin Crusoe, at last I began to wake more perfectly, and was at first dreadfully frightened, and started up in the utmost consternation; but no sooner were my eyes open, but I saw my Pol sitting on the top of the hedge; and immediately knew that it was he that spoke to me; for just in such bemoaning¹⁶⁾ language I had used to talk to him, and teach him; and he had learned it so perfectly, that he would sit upon my finger, and lay his bill close to my face, and cry: "Poor Robin Crusoe! Where are you? Where have you been? How come you here?" and such things as I had taught him.

However, even though I knew it was the parrot, and that indeed it could be nobody else, it was a good while before I could compose myself: first, I was amazed how the creature got thither, and then, how he should just keep about¹⁷⁾ the place, and no where else: but as I was well satisfied, it could be nobody but honest Pol, I got it over; and holding out my hand, and calling him by his name, Pol, the sociable creature came to me, and sat upon my thumb, as he used to do, and continued talking to me, "Poor Robin Crusoe! and how did I come here? and where had I been?" just as if he had been overjoyed to see me again; and so I carried him home along with me.

I had now had enough of rambling to sea for some time, and had enough to do for many days, to sit still, and reflect upon the danger I had been in. I would have been very glad to have had my boat again on my side of the island; but I knew not how it was practicable to get it about. As to the east side of the island, which I had gone round, I knew well enough there was no venturing that way; my very heart would shrink¹⁸⁾, and my very blood run chill, but¹⁹⁾ to think of it: and as to the other side of the island, I did

¹⁵⁾ Cf. XXVIII, 15. — ¹⁶⁾ *to bemōan* = betrauern. — ¹⁷⁾ *to keep about* = sich aufhalten, bleiben an. — ¹⁸⁾ *to shrink*, eig. sich zusammenziehen, erstarren, dann = zittern, schaudern, sich entsetzen. — ¹⁹⁾ „wenn ich nur daran dachte“.

not know how it might be there; but supposing the current ran with the same force against the shore at the east as it passed by it on the other, I might run the same risk of being driven down the stream, and carried by the island, as I had been before of being carried away from it; so, with these thoughts, I contended myself to be without any boat, though it had been the product of so many months' labour to make it, and of so many more to get it into the sea.

In this government of my temper²⁰⁾ I remained near a year, lived a very sedate²¹⁾, retired life, as you may well suppose; and my thoughts being very much composed, as to my condition, and fully comforted in resigning myself to the dispositions of Providence, I thought I lived really very happily in all things, except that of society.

XXX. — I improved myself in this time in all the mechanic exercises, which my necessities put me upon applying myself to, and I believe could, upon occasion, make a very good carpenter, especially considering how few tools I had.

Besides this, I arrived at an unexpected perfection in my earthen-ware, and contrived well enough to make them with a wheel¹⁾, which I found infinitely²⁾ easier and better; because I made things round and shapable³⁾, which before were filthy things indeed to look on⁴⁾. But I think I was never more vain of my own performance, or more joyful for any thing I found out, than for my being able to make a tobacco-pipe. And though it was a very ugly clumsy thing when it was done, and only burnt red, like other earthen-ware, yet as it was hard and firm, and would draw the smoke, I was exceedingly comforted with it; for I had been always used to smoke, and there were pipes in the ship, but I forgot them at first, not knowing that there was tobacco in the island; and afterwards, when I searched the ship again, I could not come at any pipes at all.

In my wicker-ware also I improved much, and made abundance of necessary baskets, as well as my invention showed

²⁰⁾ *government of temper* = Gemütsverfassung. — ²¹⁾ *sedate* sefshaft, ruhig.

XXX. — ¹⁾ *wheel* ist hier die Drehscheibe der Töpfer. — ²⁾ Cf. XI, 19. — ³⁾ *shapable* = ansehnlich, sodaß sie Gestalt (*shape*) hatten. — ⁴⁾ Erkläre: „welche Sachen vorher in der That unansehnlich anzuschauen waren“.

me, though not very handsome, yet they were such as were very handy and convenient for my laying things up in, or fetching things home in. For example, if I killed a goat abroad, I could hang it up in a tree, flay it, dress it, and cut it in pieces, and bring it home in a basket, and the like by⁵⁾ a turtle, I could cut it up, take out the eggs, and a piece or two of the flesh, which was enough for me, and bring them home in a basket, and leave the rest behind me. Also large deep baskets were my receivers for my corn, which I always rubbed out as soon as it was dry, and cured, and kept it in great baskets.

I began now to perceive my powder abated considerably, and this was a want which it was impossible for me to supply, and I began seriously to consider what I must do when I should have no more powder; that is to say, how I should do to kill any goats. I had, as is observed, in the third year of my being here, kept a young kid, and bred her up tame, and I was in hopes of getting a he-goat, but I could not by any means bring it to pass, till my kid grew an old goat; and I could never find in my heart to kill her, till she died at last of mere age.

But being now in the eleventh year of my residence, and, as I have said, my ammunition growing low, I set myself to study some art to trap and snare⁶⁾ the goats, to see whether I could not catch some of them alive; and particularly, I wanted a she-goat great with young. To this purpose, I made snares to hamper⁷⁾ them, and I do⁸⁾ believe they were more than once taken in them; but my tackle⁹⁾ was not good, for I had no wire, and I always found them broken, and my bait¹⁰⁾ devoured. At length I resolved to try a pitfall; so I dug several large pits in the earth, in places where I had observed the goats used to feed, and over these pits I placed hurdles, of my own making too, with a great weight upon them; and several times I put ears of barley and dry rice, without setting the trap, and I could easily perceive that the goats had gone

5) *the like by* = desgleichen mit. — 6) *snare*, verwandt mit Schnur, ist die Schlinge, der Fallstrick; *trap*, verwandt mit Treppe, ist mehr die Kastenfalle. — 7) *to hamper* = (die Füße) in etwas verwickeln. — 8) *to do* verstärkt hier den Begriff des Verbuns und ist mit wirklich zu übersetzen. — 9) *tackle* = Gerät, Zeug. — 10) *bait* = Beitz, Lockspeise, Köder.

in and eaten up the corn, for I could see the mark of their feet. At length I set three traps in one night, and going the next morning, I found them all standing, and yet the bait eaten and gone; this was very discouraging. However, I altered my traps; and, not to trouble you with particulars, going one morning to see my traps, I found in one of them a large old he-goat, and in one of the others three kids, a male and two females.

As to the old one, I knew not what to do with him, he was so fierce I durst not go into the pit to him; that is to say, to go about to bring him away alive, which was what I wanted. I could have killed him, but that was not my business, nor would it answer my end; so I e'en¹¹⁾ let him out, and he ran away, as if he had been frightened out of his wits. But I did not then know what I learned afterwards, that hunger will tame a lion. If I had let him stay there three or four days without food, and then have carried him some water to drink, and then a little corn, he would have been as tame as one of the kids, for they are mighty sagacious, tractable creatures, when they are well used.

However, for the present I let him go, knowing no better at that time; then I went to the three kids, and taking them one by one, I tied them with strings together, and with some difficulty brought them all home.

It was a good while before they would feed, but throwing them some sweet corn, it tempted them, and they began to be tame. And now I found that if I expected to supply myself with goat-flesh when I had no powder or shot left, breeding some up tame was my only way, when perhaps I might have them about my house like a flock of sheep. But then it presently occurred to me, that I must keep the tame from the wild, or else they would always run wild¹²⁾ when they grew up; and the only way for this was, to have some enclosed piece of ground, well fenced, either with hedge or pale, to keep them in so effectually, that those within might not break out, or those without break in.

This was a great undertaking for one pair of hands; yet as I saw there was an absolute necessity of doing it, my first

¹¹⁾ *e'en*, spr. *èn*, = *even*. — ¹²⁾ *to run wild* = wild werden, wie *to run mad* = wahnsinnig werden, etc.

piece of work was to find out a proper piece of ground, viz. where there was likely to be herbage for them to eat, water for them to drink, and cover to keep them from the sun.

Those who understand such enclosures will think I had very little contrivance, when I pitched upon a place very proper for all these, being a plain open piece of meadow land, or *savannah*¹³⁾ (as our people call it in the western colonies,) which had two or three little drills¹⁴⁾ of fresh water in it, and at one end was very woody; I say, they will smile at my forecast¹⁵⁾, when I shall tell them, I began my enclosing of this piece of ground in such a manner, that my hedge or pale must have been at least two miles about. Nor was the madness of it so great as to the compass, for if it was ten miles about I was like to have time enough to do it in; but I did not consider that my goats would be as wild in so much compass as if they had had the whole island, and I should have so much room to chase them in, that I should never catch them.

My hedge was begun and carried on, I believe about fifty yards, when this thought occurred to me, so I presently stopped short, and, for the first beginning, I resolved to enclose a piece of about 150 yards in length, and 100 yards in breadth; which, as it would maintain as many as I should have in any reasonable time, so, as my flock increased, I could add more ground to my enclosure.

This was acting¹⁶⁾ with some prudence, and I went to work with courage. I was about three months hedging in the first piece, and, till I had done it, I tethered¹⁷⁾ the three kids in the best part of it, and used them to feed as near me as possible, to make them familiar; and very often I would go and carry them some ears of barley, or a handful of rice, and feed them out of my hand: so that after my enclosure was finished, and I let them loose, they would follow me up and down, bleating after me for a handful of corn.

¹³⁾ Cf. XX, 4. — ¹⁴⁾ *drill*, eine veraltete Form für *rill* = Bächlein. — ¹⁵⁾ *forecast*, der in die Zukunft geworfene Blick, die Vorsicht, Vorsorge; dagegen: *to forecast*. — ¹⁶⁾ *this was acting* = das hieß handeln. — ¹⁷⁾ *to tether* = *to tedder* = anbinden, von dem Hauptworte *tedder* = Tödder (Seil, an dem die Tiere auf der Weide angebunden werden).

This answered my end¹⁸⁾, and in about a year and a half I had a flock of about twelve goats, kids and all; and in two years more, I had three and forty, besides several that I took and killed for my food. And after that I enclosed five several pieces of ground to feed them in, with little pens¹⁹⁾ to drive them into, to take them as I wanted, and gates out of one piece of ground into another.

But this was not all, for now I not only had goat's flesh to feed on when I pleased, but milk too, a thing which, indeed, in my beginning, I did not so much as think of, and which, when it came into my thoughts, was really an agreeable surprise. For now I set up my dairy²⁰⁾, and had sometimes a gallon or two of milk in a day, and as nature, who gives supplies of food to every creature, dictates even naturally how to make use of it, so I, that had never milked a cow, much less a goat, or seen butter or cheese made, very readily and handily, though after a great many essays and miscarriages, made me both butter and cheese at last, and never wanted it afterwards. How mercifully can our Creator treat his creatures, even in those conditions in which they seemed to be overwhelmed in destruction! How can he sweeten the bitterest providences, and give us cause to praise him for dungeons and prisons²¹⁾! What a table was here spread for me in a wilderness, where I saw nothing, at first, but to perish for hunger!

It would have made a stoic²²⁾ smile, to have seen me and my little family sit down to dinner; there was my majesty, the prince and lord of the whole island: I had the lives of all my subjects at my absolute command. I could hang, draw²³⁾, give liberty, and take it away; and no rebels among all my subjects. Then to see how like a king I dined too, all alone, attended by my servants, Pol, as if he had been my favourite, was the only person permitted to talk to me.

18) „Das entsprach meiner Absicht“. — 19) Cf. XXIII, 2. — 20) „Richtete ich meine Milchwirtschaft ein“. — 21) *dúngeon* ist der Kerker, das unterirdische Gefängnis, *príson* ist das Gefängnis überhaupt. — 22) *stoic*, spr. stō'-ik, der stoische Philosoph, der Stoiker, dann = der gleichgültige Mensch. Zeno, der Stifter dieser Schule, lehrte nämlich: Die Tugend ist das höchste Gut, das Laster ist das einzige Übel, alles andere ist gleichgültig. — 23) *to drāw* = die Gedärme herausreißen (und dann vierteilen).

My dog, who was now grown very old and crazy²⁴), and had found no species to multiply his kind upon²⁵), sat always at my right hand, and two cats, one on one side of the table, and one on the other, expecting now and then a bit from my hand, as a mark of special favour.

But these were not the two cats which I brought on shore at first, for they were both of them dead, and had been interred near my habitation by my own hand; but one of them having multiplied by I know not what kind of creature, these were two which I had preserved tame, whereas the rest run wild in the woods, and became indeed troublesome to me at last; for they would often come into my house, and plunder me too, till at last I was obliged to shoot them, and did kill a great many; at length they left me. With this attendance, and in this plentiful manner, I lived; neither could I be said to want any thing but society: and of that in some time after this, I was like to have too much.

XXXI. — I was something impatient, as I have observed, to have the use of my boat; though very loath to run any more hazards; and therefore sometimes I sat contriving ways to get her about the island, and at other times I sat myself down contented enough without her. But I had a strange uneasiness in my mind to go down to the point of the island, where, as I have said, in my last ramble, I went up the hill to see how the shore lay, and how the current set, that I might see what I had to do: this inclination increased upon¹) me every day, and at length I resolved to travel thither by land, and following the edge of the shore, I did so; but had any one in England been to meet such a man as I was, it must either have frightened them, or raised a great deal of laughter; and as I frequently stood still to look at myself, I could not but smile at the notion of my travelling through Yorkshire, with such an equipage²), and in such a dress: be pleased to take a sketch of my figure, as follows:

I had a great high shapeless cap, made of a goat's skin, with a flap hanging down behind, as well to keep the sun

²⁴) *cràzy* = zerbrechlich. — ²⁵) „keine Art, um sein Geschlecht damit fortzupflanzen“.

XXXI. — ¹) *to increase upon* = überhandnehmen bei. — ²) *equipage*, auf der ersten betont, = Ausrüstung.

from me as to shoot³⁾ the rain off from running into my neck; nothing being so hurtful in these climates as the rain upon the flesh, under the clothes.

I had a short jacket of goat's skin, the skirts coming down⁴⁾ to about the middle of my thighs; and a pair of open-kneed breeches of the same; the breeches were made of the skin of an old he-goat, whose hair hung down such a length on either side, that, like pantaloons, it reached to the middle of my legs; stockings and shoes I had none, but had made me a pair of somethings, I scarce know what to call them, like buskins⁵⁾, to flap over my legs, and lace on either side like spatterdashes⁶⁾; but of a most barbarous shape, as indeed were all the rest of my clothes.

I had on a broad belt of goat's skin dried, which I drew together with two thongs of the same, instead of buckles; and in a kind of a frog⁷⁾ on either side of this, instead of a sword and dagger, hung a little saw and a hatchet, one on one side, and one on the other. I had another belt, not so broad, and fastened in the same manner, which hung over my shoulder; and at the end of it, under my left arm, hung two pouches, both made of goat's skin too; in one of which hung my powder, in the other my shot; at my back I carried my basket, and on my shoulder my gun, and over my head a great clumsy ugly goat's-skin umbrella, but which, after all, was the most necessary thing I had about me, next to my gun; as for my face, the colour of it was really not so mulatto-like as one might expect from a man not at all careful of it, and living within nine or ten degrees of the equinox. My beard I had once suffered to grow till it was about a quarter of a yard long; but as I had both scissors and razors sufficient, I had cut it pretty short, except what grew on my upper lip, which I had trimmed into a large pair of Mahometan whiskers⁸⁾, such as I had seen worn by some Turks whom I saw at Sallee; for the Moors did not wear such, though the Turks did; of these mustachios⁸⁾ or

3) Cf. XXVIII, 1. — 4) „deren Schöfse hinabreicheten“. — 5) *búskins* = Schnürstiefeln. — 6) *spátterdashes* = Reitgamaschen. — 7) *frog* = Gehenk. — 8) *whisker* heißt jetzt Backenbart, ehemals wurde aber auch der Schnurrbart so genannt, zu dessen Bezeichnung jetzt das ital. *mustachio*, spr. *mústāsh'-èō*, dient. NB. Beachte den Plural, es sind nämlich je zwei Hälften!

whiskers, I will not say they were long enough to hang my hat upon them, but they were of a length and shape monstrous enough, and such as, in England, would have passed for frightful.

But all this is by the bye; for, as to my figure, I had so few to observe me that it was of no manner of consequence⁹⁾; so I say no more to that part. In this kind of figure I went my new journey, and was out five or six days. I travelled first along the sea-shore, directly to the place where I first brought my boat to an anchor, to get upon the rocks; and having no boat now to take care of, I went over the land, a nearer way, to the same height that I was upon before; when looking forward to the point of the rocks which lay out, and which I was obliged to double with my boat, as is said above, I was surprised to see the sea all smooth and quiet, no rippling, no motion, no current, any more there than in any other places. I was at a strange loss to understand this, and resolved to spend some time in the observing it, to see if nothing from the sets¹⁰⁾ of the tide had occasioned it; but I was presently convinced how it was, viz. that the tide of ebb setting¹⁰⁾ from the west, and joining with the current of waters from some great river on the shore, must be the occasion of this current; and that according as the wind blew more forcibly from the west, or from the north, this current came nearer, or went farther from the shore; for waiting thereabouts till evening, I went up to the rock again, and then the tide of ebb being made, I plainly saw the current again as before, only that it ran farther off, being near half a league from the shore; whereas in my case, it set close upon the shore, and hurried me and my canoe along with it, which, at another time, it would not have done.

This observation convinced me, that I had nothing to do but to observe the ebbing and the flowing of the tide, and I might very easily bring my boat about the island again; but when I began to think of putting it in practice, I had such a terror upon my spirits at the remembrance of the danger I had been in, that I could not think of it again with any patience; but, on the contrary, I took up another resolution, which was more safe, though more laborious; and this was,

⁹⁾ *of no manner of consequence* = in keiner Weise von Bedeutung. — ¹⁰⁾ *set* = Richtung; *to set* = einsetzen.

that I would build, or rather make me another periagua or canoe; and so have one for one side of the island, and one for the other.

You are to understand, that now I had, as I may call it, two plantations in the island; one, my little fortification or tent, with the wall about it, under the rock, with the cave behind me, which, by this time, I had enlarged into several apartments or caves, one within another. One of these, which was the driest and largest, and had a door out beyond my wall or fortification, that is to say, beyond where my wall joined to the rock, was all filled up with the large earthen pots, of which I have given an account, and with fourteen or fifteen great baskets, which would hold five or six bushels each, where I laid up my stores of provision, especially my corn, some in the ear, cut off short from the straw, and the other rubbed out with my hand.

As for my wall, made, as before, with long stakes or piles, those piles grew all like trees, and were by this time grown so big, and spread so very much, that there was not the least appearance, to any one's view, of any habitation behind them.

Near this dwelling of mine, but a little farther within the land, and upon lower ground, lay my two pieces of corn ground, which I kept duly cultivated and sowed, and which duly yielded me their harvest¹¹⁾ in its season; and whenever I had occasion for more corn, I had more land adjoining as fit as that.

Besides this, I had my country seat, and I had now a tolerable plantation there also; for, first, I had my little bower, as I called it, which I kept in repair¹²⁾; that is to say, I kept the hedge which circled it in, constantly fitted up to its usual height, the ladder standing always in the inside; I kept the trees, which at first were no more than my stakes, but were now grown very firm and tall; I kept them always so cut, that they might spread and grow thick and wild, and make the more agreeable shade, which they did effectually to my mind. In the middle of this I had my tent always standing,

¹¹⁾ *hārvest* = Erntezeit, dann das Geerntete, der Ertrag. —

¹²⁾ *to keep in repair* = in der Reparatur, d. h. in gutem baulichen Zustande erhalten.

being a piece of a sail spread over poles, set up for that purpose, and which never wanted any repair or renewing; and under this I had made me a squab or couch¹³⁾, with the skins of the creatures I had killed, and with other soft things, and a blanket laid on them, such as belonged to our sea-bedding¹⁴⁾, which I had saved, and a great watch-coat to cover me; and here, whenever I had occasion to be absent from my chief seat, I took up my country habitation.

Adjoining to this I had my enclosures for my cattle, that is to say, my goats; and as I had taken an inconceivable deal of pains to fence and enclose this ground, so I was so uneasy to see it kept entire, lest the goats should break through, that I never left off, till, with infinite labour, I had stuck the outside of the hedge so full of small stakes, and so near to one another, that it was rather a pale than a hedge, and there was scarce room to put a hand through between them; which afterwards, when those stakes grew, as they all did in the next rainy season, made the enclosure strong like a wall, indeed, stronger than any wall.

This will testify for me that I was not idle, and that I spared no pains to bring to pass whatever appeared necessary for my comfortable support; for I considered the keeping up a breed of tame creatures thus at my hand would be a living magazine of flesh, milk, butter, and cheese for me as long as I lived in the place, if it were to be forty years; and that keeping them in my reach depended entirely upon my perfecting my enclosures to such a degree, that I might be sure of keeping them together; which, by this method, indeed, I so effectually secured, that when these little stakes began to grow, I had planted them so very thick, I was forced to pull some of them up again.

In this place also I had my grapes growing, which I principally depended on for my winter store of raisins, and which I never failed to preserve very carefully, as the best and most agreeable dainty of my whole diet¹⁵⁾; and indeed they were not agreeable only, but physical¹⁶⁾, wholesome, nourishing, and refreshing to the last degree.

¹³⁾ *squab* ist ein weiches Kissen, ein Polster; *couch* = Lager.
¹⁴⁾ *sea-bedding* = Schiffsbetten. — ¹⁵⁾ *diet*, Nahrung, Kost, Diät, kommt vom gr. *δίαιτα* = Art zu leben; *diet*, Reichstag, hängt dagegen mit lat. *dies* = Tag zusammen. — ¹⁶⁾ *physical* hier = natürlich.

As this was also about half-way between my other habitation and the place where I had laid up my boat, I generally stayed and lay here in my way thither; for I used frequently to visit my boat, and I kept all things about, or belonging to her, in very good order; sometimes I went out in her to divert myself, but no more hazardous voyages would I go, nor scarce ever above a stone's cast or two from the shore, I was so apprehensive of being hurried out of my knowledge again by the currents or winds, or any other accident. But now I come to a new scene of my life.

XXXII. — It happened one day, about noon, going towards my boat, I was exceedingly surprised with the print of a man's naked foot on the shore, which was very plain to be seen in the sand. I stood like one thunderstruck, or as if I had seen an apparition; I listened, I looked round me, but I could hear nothing, nor see any thing; I went up to a rising ground, to look farther; I went up the shore, and down the shore, but it was all one; I could see no other impression but that one. I went to it again to see if there were any more, and to observe if it might not be my fancy; but there was no room for that, for there was exactly the very print of a foot, toes¹⁾, heel, and every part of a foot; how it came thither I knew not, nor could in the least imagine. But after innumerable fluttering²⁾ thoughts, like a man perfectly confused and out of myself, I came home to my fortification, not feeling, as we say, the ground I went on, but terrified to the last degree, looking behind me at every two or three steps, mistaking every bush and tree, and fancying every stump at a distance to be a man; nor is it possible to describe how many various shapes my affrighted imagination represented things to me in, how many wild ideas were found every moment in my fancy, and what strange unaccountable whimsies³⁾ came into my thoughts by the way.

When I came to my castle, for so I think I called it ever after this, I fled into it like one pursued; whether I went over by the ladder, as first contrived, or went in at the hole in the rock, which I called a door, I cannot remember; no,

XXXII. — 1) *tōe* = Zehen. — 2) *fluttering*, eig. flatternd, dann = unruhig, ängstlich, verwirrt. — 3) *whimsies* = *whims* = wunderliche Einfälle.

nor could I remember the next morning, for never frightened hare fled to cover, or fox to earth⁴⁾, with more terror of mind than I to this retreat.

I slept none⁵⁾ that night; the farther I was from the occasion of my fright, the greater my apprehensions were; which is something contrary to the nature of such things, and especially to the usual practice of all creatures in fear: but I was so embarrassed with my own frightful ideas of the thing, that I formed nothing but dismal imaginations to myself, even though I was now a great way off of it. Sometimes I fancied it must be the Devil, and reason joined in with me upon this supposition; for how should any other thing in human shape come into the place? Where was the vessel that brought them? What marks were there of any other footsteps? And how was it possible a man should come there? But then to think that Satan should take human shape upon him in such a place, where there could be no manner of occasion for it, but to leave the print of his foot behind him, and that even for no purpose too, for he could not be sure I should see it; this was an amusement the other way; I considered that the Devil might have found out abundance of other ways to have terrified me than this of the single print of a foot. That as I lived quite on the other side of the island, he would never have been so simple to leave a mark in a place where it was ten thousand to one whether I should ever see it or not, and in the sand too, which the first surge⁶⁾ of the sea, upon a high wind, would have defaced entirely: all this seemed inconsistent with the thing itself, and with all the notions we usually entertain of the subtilty⁷⁾ of the Devil.

Abundance of such things as these assisted to argue me out of all apprehensions⁸⁾ of its being the Devil; and I presently concluded then, that it must be some dangerous creature, viz. that it must be some of the savages of the main land over against me, who had wandered out to sea in their canoes, and either driven by the currents or by contrary winds, had made the island, and had been on shore, but were gone away

⁴⁾ *to éarth* = zu Baue. — ⁵⁾ *none* = *not* ist veraltet und biblisch. — ⁶⁾ *surge* ist die hohe Welle. — ⁷⁾ *subtilty*, spr. súb'tíltý. Schlaueit. — ⁸⁾ *to argue*, spr. ár'-gù, *out of all apprehensions* = (durch Gründe) alle Befürchtungen zerstreuen, alle Furcht benehmen.

again to sea, being as loath⁹⁾, perhaps, to have stayed in this desolate island as I would have been to have had them¹⁰⁾.

While these reflections were rolling upon my mind, I was very thankful in my thoughts that I was so happy as not to be thereabouts at that time, or that they did not see my boat, by which they would have concluded that some inhabitants had been in the place, and perhaps have searched farther for me; then terrible thoughts racked¹¹⁾ my imagination about their having found my boat, and that there were people here; and that if so, I should certainly have them come again in great numbers, and devour me; that if it should happen so that they should not find me, yet they would find my enclosure, destroy all my corn, and carry all my flock of tame goats, and I should perish at last for mere want.

In the middle of these cogitations, apprehensions, and reflections, it came into my thoughts one day, that all this might be a mere chimera¹²⁾ of my own; and that this foot might be the print of my own foot, when I came on shore from my boat; this cheered me up a little too, and I began to persuade myself it was all a delusion; that it was nothing else but my own foot; and why might not I come that way from the boat, as well as I was going that way to the boat? Again, I considered also, that I could by no means tell, for certain, where I had trod, and where I had not; and that if, at last, this was only the print of my own foot, I had played the part of those fools who strive to make stories of spectres and apparitions, and then are frightened at them more than any body.

Now I began to take courage, and to peep abroad¹³⁾ again, for I had not stirred out of my castle for three days and nights, so that I began to starve for provision; for I had little or nothing within doors but some barley-cakes and water; then I knew that my goats wanted to be milked too, which usually was my evening diversion; and the poor creatures were in great pain and inconvenience for want of it; and, indeed, it

9) Cf. VII, 3. — 10) Welches Participium ist zu ergänzen und worauf bezieht sich *them*? — 11) *rack* ist das Reck, die Folter. —

12) *chimera*, spr. kímèr'-rā, Hirngespinnst. Die Chimäre der griechischen Mythologie war ein fabelhaftes Ungeheuer, vorn Löwe, in der Mitte Ziege, hinten Drache. Jetzt bezeichnen wir mit Chimäre ein (tolles) Phantasiegebilde. — 13) *to peep abroad* = sich draussen umsehen.

almost spoiled¹⁴⁾ some of them, and almost dried up their milk. Heartening myself, therefore, with the belief that this was nothing but the print of one of my own feet, and so I might be truly said to start at my own shadow, I began to go abroad again, and went to my country-house to milk my flock; but to see with what fear I went forward, how often I looked behind me, how I was ready, every now and then, to lay down my basket, and run for my life, it would have made any one have thought I was haunted with an evil conscience, or that I had been lately most terribly frightened, and so, indeed, I had¹⁵⁾. However, as I went down thus two or three days, and having seen nothing, I began to be a little bolder, and to think there was really nothing in it but my own imagination; but I could not persuade myself fully of this till I should go down to the shore again, and see this print of a foot, and measure it by my own, and see if there was any similitude or fitness that I might be assured it was my own foot: but when I came to the place, first, it appeared evidently to me, that when I laid up¹⁶⁾ my boat, I could not possibly be on shore any where thereabouts: secondly, when I came to measure the mark with my own foot, I found my foot not so large by a great deal. Both these things filled my head with new imaginations, and gave me the vapours¹⁷⁾ again to the highest degree; so that I shook with cold like one in an ague: and I went home again, filled with the belief that some man or men had been on shore there; or, in short, that the island was inhabited, and I might be surprised before I was aware: and what course to take for my security I knew not.

XXXIII. — O what ridiculous resolutions men take when possessed with fear! It deprives them of the use of those means which reason offers for their relief. The first thing I proposed to myself was to throw down my enclosures, and turn¹⁾ all my tame cattle wild into the woods, that the enemy might not find them, and then frequent the island in prospect of²⁾ the same or the like booty; then to the simple thing of

¹⁴⁾ *to spoil*, eig. verderben, hier = krank machen. — ¹⁵⁾ Nämlich *been*. — ¹⁶⁾ *to lay up* = abtakeln. — ¹⁷⁾ *to give the vapours*, eig. Blähungen verursachen, hier = ängstlich machen.

XXXIII. — ¹⁾ Cf. XXX, 12. — ²⁾ *in prospect of* = mit Aussicht auf.

digging up my two corn fields, that they might not find such a grain there, and still be prompted to frequent the island; then to demolish my bower and tent, that they might not see any vestiges of habitation, and be prompted to look farther, in order to find out the persons inhabiting.

These were the subjects³⁾ of the first night's cogitation, after I was come home again, while the apprehensions which had so over-run⁴⁾ my mind were fresh upon me, and my head was full of vapours, as above. Thus fear of danger is ten thousand times more terrifying than danger itself, when apparent to the eyes; and we find the burthen of anxiety⁵⁾ greater, by much, than the evil which we are anxious about; and, which was worse than all this, I had not that relief in this trouble from the resignation I used to practise, that I hoped to have. I looked, I thought, like Saul, who complained not only that the Philistines were upon him, but that God had forsaken him; for I did not now take due ways to compose my mind, by crying to God in my distress, and resting upon his providence, as I had done before, for my defence and deliverance; which, if I had done, I had at least been more cheerfully supported under this new surprise, and perhaps carried through it with more resolution.

This confusion of my thoughts kept me awake all night but in the morning I fell asleep, and having, by the amusement⁶⁾ of my mind, been, as it were, tired, and my spirits exhausted, I slept very soundly, and waked much better composed than I had ever been before. And now I began to think sedately; and, upon the utmost debate with myself, I concluded, that this island, which was so exceeding pleasant, fruitful, and no farther from the main land than as I had seen, was not so entirely abandoned as I might imagine; that although there were no stated inhabitants who lived on the spot, yet that there might sometimes come boats off from the shore, who, either with design, or perhaps never but when they were driven by cross winds, might come to this place; that I had lived here fifteen years now, and had not met with the least shadow or figure of any people yet; and that if at

³⁾ „Das bildete den Gegenstand“. — ⁴⁾ *to over-run* = bestürmen. — ⁵⁾ Spr. ángzì'-ètý und ángk'-shús. — ⁶⁾ *amusement* bedeutet hier mehr Beschäftigung als Vergnügen.

any time they should be driven here, it was probable they went away again as soon as ever they could, seeing they had never thought fit to fix there upon any occasion to this time; that the most I could suggest any danger from, was from any casual accidental landing of straggling people⁷⁾ from the main, who, as it was likely, if they were driven hither, were here against their wills⁸⁾; so they made no stay here, but went off again with all possible speed, seldom staying one night on shore, lest they should not have the help of the tides and daylight back again; and that, therefore, I had nothing to do but to consider of some safe retreat, in case I should see any savages land upon the spot.

Now I began sorely to repent that I had dug my cave so large as to bring a door through again, which door, as I said, came out beyond where my fortification joined to the rock; upon maturely considering this, therefore, I resolved to draw me a second fortification, in the same manner of a semi-circle, at a distance from my wall, just where I had planted a double row of trees about twelve years before, of which I made mention: these trees having been planted so thick before, they wanted but a few piles to be driven between them, that they should be thicker and stronger, and my wall would be soon finished. So that I had now a double wall; and my outer wall was thickened with pieces of timber, old cables, and every thing I could think of, to make it strong; having in it seven little holes, about as big as I might put my arm out at: in the inside of this, I thickened my wall to above ten feet thick, with continual bringing⁹⁾ earth out of my cave, and laying it at the foot of the wall, and walking upon it; and through the seven holes I contrived to plant the muskets, of which I took notice that I had got seven on shore out of the ship; these I say, I planted like my cannon, and fitted them into frames, that held them like a carriage, so that I could fire all the seven guns in two minutes' time: this wall I was many a weary month a finishing¹⁰⁾, and yet never thought myself safe till it was done.

When this was done, I stuck all the ground without my wall, for a great way every way, as full with stakes, or sticks,

⁷⁾ *straggling people* = herumstreifende Leute. — ⁸⁾ Beachte den Plural! — ⁹⁾ Satz mit dadurch dafs. — ¹⁰⁾ „es dauerte — — bis —“.

of the osierlike wood, which I found so apt to grow, as they could well stand; insomuch, that I believe I might set in near twenty thousand of them, leaving a pretty large space between them and my wall, that I might have room to see an enemy, and they might have no shelter from the young trees, if they attempted to approach my outer wall.

Thus, in two years' time, I had a thick grove; and in five or six years' time I had a wood before my dwelling, growing so monstrous thick and strong, that it was indeed perfectly impassable; and no men, of what kind soever, would ever imagine that there was any thing beyond it, much less a habitation. As for the way which I proposed to myself to go in and out, for I left no avenue¹¹⁾, it was by setting two ladders, one to a part of the rock which was low, and then broke in¹²⁾ and left room to place another ladder upon that; so when the two ladders were taken down, no man living could come down to me without mischieving himself; and if they had come down, they were still on the outside of my outer wall.

Thus I took all the measures human prudence could suggest for my own preservation; and it will be seen, at length, that they were not altogether without just reason; though I foresaw nothing at that time more than my mere fear suggested to me.

While this was doing, I was not altogether careless of my other affairs; for I had a great concern upon me for my little herd of goats; they were not only a ready supply to me upon every occasion, and began to be sufficient to me, without the expense of powder and shot, but also without the fatigue of hunting after the wild ones; and I was loath to lose the advantage of them, and to have them all to nurse up over again.

To this purpose, after long consideration, I could think of but two ways to preserve them; one was, to find another convenient place to dig a cave under ground, and to drive them into it every night; and the other was, to enclose two or three little bits of land, remote from one another, and as much concealed as I could, where I might keep about half a

¹¹⁾ *avenue*, spr. áv'-ènù, hier wörtlich = Zugang, dann bedeutet es auch Baumgang, Allee, Anfahrt. — ¹²⁾ *to break in* = zurückweichen.

dozen young goats in each place; so that if any disaster happened to the flock in general, I might be able to raise them again with little trouble and time: and this, though it would require a great deal of time and labour, I thought was the most rational design.

Accordingly, I spent some time to find out the most retired parts of the island; and I pitched upon¹³⁾ one, which was as private, indeed, as my heart could wish for: it was a little damp piece of ground, in the middle of the hollow and thick woods, where, as is observed, I almost lost myself once before, endeavouring to come back that way from the eastern part of the island. Here I found a clear piece of land, near three acres, so surrounded with woods, that it was almost an enclosure by nature; at least, it did not want near so much labour to make it so as the other pieces of ground I had worked so hard at.

I immediately went to work with this piece of ground, and in less than a month's time I had so fenced it round, that my flock, or herd¹⁴⁾, call it which you please, who were not so wild now as at first they might be supposed to be, were well enough secured in it. So, without any farther delay, I removed ten young she-goats and two he-goats to this piece; and when they were there, I continued to perfect the fence, till I had made it as secure as the other, which, however, I did at more leisure, and it took me up¹⁵⁾ more time by a great deal. All this labour I was at the expense of, purely from my apprehensions on the account of the print of a man's foot which I had seen; for, as yet, I never saw any human creature come near the island; and I had now lived two years under these uneasinesses, which, indeed, made my life much less comfortable than it was before, as may well be imagined by any who know what it is to live in the constant snare¹⁶⁾ of the fear of man. And this, I must observe, with grief too, that the discomposure of my mind had too great impressions also upon the religious part of my

¹³⁾ *to pitch upon* = verfallen auf. — ¹⁴⁾ *flock* ist eine Herde von Kleinvieh, wie Schafe, Ziegen, sodann ein Flug von Drosseln, Enten, Gänsen; *herd* dagegen ist eine Herde Großvieh, wie Ochsen, Kühe, sodann ein Rudel Hirsche. — ¹⁵⁾ *to take up* = in Anspruch nehmen. — ¹⁶⁾ *in the constant snare* = unter dem beständigen Drucke.

thoughts; for the dread and terror of falling into the hands of savages and cannibals lay so upon my spirits, that I seldom found myself in a due temper for application to my Maker, at least not with the sedate calmness and resignation of soul which I was wont to do; I rather prayed to God as under great affliction and pressure of mind, surrounded with danger, and in expectation every night of being murdered and devoured before morning; and I must testify from my experience, that a temper of peace, thankfulness, love, and affection, is much more the proper frame for prayer than that of terror and discomposure; and that under the dread of mischief impending¹⁷⁾, a man is no more fit for a comforting performance of the duty of praying to God, than he is for repentance on a sick bed; for these discomposures affect the mind, as the others do the body; and the discomposure of the mind must necessarily be as great a disability as that of the body, and much greater, praying to God being properly an act of the mind, not of the body.

XXXIV. — But to go on: after I had thus secured one part of my little living stock, I went about the whole island, searching for another private place to make such another deposit; when, wandering more to the west point of the island than I had ever done yet, and looking out to sea, I thought I saw a boat upon the sea, at a great distance. I had found a perspective-glass or two in one of the seamen's chests, which I saved out of our ship, but I had it not about me; and this was so remote, that I could not tell what to make of it, though I looked at it till my eyes were not able to hold to look any longer: whether it was a boat or not, I do not know, but as I descended from the hill I could see no more of it, so I gave it over; only I resolved to go no more out without a perspective-glass in my pocket. When I was come down the hill to the end of the island, where, indeed, I had never been before, I was presently convinced that the seeing the print of a man's foot was not such a strange thing in the island as I imagined: and, but that it was a special providence that I was cast upon the side of the island where the savages never came, I should easily have

¹⁷⁾ Stellung!

known that nothing was more frequent than for the canoes from the main, when they happened to be a little too far out at sea, to shoot over to that side of the island for harbour: likewise, as they often met and fought in their canoes, the victors having taken any prisoners would bring them over to this shore, where, according to their dreadful customs, being all cannibals, they would kill and eat them; of which hereafter.

When I was come down the hill to the shore, as I said above, being the S. W. point of the island, I was perfectly confounded and amazed; nor is it possible for me to express the horror of my mind, at seeing the shore spread with skulls, hands, feet, and other bones of human bodies; and particularly, I observed a place where there had been a fire made, and a circle dug in the earth, like a cock-pit¹⁾, where it is supposed the savage wretches had sat down to their inhuman feastings upon the bodies of their fellow creatures.

I was so astonished with the sight of these things, that I entertained no notions of any danger to myself from it for a long while: all my apprehensions were buried in the thoughts of such a pitch of inhuman, hellish brutality, and the horror of the degeneracy of human nature, which, though I had heard of often, yet I never had so near a view of before: in short, I turned away my face from the horrid spectacle; my stomach grew sick, and I was just at the point of fainting, when nature discharged the disorder²⁾ from my stomach; and having vomited³⁾ with an uncommon violence, I was a little relieved, but could not bear to stay in the place a moment; so I got me up the hill again with all the speed I could, and walked on towards my own habitation.

When I came a little out of that part of the island, I stood still awhile, as amazed, and then recovering myself, I looked up with the utmost affection of my soul, and, with a flood of tears in my eyes, gave God thanks, that had cast my first lot in a part of the world where I was distinguished from such dreadful creatures as these; and that, though I had esteemed my present condition very miserable, had yet given

XXXIV. — ¹⁾ *cock-pit* ist eigentlich der Kampfplatz bei Hahnengefechten, also eine (vertiefte) Arena. — ²⁾ *to discharge the disorder* = die Übelkeit entleeren. — ³⁾ Spr. *vóm'-mítd*.

me so many comforts in it, that I had still more to give thanks for than to complain of; and this, above all, that I had, even in this miserable condition, been comforted with the knowledge of Himself, and the hope of His blessing; which was a felicity more than sufficiently equivalent to all the misery which I had suffered, or could suffer.

In this frame of thankfulness⁴), I went home to my castle, and began to be much easier now, as to the safety of my circumstances, then ever I was before; for I observed that these wretches never came to this island in search of what they could get; perhaps not seeking, not wanting, or not expecting, any thing here; and having often, no doubt, been up in the covered, woody part of it, without finding any thing to their purpose. I knew I had been here now almost eighteen years, and never saw the least footsteps of human creature there before; and I might be here eighteen more as entirely concealed as I was now, if I did not discover myself to them, which I had no manner of occasion to do; it being my only business to keep myself entirely concealed where I was, unless I found a better sort of creatures than cannibals to make myself known to. Yet I entertained such an abhorrence of the savage wretches that I have been speaking of, and of the wretched inhuman custom of their devouring and eating one another up, that I continued pensive and sad, and kept close within my own circle, for almost two years after this; when I say my own circle, I mean by it my three plantations, viz. my castle, my country-seat, which I called my bower, and my enclosure in the woods: nor did I look after this for any other use than as an enclosure for my goats; for the aversion which nature gave me to these hellish wretches was such, that I was as fearful of seeing them as of seeing the Devil himself; nor did I so much as go to look after my boat in all this time, but began rather to think of making me another; for I could not think of ever making any more attempts to bring the other boat round the island to me, lest I should meet with some of these creatures at sea, in which if I had happened to have fallen into their hands, I knew what would have been my lot.

⁴) *frame of thankfulness* = dankbare Gemütsverfassung.

Time, however, and the satisfaction I had that I was in no danger of being discovered by these people, began to wear off⁵⁾ my uneasiness about them; and I began to live just in the same composed manner as before; only with this difference, that I used more caution, and kept my eyes more about me, than I did before, lest I should happen to be seen by any of them; and particularly, I was more cautious of firing my gun, lest any of them being on the island should happen to hear it; and it was therefore a very good providence to me that I had furnished myself with a tame breed of goats, that I needed not hunt any more about the woods; or shoot at them; and if I did catch any of them after this, it was by traps and snares, as I had done before: so that for two years after this, I believe I never fired my gun once off, though I never went out without it; and, which was more, as I had saved three pistols out of the ship, I always carried them out with me, or at least two of them, sticking them in my goat-skin belt. Also I furbished⁶⁾ up one of the great cutlasses⁷⁾ that I had out of the ship, and made me a belt to put it on also; so that I was now a most formidable fellow to look at when I went abroad, if you add to the former description of myself, the particular of two pistols, and a great broad-sword hanging at my side in a belt, but without a scabbard.

Things going on thus, as I have said, for some time, I seemed, excepting these cautions, to be reduced to my former calm sedate way of living. All these things tended to showing me, more and more, how far my condition was from being miserable, compared to some others; nay, to many other particulars of life, which it might have pleased God to have made my lot. It put me upon reflecting how little repining there would be among mankind at any condition of life, if people would rather compare their condition with those that are worse, in order to be thankful, than be always comparing them with those which are better, to assist their murmurings and complainings.

As in my present condition there were not really many things which I wanted, so, indeed, I thought that the frights I had been in about these savage wretches, and the concern

5) Cf. I, 24. — 6) *to furbish* = putzen, ist mundartlich noch in fürben vorhanden. — 7) *cutlass* = Hiebert.

I had been in for my own preservation, had taken off the edge of my invention⁸⁾ for my own conveniences; and I had dropped a good design, which I had once bent my thoughts too much upon; and that was, to try if I could not make some of my barley into malt, and then try to brew myself some beer. This was really a whimsical thought, and I reproved myself often for the simplicity of it; for I presently saw there would be the want of several things necessary to the making my beer, that it would be impossible for me to supply: as, first, casks to preserve it in, which was a thing that, as I have observed already, I could never compass⁹⁾; no, though I spent not many days, but weeks, nay, months, in attempting it, but to no purpose. In the next place, I had no hops to make it keep, no yeast to make it work¹⁰⁾, no copper or kettle to make it boil; and yet had not all these things intervened, I mean the frights and terrors I was in about the savages, I had undertaken it, and perhaps brought it to pass too; for I seldom gave any thing over without accomplishing it, when I once had it in my head enough to begin it. But my invention now ran quite another way; for, night and day, I could think of nothing but how I might destroy some of these monsters in their cruel, bloody entertainment, and, if possible, save the victim they should bring hither to destroy. It would take up a larger volume than this whole work is intended to be, to set down all the contrivances I hatched¹¹⁾, or rather brooded upon, in my thoughts, for the destroying these creatures, or at least frightening them so as to prevent their coming hither any more; but all was abortive; nothing could be possible to take effect, unless I was to be there to do it myself; and what could one man do among them, when perhaps there might be twenty or thirty of them together, with their darts, or their bows and arrows, with which they could shoot as true to a mark as I could with my gun?

⁸⁾ *the edge of my invention* = die Schärfe meiner Erfindungsgabe. — ⁹⁾ *to compass* = zu Stande bringen. — ¹⁰⁾ *to work*, arbeiten = gähren sagen wir auch vom Biere und Weine. — ¹¹⁾ *to hatch*, hecken, aushecken, und *to brood*, brüten, ausbrüten, werden in beiden Sprachen gleich gebraucht, im eigentlichen und uneigentlichen Sinne. Worin liegt bei letzterem Ausdrucke das *tertium comparationis*?

XXXV. — Sometimes I contrived to dig a hole under the place where they made their fire, and put in five or six pounds of gunpowder, which, when they kindled their fire, would consequently take fire, and blow up all that was near it; but as, in the first place, I should be very loath to waste so much powder upon them, my store being now within the quantity of one barrel, so neither could I be sure of its going off at any certain time, when it might surprise them; and, at best, that it would do little more than just blow the fire about their ears, and fright them, but not sufficient to make them forsake the place; so I laid it aside, and then proposed that I would place myself in ambush in some convenient place, with my three guns all double-loaded, and, in the middle of their bloody ceremony, let fly¹⁾ at them, when I should be sure to kill or wound perhaps two or three at every shot; and then falling in upon them with my three pistols, and my sword, I made no doubt but that if there were twenty I should kill them all. This fancy pleased my thoughts for some weeks; and I was so full of it, that I often dreamed of it, and sometimes that I was just going to let fly at them in my sleep. I went so far with it in my imagination, that I employed myself several days to find out proper places to put myself in ambuscade, as I said, to watch for them; and I went frequently to the place itself, which was now grown more familiar to me; and especially while my mind was thus filled with thoughts of revenge, and of a bloody putting twenty or thirty of them to the sword²⁾, as I may call it, the horror I had at the place, and at the signals of the barbarous wretches devouring one another, abated my malice³⁾. Well, at length, I found a place in the side of the hill, where I was satisfied I might securely wait till I saw any of their boats coming; and might then, even before they would be ready to come on shore, convey myself, unseen, into thickets of trees, in one of which there was a hollow large enough to conceal me entirely; and where I might sit and observe all their bloody doings, and take my full aim at their heads, when they were so close together as that it would be next to impossible that I should miss my shot, or

XXXV. — ¹⁾ Cf. XXIV, 8. — ²⁾ *to put to the sword* = niedermetzeln. — ³⁾ Spr. mál'-ís.

that I could fail wounding three or four of them at the first shot. In this place, then, I resolved to fix my design; and, accordingly, I prepared two muskets and my ordinary fowling-piece. The two muskets I loaded with a brace of slugs⁴⁾ each, and four or five smaller bullets, about the size of pistol-bullets; and the fowling-piece I loaded with near a handful of swan-shot⁵⁾, of the largest size: I also loaded my pistols with about four bullets each; and in this posture, well provided with ammunition for a second and third charge, I prepared myself for my expedition.

After I had thus laid the scheme of my design, and, in my imagination, put it in practice, I continually made my tour every morning up to the top of the hill, which was from my castle, as I called it, about three miles, or more, to see if I could observe any boats upon the sea, coming near the island, or standing over⁶⁾ towards it; but I began to tire of this hard duty, after I had, for two or three months, constantly kept my watch, but came always back without any discovery; there having not, in all that time, been the least appearance, not only on or near the shore, but not on the whole ocean, so far as my eyes or glasses could reach every way.

As long as I kept my daily tour to the hill to look out, so long also I kept up the vigour of my design, and my spirits seemed to be all the while in a suitable form for so outrageous⁷⁾ an execution as the killing twenty or thirty naked savages, for an offence which I had not at all entered into a discussion of in my thoughts, any farther than my passions were at first fired by the horror I conceived at the unnatural custom of the people of that country; who, it seems, had been suffered by Providence, in his⁸⁾ wise disposition of the world, to have no other guide than that of their own abominable and vitiated⁹⁾ passions; and, consequently, were left, and perhaps had been so for some ages, to act such horrid things, and receive such dreadful customs, as nothing but nature, entirely abandoned of Heaven, and actuated¹⁰⁾ by some hellish degeneracy, could have run them into. But now, as I have said, I be-

4) Cf. V, 17. — 5) *swan-shot* = Schwanenschrot, Rehposten von der Gröfse kleiner Pistolenkugeln. — 6) *to stand over* = herüberhalten, herübersegeln. — 7) *outrageous*, spr. outrà'-djús, hier = abscheulich. — 8) Beachte das Genus! — 9) *vitiated*, spr. vísh'-èàtd, schändlich. — 10) *to actuate*, spr. ák'-tshooàt, antreiben, ist veraltet.

gan to be weary of the fruitless excursion which I had made so long and so far every morning in vain, so my opinion of the action itself began to alter; and I began, with cooler and calmer thoughts, to consider what I was going to engage in; what authority or call I had to pretend to be judge and executioner upon these men as criminals, whom Heaven had thought fit, for so many ages, to suffer, unpunished, to go on, and to be, as it were, the executioners of his judgments one upon another.

In this disposition I continued for near a year after this; and so far was I from desiring an occasion for falling upon these wretches, that in all that time I never once¹¹⁾ went up the hill to see whether there were any of them in sight, or to know whether any of them had been on shore there or not, that I might not be tempted to renew any of my contrivances against them, or be provoked, by any advantage which might present itself, to fall upon them; only this I did, I went and removed my boat, which I had on the other side the island, and carried it down to the east end of the whole island, where I ran it into a little cove, which I found under some high rocks, and where I knew, by reason of the currents, the savages durst not, at least would not come, with their boats, upon any account whatsoever. With my boat I carried away every thing that I had left there belonging to her, though not necessary for the bare going thither, viz. a mast and sail which I had made for her, and a thing like an anchor, but indeed, which, could not be called either anchor or grapling¹²⁾; however, it was the best I could make of its kind; all these I removed, that there might not be the least shadow of any discovery, or any appearance of any boat, or of any human habitation, upon the island. Besides this, I kept myself, as I said, more retired than ever, and seldom went from my cell, other than upon my constant employment, viz. to milk my she-goats, and manage my little flock in the wood, which, as it was quite on the other part of the island, was quite out of danger; for certain it is, that these savage people, who sometimes haunted this island, never came with any thoughts of finding any thing here, and consequently never wandered off from the coast; and I doubt not but they might have been

¹¹⁾ Cf. XXVI, 5. — ¹²⁾ Cf. XXVIII, 12.

several times on shore after my apprehensions of them had made me cautious, as well as before. Indeed, I looked back with some horror upon the thoughts of what my condition would have been if I had chopped¹³⁾ upon them and been discovered before that, when, naked and unarmed, except with one gun, and that loaded often only with small shot, I walked every where, peeping and peering about the island to see what I could get; what a surprise should I have been in, if, when I discovered the print of a man's foot, I had, instead of that, seen fifteen or twenty savages, and found them pursuing me, and by the swiftness of their running, no possibility of my escaping them! The thoughts of this sometimes sunk my very soul within me, and distressed my mind so much, that I could not soon recover it, to think what I should have done, and how I should not only not have been able to resist them, but even should not have had presence of mind enough to do what I might have done; much less what now, after so much consideration and preparation, I might be able to do. Indeed, after serious thinking of these things, I should be very melancholy, and sometimes it would last a great while; but I resolved it, at last, all into thankfulness to that Providence which had delivered me from so many unseen dangers, and had kept me from those mischiefs which I could no way have been the agent¹⁴⁾ in delivering myself from¹⁵⁾, because I had not the least notion of any such thing depending, or the least supposition of its being possible.

XXXVI. — I believe the reader of this will not think it strange if I confess that these anxieties, these constant dangers I lived in, and the concern¹⁾ that was now upon me, put an end to all invention, and to all the contrivances that I had laid for my future accommodations and conveniences. I had the care of my safety more now upon my hands than that of my food. I cared not to drive a nail, or chop a stick of wood now, for fear the noise I might make should be heard: much less would I fire a gun, for the same reason; and, above all, I was intolerably uneasy at making any fire, lest the smoke, which is visible at a great distance in the day should

¹³⁾ *to chop upon*, plötzlich stoßen auf, ist ein vulgärer Ausdruck. — ¹⁴⁾ *agent* = Werkzeug. — ¹⁵⁾ Konstruktion!

XXXVI. — ¹⁾ *concern* hier = Sorge.

betray me. For this reason I removed that part of my business which required fire, such as burning of pots and pipes, &c. into my new apartment in the woods; where, after I had been some time, I found, to my unspeakable consolation, a mere natural cave in the earth, which went in a vast way, and where, I dare say, no savage had he been at the mouth of it, would be so hardy as to venture in: nor, indeed, would any man else, but one who, like me, wanted nothing so much as a safe retreat.

The mouth of this hollow was at the bottom of a great rock, where by mere accident (I would say, if I did not see abundant reason to ascribe all such things now to Providence) I was cutting down some thick branches of trees to make charcoal²⁾; and before I go on, I must observe the reason of my making this charcoal, which was thus; I was afraid of making a smoke about my habitation, as I said before; and yet I could not live there without baking my bread, cooking my meat, &c.; so contrived to burn some wood here, as I had seen done in England under turf, till it became chark²⁾, or dry coal; and then putting the fire out, I preserved the coal to carry home, and perform the other services which fire was wanting for at home, without danger of smoke. But this is by the by; — While I was cutting down some wood here, I perceived that behind a very thick branch of low brush-wood, or underwood, there was a kind of hollow place; I was curious to look into it, and getting with difficulty into the mouth of it, I found it was pretty large: that is to say, sufficient for me to stand upright in it, and perhaps another with me; but I must confess to you I made more haste out than I did in, when, looking farther into the place, and which was perfectly dark, I saw two broad shining eyes of some creature, whether devil or man I knew not, which twinkled like two stars; the dim light from the cave's mouth shining directly in, and making the reflection. However, after some pause, I recovered myself, and began to call myself a thousand fools, and tell myself that he that, was afraid to see the devil was not fit to live twenty years in an island all alone; and that I durst³⁾ to believe there was nothing in this cave

²⁾ *chārcōal* = Holzkohle = *charkcoal*. — ³⁾ Cf. Gesenius II, § 200, 2, Anm.!

that was more frightful than myself. Upon this, plucking up my courage⁴⁾, I took up a great firebrand, and in I rushed again, with the stick flaming in my hand; I had not gone three steps in, but I was almost as much frightened as I was before; for I heard a very loud sigh, like that of a man in some pain, and it was followed by a broken noise, as if of words half-expressed, and then a deep sigh again. I stepped back, and was indeed struck with such a surprise, that it put me into a cold sweat; and if I had had a hat on my head, I will not answer for it, that my hair might not have lifted it off. But still plucking up my spirits as well as I could, and encouraging myself a little with considering that the power and presence of God was every where, and was able to protect me; upon this I stepped forward again, and by the light of the firebrand, holding it up a little over my head, I saw lying on the ground a most monstrous, frightful, old he-goat, just making his will⁵⁾, as we say, and gasping for life; and dying, indeed, of mere old age⁶⁾. I stirred him a little to see if I could get him out, and he essayed to get up, but was not able to raise himself; and I thought with myself he might even lie there; for if he had frightened me so, he would certainly fright any of the savages, if any one of them should be so hardy as to come in there while he had any life in him.

I was now recovered from my surprise, and began to look round me, when I found the cave was but very small, that is to say, it might be about twelve feet over⁷⁾, but in no manner of shape, either round or square, no hands having ever been employed in making it but those of mere Nature. I observed also that there was a place at the farther side of it that went in farther, but was so low that it required me to creep upon my hands and knees to go into it, and whither I went I knew not: so having no candle, I gave it over for some time; but resolved to come again the next day, provided with candles and a tinder-box⁸⁾, which I had made

⁴⁾ *to pluck up one's courage* = seinen Mut zusammenraffen. —

⁵⁾ *to make one's will*, sein Testament machen, sterben, ist eine auch bei uns in diesem Sinne gebrauchte Redensart. — ⁶⁾ *of mere old age* = aus bloßem hohem Alter, aus Altersschwäche. — ⁷⁾ *over* = im Durchmesser. — ⁸⁾ *tinder-box*, Zunderbüchse, in welcher die mit Stahl und Stein erzeugten Funken von dem faulen Holze, dem Zunder, aufgefangen wurden, eine Art Feuerzeug, wie es höchstens

of the lock of one of the muskets, with some wild fire in the pan⁹⁾

Accordingly, the next day I came provided with six large candles of my own making (for I made very good candles now of goat's tallow) and going into this low place, I was obliged to creep upon all fours, as I have said, almost ten yards, which, by the way, I thought was a venture bold enough, considering that I knew not how far it might go, nor what was beyond it. When I was got through the strait, I found the roof rose higher up, I believe near twenty feet; but never was such a glorious sight seen in the island, I dare say, as it was, to look round the sides and roof of this vault or cave; the wall reflected a hundred thousand lights to me from my two candles. What it was in the rock, whether diamonds, or any other precious stones, or gold, which I rather supposed it to be, I knew not. The place I was in was a most delightful cavity or grotto of its kind, as could be expected, though perfectly dark; the floor was dry and level, and had a sort of small loose gravel¹⁰⁾ upon it, so that there was no nauseous¹¹⁾ or venomous creature to be seen, neither was there any damp or wet on the sides or roof, the only difficulty in it was the entrance; which however, as it was a place of security, and such a retreat as I wanted, I thought that was a convenience; so that I was really rejoiced at the discovery, and resolved, without any delay, to bring some of those things which I was most anxious about to this place; particularly, I resolved to bring hither my magazine of powder, and all my spare arms, viz. two fowling-pieces, for I had three in all, and three muskets, for of them I had eight in all: so I kept at my castle only four, which stood ready-mounted, like pieces of cannon, on my outmost fence; and were ready also to take¹²⁾ out upon any expedition. Upon this occasion of removing my ammunition, I happened

noch alte Jäger und Landleute führen, das aber den Vorzug hat, auch bei heftigem Winde nicht zu versagen. — ⁹⁾ Diese Art des Feuermachens ist ebenfalls den Jägern nachgeahmt. Der Hahn schlug mit dem Feuerstein gegen den stählernen Pfannendeckel und innerhalb befand sich ein sogenannter Sprühteufel (*wild fire*), der dadurch Feuer fing. — ¹⁰⁾ *gravel* = Kies. — ¹¹⁾ *nauseous*, spr. náu'-shús, ekelhaft. — ¹²⁾ Das Verbum ist natürlich passivisch zu geben.

to open the barrel of powder, which I took up out of the sea, and which had been wet; and I found that the water had penetrated about three or four inches into the powder on every side, which, caking, and growing hard, had preserved the inside like a kernel in a shell; so that I had near sixty pounds of very good powder in the centre of the cask, and this was an agreeable discovery to me at that time; so I carried all away thither, never keeping above two or three pounds of powder with me in my castle, for fear of a surprise of any kind; I also carried thither all the lead I had left for bullets.

I fancied myself now like one of the ancient giants, which were said to live in caves and holes in the rocks, where none could come at them; for I persuaded myself, while I was here, if five hundred savages were to hunt me, they could never find me out; or, if they did, they would not venture to attack me here. The old goat, who ¹³⁾ I found expiring, died in the mouth of the cave the next day after I made this discovery; and I found it much easier to dig a great hole there, and throw him in and cover him with earth, than to drag him out; so I interred him there, to prevent the offence to my nose.

I was now in my twenty-third year of residence in this island; and was so naturalized ¹⁴⁾ to the place, and the manner of living, that could I have but enjoyed the certainty that no savages would come to the place to disturb me, I could have been content to have capitulated for spending the rest of my time there, even to the last moment, till I had laid me down and died, like the old goat in the cave. I had also arrived to some little diversions and amusements, which made the time pass more pleasantly with me a great deal than it did before: as, first, I had taught my Pol, as I noted before, to speak; and he did it so familiarly, and talked so articulately and plain, that it was very pleasant to me; and he lived with me no less than six and twenty years; how long he might live afterwards I know not, though I know they have a notion in the Brasils that they live a hundred years: perhaps poor Pol may be alive there still, calling after poor Robinson Crusoe to this day, I wish no Englishman the ill luck to come there

¹³⁾ Beachte Genus und Kasus! — ¹⁴⁾ *naturalized*, eingelebt, mit dem Ton auf der ersten.

and hear him; but if he did, he would certainly believe it was the devil. My dog was a very pleasant and loving companion to me for no less than sixteen years of my time, and then died of mere old age¹⁵). As for my cats, they multiplied, as I have observed, to that degree, that I was obliged to shoot several of them at first, to keep them from devouring me and all I had; but, at length, when the two old ones I brought with me were gone, and after some time continually driving them from me, and letting them have no provision with me, they all ran wild into the woods, except two or three favourites, which I kept tame, and whose young, when they had any, I always drowned; and these were part of my family. Besides these, I always kept two or three household kids about me, whom I taught to feed out of my hand; and I had two more parrots, which talked pretty well, and would all call Robinson Crusoe, but none like my first; nor, indeed, did I take the pains with any of them that I had done with him. I had also several tame sea-fowls, whose names I know not, who¹⁶) I caught upon the shore, and cut their wings; and the little stakes which I had planted before my castle wall being now grown up to a good thick grove, these fowls all lived among these low trees, and bred there, which was very agreeable to me; so that, as I said above, I began to be very well contented with the life I led, if it might but have been secured from the dread of the savages. But it was otherwise directed; and it may not be amiss for all people who shall meet with my story, to make this just observation from it, viz. How frequently, in the course of our lives, the evil which in itself we seek most to shun¹⁷), and which, when we are fallen into it, is the most dreadful to us, is oftentimes the very means or door of our deliverance, by which alone we can be raised again from the affliction we are fallen into. I could give many examples of this in the course of my unaccountable¹⁸) life; but in nothing was it more particularly remarkable than in the circumstances of my last years of solitary residence in this island.

XXXVII. — It was now the month of December, as I said above, in my twenty-third year; and this, being the

¹⁵) Cf. Note 6. — ¹⁶) Cf. Note 13. — ¹⁷) *to shun* = scheuen, vermeiden. — ¹⁸) *unaccountable* = unerklärbar, seltsam.

southern solstice¹⁾, (for winter I cannot call it) was the particular time of my harvest, and required my being pretty much abroad in the fields: when going out pretty early in the morning, even before it was thorough daylight, I was surprised with seeing a light of some fire upon the shore, at a distance from me of about two miles, towards the end of the island where I had observed some savages had been²⁾, as before, but not on the other side; but, to my great affliction, it was on my side of the island.

I was indeed terribly surprised at the sight, and stopped short within my grove, not daring to go out, lest I might be surprised, and yet I had no more peace within, from the apprehensions I had that if these savages, in rambling over the island, should find my corn standing or cut, or any of my works and improvements, they would immediately conclude that there were people in the place, and would then never give over till they had found me out. In this extremity, I went back directly to my castle, pulled up the ladder after me, and made all things without look³⁾ as wild and natural as I could.

Then I prepared myself within, putting myself in a posture of defence: I loaded all my cannon, as I called them, that is to say, my muskets, which were mounted upon my new fortification, and all my pistols, and resolved to defend myself to the last gasp⁴⁾; not forgetting seriously to commend myself to the divine protection, and earnestly to pray to God to deliver me out of the hands of the barbarians. And in this posture I continued about two hours; but began to be mighty impatient for intelligence abroad for I had no spies to send out. After sitting awhile longer, and musing what I should do in this case, I was not able to bear sitting in ignorance any longer; so setting up my ladder to the side of the hill, where there was a flat place, as I observed before, and then pulling the ladder up after me, I set it up again, and mounted to the top of the hill; and pulling out my perspective-glass, which I had taken on purpose, I laid me down flat on my belly on the ground, and began to look for the

XXXVII. — ¹⁾ *solstice*, spr. sól'-stís, Sonnenwende, vom lat. *solstitium*. — ²⁾ Was ist zu ergänzen? — ³⁾ *without look* = ohne Ansehen, ohne Unterschied. — ⁴⁾ *gasp*, Atemzug, ist vulgär noch vorhanden in gapsen = (heftig) atmen.

place. I presently found there were no less than nine naked savages, sitting round a small fire they had made, not to warm them, for they had no need of that, the weather being extreme hot, but, as I supposed, to dress some of their barbarous diet⁵⁾ of human flesh, which they had brought with them, whether alive or dead, I could not know.

They had two canoes with them, which they had hauled up upon the shore; and as it was then tide of ebb, they seemed to me to wait for the return of the flood to go away again. It is not easy to imagine what confusion this sight put me into, especially seeing them come on my side the island, and so near me too; but when I observed their coming must be always with the current of the ebb, I began, afterwards, to be more sedate in my mind, being satisfied that I might go abroad with safety all the time of the tide of flood, if they were not on shore before: and having made this observation, I went abroad about my harvest-work with the more composure.

As I expected, so it proved; for as soon as the tide made to the westward, I saw them all take boat⁶⁾, and row (or paddle, as we call it,) all away. I should have observed, that for an hour and more before they went off, they went to dancing; and I could easily discern their postures and gestures by my glasses. I could not perceive, by my nicest observation, but that they were stark naked, and had not the least covering upon them; but whether they were men or women, I could not distinguish.

As soon as I saw them shipped and gone, I took two guns upon my shoulders, and two pistols at my girdle, and my great sword by my side, without a scabbard, and with all the speed I was able to make, I went away to the hill where I had discovered the first appearance of all; and as soon as I got thither, which was not less than two hours (for I could not go apace⁷⁾, being so loaden with arms as I was,) I perceived there had been three canoes more of savages on that place; and looking out farther, I saw they were all at sea together, making over for the main. This was a dreadful sight to me, especially when going down to the shore, I could see the marks of horror, which the dismal work they

⁵⁾ Cf. XXXI, 15. — ⁶⁾ *to take boat* = sich in die Boote begeben. — ⁷⁾ Cf. XXIV, 7.

had been about had left behind it, viz. the blood, the bones, and part of the flesh, of human bodies, eaten and devoured by those wretches with merriment and sport. I was so filled with indignation at the sight, that I now began to premeditate the destruction of the next that I saw there, let them be who or how many soever. It seemed evident to me that the visits which they thus make to this island are not very frequent, for 'it was above fifteen months before any more of them came on shore there again; that is to say, I neither saw them, or any footsteps or signals of them, in all that time; for, as to the rainy seasons, then they are sure not to come abroad, at least not so far; yet all this while I lived uncomfortably, by reason of the constant apprehensions I was in of their coming upon me by surprise; from whence I observe, that the expectation of evil is more bitter than the suffering, especially if there is no room to shake off that expectation, or those apprehensions.

During all this time I was in the murdering humour, and took up most of my hours, which should have been better employed, in contriving how to circumvent and fall upon them, the very next time I should see them; especially if they should be divided, as they were the last time, into two parties; nor did I consider at all, that if I killed one party, suppose ten or a dozen, I was still the next day, or week, or month, to kill another, and so another, even *ad infinitum*, till I should be at length no less a murderer than they were in being man-eaters, and perhaps much more so. I spent my days now in great perplexity and anxiety of mind, expecting that I should, one day or other, fall into the hands of these merciless creatures; and if I did at any time venture abroad, it was not without looking round me with the greatest care and caution imaginable⁸). And now I found, to my great comfort, how happy it was that I provided for a tame flock or herd of goats; for I durst not, upon any account, fire my gun, especially near that side of the island where they usually came, lest I should alarm the savages; and if they had fled from me now, I was sure to have them come again, with perhaps two or three hundred canoes with them, in a few days, and then I knew what to expect. However, I wore out a year

⁸) Stellung?!

and three months more before I ever saw any more of the savages, and then I found them again, as I shall soon observe. It is true, they might have been there once or twice, but either they made no stay, or at least I did not hear them, but in the month of May, as near as I could calculate, and in my four and twentieth⁹⁾ year, I had a very strange encounter with them; of which in its place.

The perturbation of my mind, during this fifteen or sixteen months' interval, was very great; I slept unquiet, dreamed always frightful dreams, and often started out of my sleep in the night: in the day great troubles overwhelmed my mind, and in the night, I dreamed often of killing the savages, and of the reasons why I might justify the doing of it. But, to wave all this for a while. — It was in the middle of May, on the sixteenth day, I think, as well as my poor wooden calendar¹⁰⁾ would reckon, for I marked all upon the post still; I say, it was the sixteenth of May that it blew a very great storm of wind all day, with a great deal of lightning and thunder, and a very foul night it was after it. I knew not what was the particular occasion of it, but as I was reading in the Bible, and taken up with very serious thoughts about my present condition, I was surprised with the noise of a gun, as I thought, fired at sea. This was, to be sure, a surprise of a quite different nature from any I had met with before; for the notions this put into my thoughts were quite of another kind. I started up in the greatest haste imaginable, and, in a trice¹¹⁾, clapped my ladder to the middle place of the rock, and pulled it after me; and mounting it the second time, got to the top of the hill the very moment that a flash of fire bid me listen for a second gun, which accordingly, in about half a minute, I heard; and, by the sound, knew that it was from that part of the sea where I was driven down the current in my boat. I immediately considered that this must be some ship in distress, and that they had some comrade, or some other ship in company, and fired these guns for signals of distress, and to obtain help. I had the presence of mind, at that minute, as to think, that though I could not help them, it may be they might help me; so I

⁹⁾ Familiärer als *twenty-fourth*. — ¹⁰⁾ Spr. kál'-léndr. — ¹¹⁾ in a trice = im Nu, augenblicklich.

brought together all the dry wood I could get at hand, and making a good handsome pile, I set it on fire upon the hill. The wood was dry, and blazed freely¹²⁾; and though the wind blew very hard, yet it burnt fairly out; that I was certain, if there was any such thing as a ship, they must needs see it, and no doubt they did; for as ever my fire blazed up I heard another gun, and after that several others, all from the same quarter. I plied¹³⁾ my fire all night long, till daybreak; and when it was broad day, and the air cleared up, I saw something at a great distance at sea, full east of the island, whether a sail or a hull I could not distinguish, no, not with my glasses, the distance was so great, and the weather still something hazy also; at least it was so out at sea.

XXXVIII. — I looked frequently at it all that day, and soon perceived that it did not move; so I presently concluded that it was a ship at anchor; and being eager, you may be sure, to be satisfied, I took my gun in my hand, and ran towards the south side of the island, to the rocks where I had formerly been carried away by the current; and getting up there, the weather by this time being perfectly clear, I could plainly see, to my great sorrow, the wreck of a ship, cast away in the night upon those concealed rocks which I found when I was out in my boat; and which rocks, as they checked the violence of the stream, and made a kind of counter-stream, or eddy, were the occasion of my recovering from the most desperate, hopeless condition that ever I had been in, in all my life. . Thus, what is one man's safety is another man's destruction; for it seems these men, whoever they were, being out of their knowledge, and the rocks being wholly under water, had been driven upon them in the night, the wind blowing hard at E. and E. N. E. Had they seen the island, as I must necessarily suppose they did not, they must, as I thought, have endeavoured to have saved themselves on shore by the help of their boat; but their firing of guns for help, especially when they saw, as I imagined, my fire, filled me with many thoughts; first, I imagined that upon seeing my light, they might have put themselves into their boat,

¹²⁾ *to blaze freely* = hell auflodern. — ¹³⁾ *to ply* hier = unterhalten.

and have endeavoured to make the shore¹⁾; but that the sea going very high, they might have been cast away; other times I imagined that they might have lost their boat before, as might be the case many ways; as, particularly, by the breaking of the sea upon their ship, which many times obliges men to stave²⁾, or take in pieces, their boat, and sometimes to throw it overboard with their own hands; other times I imagined they had some other ship or ships in company, who, upon the signals of distress they had made, had taken them up and carried them off; other whiles I fancied they were all gone off to sea in their boat, and being hurried away by the current that I had been formerly in, were carried out into the great ocean, where there was nothing but misery and perishing; and that, perhaps, they might by this time think of starving, and of being in a condition to eat one another.

As all these were but conjectures at best, so, in the condition I was in, I could do no more than look on upon the misery of the poor men, and pity them; which had still this good effect on my side, that it gave me more and more cause to give thanks to God, who had so happily and comfortably provided for me in my desolate condition; and that of two ships' companies who were now cast away upon this part of the world, not one life should be spared but mine. I learned here again to observe, that it is very rare that the providence of God casts us into any condition of life so low, or any misery so great, but we may see something or other to be thankful for; and may see others in worse circumstances than our own. Such certainly was the case of these men, of whom I could not so much, as see room to suppose any of them were saved; nothing could make it rational so much as to wish or expect that they did not all perish there, except the possibility only of their being taken up by another ship in company; and this was but mere possibility indeed, for I saw not the least signal or appearance of any such thing. I cannot explain, by any possible energy of words, what a strange longing or hankering³⁾ of desires I felt in my soul upon this sight, breaking out sometimes thus: "O that there had been but one or two, nay, or but one soul, saved out of this ship,

XXXVIII. — ¹⁾ *to make the shore* = die Küste erreichen. —
²⁾ Cf. II. 42. — ³⁾ *to hánter* = gelüsten.

to have escaped to me, that I might but have had one companion, one fellow-creature to have spoken to me, and to have conversed with!" In all the time of my solitary life, I never felt so earnest, so strong a desire after the society of my fellow-creatures, or so deep a regret at the want of it.

But it was not to be; either their fate or mine, or both, forbade it; for, till the last year of my being on this island, I never knew whether any were saved out of that ship or no; and had only the affliction, some days after, to see the corpse of a drowned boy come on shore at the end of the island which was next the shipwreck. He had on no clothes but a seaman's waistcoat, a pair of open-kneed linen drawers, and a blue linen shirt; but nothing to direct me so much as to guess what nation he was of; he had nothing in his pockets but two pieces-of-eight⁴⁾ and a tobacco-pipe; the last was to me of ten times more value than she first.

It was now calm, and I had a great mind to venture out in my boat to this wreck, not doubting but I might find something on board that might be useful to me: but that did not altogether press me so much as the possibility that there might be yet some living creature on board, whose life I might not only save, but might, by saving that life, comfort my own to the last degree; and this thought clung⁵⁾ so to my heart, that I could not be quiet night or day, but I must venture out in my boat on board this wreck; and committing the rest to God's providence, I thought, the impression was so strong upon my mind that it could not be resisted, that it must come from some invisible direction, and that I should be wanting to myself if I did not go.

Under the power of this impression, I hastened back to my castle, prepared every thing for my voyage⁶⁾, took a quantity of bread, a great pot for fresh water, a compass to steer by, a bottle of rum (for I had still a great deal of that left) and a basket full of raisins: and thus, loading myself with every thing necessary, I went down to my boat, got

⁴⁾ Cf. VII, 2. — ⁵⁾ *to cling, clung, clung* = sich festklammern, ein selteneres Wort. — ⁶⁾ *voyage*, eig. „Gang auf öffentlicher Strasse“, ist die Seereise, die Reise überhaupt; *journey*, urspr. Tageszeit, Tagewerk, dann = Tagereise, ist jetzt das gewöhnliche Wort für Reise. Daneben sind noch zu merken: *travels* = Entdeckungsreise, *tour* = Rundreise, *trip* = Ausflug (kleine Lust- oder Geschäftsreise).

the water out of her, put her afloat, loaded all my cargo in her, and then went home again for more. My second cargo was a great bag full of rice, the umbrella to set up over my head for a shade, another large pot full of fresh water, and about two dozen of my small loaves, or barley-cakes, more than before, with a bottle of goat's milk and a cheese: all which, with great labour and sweat, I brought to my boat; and praying to God to direct my voyage, I put out⁷⁾; and rowing, or paddling, the canoe along the shore, came at last to the utmost point of the island on that side; viz. the N. E. And now I was to launch out⁸⁾ into the ocean, and either to venture or not to venture. I looked on the rapid currents which ran constantly on both sides of the island at a distance, and which were very terrible to me, from the remembrance of the hazard I had been in before, and my heart began to fail me; for I foresaw that if I was driven into either of those currents, I should be carried a vast way out to sea, and perhaps out of my reach, or sight of the island again; and that then, as my boat was but small, if any little gale of wind should rise, I should be inevitably lost.

These thoughts so oppressed my mind, that I began to give over my enterprise; and having hauled my boat into a little creek on the shore, I stepped out, and sat me down upon a little rising bit of ground, very pensive and anxious, between fear and desire, about my voyage; when, as I was musing, I could perceive that the tide was turned, and the flood come on; upon which my going was impracticable for so many hours. Upon this, presently it occurred to me, that I should go up to the highest piece of ground I could find, and observe, if I could, how the sets of the tide, or currents, lay when the flood came in, that I might judge whether, if I was driven one way out, I might not expect to be driven another way home, with the same rapidness of the currents. This thought was no sooner in my head than I cast my eye upon a little hill, which sufficiently overlooked the sea both ways, and from whence I had a clear view of the currents, or sets of the tide, and which way I was to guide myself in my return. Here I found, that as the current of the ebb

⁷⁾ *to put out* = in See stechen. — ⁸⁾ *to launch out* = sich hinausbegeben, NB. spr. lánsh.

set out close by the south point of the island, so the current of the flood set in close by the shore of the north side; and that I had nothing to do but to keep to the north side of the island in my return, and I should do well enough.

XXXIX. — Encouraged with this observation, I resolved, the next morning, to set out with the first of the tide, and reposing myself for the night in the canoe, under the great watch-coat I mentioned, I launched out. I made first a little out to sea, full north, till I began to feel the benefit of the current which set eastward, and which carried me at a great rate¹⁾; and yet did not so hurry me as the southern-side current had done before, so as to take from me all government of the boat; but having a strong steerage with my paddle, I went at a great rate directly for the wreck, and in less than two hours I came up to it. It was a dismal sight to look at; the ship, which, by its building, was Spanish, stuck fast jammed²⁾ in between two rocks; all the stern and quarter of her was beaten to pieces with the sea; and as her fore-castle, which stuck in the rocks, had run on with great violence, her mainmast and foremast were brought by the board³⁾, that is to say, broken short off; but her bowsprit⁴⁾ was sound, and the head and bow⁴⁾ appeared firm. When I came close to her, a dog appeared upon her, who, seeing me coming, yelped and cried; and as soon as I called him, jumped into the sea to come to me, and I took him into the boat, but found him almost dead for hunger and thirst. I gave him a cake of my bread, and he eat it like a ravenous wolf that had been starving a fortnight in the snow: I then gave the poor creature some fresh water, with which, if I would have let him, he would have burst himself. After this I went on board; but the first sight I met with was two men drowned in the cook-room, or fore-castle of the ship, with their arms fast about one another. I concluded, as is indeed probable, that when the ship struck, it being in a storm, the sea broke so high, and so continually over her,

XXXIX. — 1) *at a great rate* = mit grofser Schnelligkeit. — 2) *jammed in* = eingekeilt. — 3) *to be brought by the board* = über Bord gehen. — 4) *bōwsprit* = Bugsprit, der fast wagerecht liegende Mast am vorderen Ende des Schiffes; ebenso *bōw* = Bug = Vorderteil.

that the men were not able to bear it, and were strangled with the constant rushing in of the water, as much as if they had been under water. Besides the dog, there was nothing left in the ship that had life; nor any goods, that I could see; but what were spoiled by the water. There were some casks of liquor, whether wine or brandy I knew not, which lay lower in the hold, and which, the water being ebbed out, I could see; but they were too big to meddle with. I saw several chests, which I believed belonged to some of the seamen; and I got two of them into the boat, without examining what was in them. Had the stern of the ship been fixed, and the forepart broken off, I am persuaded I might have made a good voyage; for, by what I found in these two chests I had room to suppose the ship had a great deal of wealth on board; and, if I may guess by the course she steered, she must have been bound from Buenos Ayres⁵⁾, or the Rio de la Plata, in the south part of America, beyond the Brasils, to the Havanna⁶⁾, in the Gulf of Mexico, and so perhaps to Spain. She had, no doubt, a great treasure in her, but of no use, at that time, to any body; and what became of the rest of her people I then knew not.

I found, besides these chests, a little cask full of liquor, of about twenty gallons, which I got into my boat with much difficulty. There were several muskets in a cabin, and a great powder-horn, with about four pounds of powder in it; as for the muskets, I had no occasion for them, so I left them, but took the powder-horn. I took a fire-shovel and tongs, which I wanted extremely; as also two little brass kettles, a copper pot to make chocolate, and a grid-iron⁷⁾; and with this cargo, and the dog, I came away, the tide beginning to make home again; and the same evening, about an hour within night⁸⁾, I reached the island again, weary⁹⁾ and fatigued to the last degree. I reposed that night in the boat; and in the morning I resolved to harbour what I had got in my new cave, and not carry it home to my castle.

5) Spr. bo'-nús à'-ríz. — 6) *Havanna* oder *the Havanna*, abgekürzt aus dem spanischen *Cristoval de la Havana*, ist die Hauptstadt von Cuba und der Haupthafen Westindiens mit bedeutender Ausfuhr von Cigarren, Tabak und Rum. — 7) *grid-iron* ist ein Rost. — 8) *an hour within night* = eine Stunde vor Anbruch der Nacht. — 9) Spr. èa.

After refreshing myself, I got all my cargo on shore, and began to examine the particulars. The cask of liquor I found to be a kind of rum, but not such as we had at the Brasils, and, in a word, not at all good; but when I came to open the chests, I found several things of great use to me: for example, I found in one a fine case of bottles, of an extraordinary kind, and filled with cordial waters¹⁰⁾, fine and very good; the bottles held about three pints each, and were tipped¹¹⁾ with silver. I found two pots of very good succades¹²⁾, or sweetmeats, so fastened also on the top, that the salt water had not hurt them; and two more of the same, which the water had spoiled. I found some very good shirts, which were very welcome to me; and about a dozen and a half of white linen handkerchiefs and coloured neckcloths; the former were also very welcome, being exceeding refreshing to wipe my face in a hot day. Besides this, when I came to the till¹³⁾ in the chest, I found there three great bags of pieces-of-eight, which held about eleven hundred pieces in all; and in one of them, wrapped up in a paper, six doubloons¹⁴⁾ of gold, and some small bars or wedges¹⁵⁾ of gold; I suppose they might all weigh near a pound. The other chest I found had some clothes in it, but of little value; but, by the circumstances, it must have belonged to the gunner's mate; though there was no powder in it, but about two pounds of fine glazed powder¹⁶⁾, in three small flasks, kept, I suppose, for charging their fowling-pieces on occasion. Upon the whole, I got very little by this voyage that was of any use to me; for, as to the money, I had no manner of occasion¹⁷⁾ for it; it was to me as the dirt under my feet; and I would have given it all for three or four pair of English shoes and stockings, which were things I greatly wanted, but had not had on my

¹⁰⁾ Cf. X, 8. — ¹¹⁾ *to tip* = tippen, tüpfeln, besetzen, beschlagen. — ¹²⁾ *succàdes*, auf der zweiten betont, = Eingemachtes, Eingezuckertes. — ¹³⁾ *till* = Boden ist veraltet, jetzt sagt man *bottom*, NB. cf. *head* XVI, 6. — ¹⁴⁾ *doubloon*, auf der zweiten betont, = Dublone, eine spanische Goldmünze im Werte von 20,93 Mk. — ¹⁵⁾ *wedge* heisst der Klumpen von Metall. — ¹⁶⁾ *glazed powder* oder *glass powder* ist weiter nichts als ein (gewöhnlich mit Graphit) poliertes, glänzendes Pulver. Dies englische Fabrikat kommt auch bei uns im Handel vor, schießt aber auch nicht besser als z. B. unser rheinisches Pulver, welches auf natürliche Weise in der Trommel geglättet ist. — ¹⁷⁾ *no manner of occasion* = keinerlei Verwendung.

feet now for many years. I had indeed gotten two pair of shoes now, which I took off of the feet of the two drowned men whom I saw in the wreck, and I found two pair more in one of the chests, which were very welcome to me; but they were not like our English shoes, either for ease or service, being rather what we call pumps¹⁸⁾ than shoes. I found in this seaman's chest about fifty pieces-of-eight in rials¹⁹⁾, but no gold: I suppose this belonged to a poorer man than the other, which seemed to belong to some officer. Well, however, I lugged this money home to my cave, and laid it up, as I had done that before which I brought from our own ship, but it was a great pity, as I said, that the other part of this ship had not come to my share; for I am satisfied I might have loaded my canoe several times over with money, which if I had ever escaped to England, would have lain here safe enough till I might have come again and fetched it.

Having now brought all my things on shore, and secured them, I went back to my boat, and rowed or paddled her along the shore to her old harbour, where I laid her up, and made the best of my way to my old habitation, where I found every thing safe and quiet; so I began now to repose myself, live after my old fashion, and take care of my family affairs; and, for a while, I lived easy enough, only that I was more vigilant than I used to be, looked out oftener, and did not go abroad so much; and if at any time I did stir with any freedom, it was always to the east part of the island, where I was pretty well satisfied the savages never came, and where I could go without so many precautions, and such a load of arms and ammunition as I always carried with me if I went the other way. I lived in this conditon near two years more; but my unlucky head, that was always to let me know it was born to make my body miserable, was all these two years filled with projects and designs, how, if it were possible, I might get away from this island: for, sometimes I was for making another voyage to the wreck, though my reason told me that there was nothing left there worth the hazard of my

¹⁸⁾ *pumps* = leichte Schuhe (Socken). — ¹⁹⁾ *rials* = *rèals* = Realen, der achte Teil eines spanischen Thalers = 0,21 Mk. NB. *real* hier vom lat. *regalis*, während *real* = wirklich vom lat. *res* kommt.

voyage; sometimes for a ramble one way, sometimes another; and I believe verily, if I had had the boat that I went from Sallee in, I should have ventured to sea, bound any where, I knew not whither. I have been, in all my circumstances, a *memento* to those who are touched with the general plague of mankind²⁰⁾, whence, for aught I know²¹⁾, one half of their miseries flow; I mean that of not being satisfied with the station wherein God and nature has placed them: for, not to look back upon my primitive condition, and the excellent advice of my father, the opposition to which was, as I may call it, my *original sin*²²⁾, my subsequent mistakes of the same kind had been the means of my coming into this miserable condition; for had that Providence, which so happily had seated me at the Brasils as a planter, blessed me with confined desires, and I could have been contented to have gone on gradually, I might have been, by this time, I mean in the time of my being in this island, one of the most considerable planters in the Brasils; nay, I am persuaded, that by the improvements I had made in that little time I lived there, and the increase I should probably have made if I had stayed, I might have been worth a hundred thousand moidores²³⁾; and what business had I to leave a settled fortune, a well-stocked plantation, improving and increasing, to turn supercargo to Guinea to fetch negroes, when patience and time would have so increased our stock at home, that we could have bought them at our own door from those whose business it was to fetch them; and though it had cost us something more, yet the difference of that price was by no means worth saving at so great a hazard. But as this is ordinarily the fate of young heads, so reflection upon the folly of it is as ordinarily the exercise of more years, or of the dear-bought experience of time; and so it was with me now; and yet so deep had the mistake taken root in my temper, that I could not satisfy myself in my station, but was continually poring²⁴⁾ upon the means and possibility of my escape from this place; and that I may, with the greater pleasure to the reader, bring on the remaining part of my story, it may not be improper to give

²⁰⁾ NB. auf der zweiten betont. — ²¹⁾ *for aught I know* = soviel ich weiß. — ²²⁾ *original sin* ist die Erb- oder Ursünde. — ²³⁾ *moidore*, spr. mōi'-dōr, eine portugiesische Goldmünze im Werte von etwa 27 Mk. — ²⁴⁾ *to pore upon* = nachsinnen über.

some account of my first conceptions on the subject of this foolish scheme for my escape, and how, and upon what foundation I acted.

XL. — I am now to be supposed retired into my castle, after my late voyage to the wreck, my frigate¹⁾ laid up and secured under water, as usual, and my condition restored to what it was before; I had more wealth, indeed, than I had before, but was not at all the richer; for I had no more use for it than the Indians of Peru²⁾ had before the Spaniards came there.

It was one of the nights in the rainy season in March, the four and twentieth year of my first setting foot in this island of solitariness, I was lying in my bed, or hammock, awake; very well in health, had no pain, no distemper, no uneasiness of body, no, nor any uneasiness of mind, more than ordinary, but could by no means close my eyes, that is, so as to sleep; no, not a wink all night long, otherwise than as follows; — It is as impossible, as needless, to set down the innumerable crowd of thoughts that whirled through that great thoroughfare of the brain, the memory, in this night's time; I ran over the whole history of my life in miniature³⁾, or by abridgment, as I may call it, to my coming to this island, and also of the part of my life since I came to this island. In my reflections upon the state of my case since I came on shore on this island, I was comparing the happy posture of my affairs in the first years of my habitation here, compared to the life of anxiety, fear, and care, which I had lived, ever since I had seen the print of a foot in the sand; not that I did not believe the savages had frequented the island even all the while, and might have been several hundreds of them at times on shore there; but I had never known it, and was incapable of any apprehensions about it; my satisfaction was perfect, though my danger was the same, and I was as happy in not knowing my danger as if I had never really been exposed to it. This furnished my thoughts with many very profitable reflections, and particularly this one; How infinitely good that Providence is, which has provided, in its government of mankind, such narrow bounds to his sight and knowledge

XL. — ¹⁾ Cf. XXIX, 12. — ²⁾ Spr. però'. — ³⁾ Spr. mín'-ètshúr.

of things; and though he walks in the midst of so many thousand dangers, the sight of which, if discovered to him, would distract his mind and sink his spirits, he is kept serene and calm, by having the events of things hid from his eyes, and knowing nothing of the dangers which surround him.

After these thoughts had for some time entertained me, I came to reflect seriously upon the real danger I had been in for so many years in this very island, and how I had walked about in the greatest security, and with all possible tranquillity, even when perhaps nothing but a brow of a hill, a great tree, or the casual approach of night, had been between me and the worst kind of destruction, viz. that of falling into the hands of cannibals and savages, who would have seized on me with the same view as I did of a goat or a turtle, and have thought it no more a crime to kill and devour me, than I did of a pigeon or curlew⁴). I would unjustly slander myself, if I should say I was not sincerely thankful to my great Preserver, to whose singular protection I acknowledged, with great humility, that all these unknown deliverances were due, and without which I must inevitably have fallen into their merciless hands.

When these thoughts were over, my head was for some time taken up in considering the nature of these wretched creatures, I mean the savages, and how it came to pass in the world, that the wise Governor of all things should give up any of his creatures to such inhumanity; nay, to something so much below even brutality itself, as to devour its own kind: but as this ended in some (at that time) fruitless speculations, it occurred to me to inquire, what part of the world these wretches lived in? how far off the coast was, from whence they came? what they ventured over so far from home for? what kind of boats they had? and why I might not order myself and my business so, that I might be as able to go over thither as they were to come to me?

I never so much as troubled myself to consider what I should do with myself when I came thither; what would become of me, if I fell into the hands of the savages; or how I should escape from them, if they attempted me; no, nor so much as how it was possible for me to reach the coast, and

⁴) Cf. IV, 25.

not be attempted by some or other of them, without any possibility of delivering myself; and if I should not fall into their hands, what I should do for provision, or whither I should bend my course: none of these thoughts, I say, so much as came in my way; but my mind was wholly bent upon the notion⁵⁾ of my passing over in my boat to the main land. I looked back upon my present condition as the most miserable that could possibly be; that I was not able to throw myself into any thing, but death, that could be called worse; that if I reached the shore of the main, I might perhaps meet with relief, or I might coast along, as I did on the shore of Africa, till I came to some inhabited country, and where I might find some relief; and after all, perhaps, I might fall in with some Christian ship that might take me in; and if the worst came to the worst, I could but die, which would put an end to all these miseries at once. Pray note, all this was the fruit of a disturbed mind, an impatient temper, made as it were, desperate, by the long continuance of my troubles, and the disappointments I had met in the wreck I had been on board of, and where I had been so near the obtaining what I so earnestly longed for, viz. somebody to speak to, and to learn some knowledge from of the place where I was, and of the probable means of my deliverance. I say, I was agitated wholly by these thoughts; all my calm of mind, in my resignation to Providence, and waiting the issue of the dispositions of Heaven, seemed to be suspended; and I had, as it were, no power to turn my thoughts to any thing but to the project of a voyage to the main, which came upon me with such force, and such an impetuosity of desire, that it was not to be resisted.

When this had agitated my thoughts for two hours or more, with such violence that it set my very blood into a ferment, and my pulse beat as high as if I had been in a fever, merely with the extraordinary fervour⁶⁾ of my mind about it; nature, as if I had been fatigued and exhausted with the very thought of it, threw me into a sound sleep. One would have thought I should have dreamed of it, but I did not, nor of any thing relating to it; but I dreamed that as I was going out in the

⁵⁾ „meine Gedanken waren gänzlich auf das Vorhaben gerichtet“
 — ⁶⁾ *fervour* = erhitzter Zustand.

morning, as usual, from my castle, I saw upon the shore two canoes and eleven savages coming to land, and that they brought with them another savage, whom they were going to kill, in order to eat him; when, on a sudden, the savage that they were going to kill jumped away, and ran for his life; and I thought, in my sleep, that he came running into my little thick grove before my fortification, to hide himself; and that I, seeing him alone and not perceiving that the others sought him that way, showed myself to him, and smiling upon him, encouraged him; that he kneeled down to me, seeming to pray to me to assist him; upon which I showed him my ladder, made him go up, and carried him into my cave, and he became my servant; and that as soon as I had gotten this man, I said to myself, "Now I may certainly venture to the main land; for this fellow will serve me as a pilot, and will tell me what to do, and whither to go for provisions, and wither not to go for fear of being devoured; what places to venture into, and what to escape." I walked with this thought, and was under such inexpressible impressions of joy at the prospect of my escape in my dream, that the disappointments which I felt upon coming to myself, and finding that it was no more than a dream, were equally extravagant the other way, and threw me into a very great dejection of spirit.

Upon this, however, I made this conclusion; that my only way to go about an attempt for an escape was, if possible, to get a savage into my possession; and, if possible, it should be one of their prisoners whom they had condemned to be eaten, and should bring thither to kill. But these thoughts still were attended with this difficulty, that it was impossible to effect this without attacking a whole caravan of them, and killing them all; and this was not only a very desperate attempt, and might miscarry, but, on the other hand, I had greatly scrupled⁷⁾ the lawfulness of it to me; and my heart trembled at the thoughts of shedding so much blood, though it was for my deliverance. I need not repeat the arguments which occurred to me against this, they being the same mentioned before: but though I had other reasons to offer now, viz. that those men were enemies to my life, and would devour me if they could; that it was self-preservation, in the highest degree, to

⁷⁾ *to scruple* = in Zweifel ziehen.

deliver myself from this death of a life⁸⁾, and was acting in my own defence as much as if they were actually assaulting me, and the like; I say, though these things argued for it, yet the thoughts of shedding human blood for my deliverance were very terrible to me, and such as I could by no means reconcile myself to a great while. However, at last, after many secret disputes with myself, and after great perplexities about it, for all these arguments, one way and another, struggled in my head a long time, the eager prevailing desire of deliverance at length mastered all the rest; and I resolved, if possible, to get one of those savages into my hands, cost what it would. My next thing then was to contrive how to do it, and this indeed was very difficult to resolve on: but as I could pitch upon no probable means for it, so I resolved to put myself upon the watch, to see them when they came on shore, and leave the rest to the event; taking such measures as the opportunity should present, let be what would be⁹⁾.

XLI. — With these resolutions in my thoughts, I set myself upon the scout¹⁾ as often as possible, and indeed so often, till I was heartily tired of it; for it was above a year and a half that I waited; and for great part of that time went out to the west end, and to the southwest corner of the island, almost every day, to see for canoes, but none appeared. This was very discouraging, and began to trouble me much; though I cannot say that it did in this case, as it had done some time before, namely, wear off the edge²⁾ of my desire to the thing; but the longer it seemed to be delayed, the more eager I was for it: in a word, I was not at first so careful to shun the sight of these savages, and avoid being seen by them, as I was now eager to be upon them. Besides, I fancied myself able to manage one, nay, two or three savages, if I had them, so as to make them entirely slaves to me, to do whatever I should direct them, and to prevent their being able at any time to do me any hurt. It was a great while that I pleased myself with this affair; but nothing still

⁸⁾ „dies (der übrigen Welt) erstorbene Leben“. — ⁹⁾ „mochte geschehen, was da wollte“.

XLI. — ¹⁾ *scout* hier = Kundschaft. — ²⁾ *to wear off the edge* = die Spitze abbrechen.

presented; all my fancies and schemes came to nothing, for no savages came near me for a great while.

About a year and a half after I had entertained these notions, and by long musing had, as it were, resolved them all into nothing, for want of an occasion to put them in execution, I was surprised, one morning early, with seeing no less than five canoes all on shore together on my side the island, and the people who belonged to them all landed, and out of my sight. The number of them broke all my measures; for seeing so many, and knowing that they always came four, or six, or sometimes more, in a boat, I could not tell what to think of it, or how to take my measures, to attack twenty or thirty men single-handed; so I lay still in my castle, perplexed and discomforted: however, I put myself into all the same postures for an attack that I had formerly provided, and was just ready for action, if any thing had presented. Having waited a good while, listening to hear if they made any noise, at length, being very impatient, I set my guns at the foot of my ladder, and clambered up to the top of the hill, by my two stages, as usual; standing so, however, that my head did not appear above the hill, so that they could not perceive me by any means. Here I observed, by the help of my perspective-glass, that they were no less than thirty in number, that they had a fire kindled, and that they had had meat dressed³⁾. How they had cooked it that I knew not, or what it was; but they were all dancing, in I know not how many barbarous gestures and figures⁴⁾, their own way⁵⁾, round the fire.

While I was thus looking on them, I perceived, by my perspective, two miserable wretches dragged from the boats, where, it seems, they were laid by, and were now brought out for the slaughter. I perceived one of them immediately fell, being knocked down, I suppose, with a club or wooden sword, for that was their way, and two or three others were at work immediately, cutting him open for their cookery, while the other victim was left standing by himself, till they should be ready for him. In that very moment, this poor wretch seeing himself a little at liberty, nature inspired him

³⁾ Konstruktion! — ⁴⁾ *gestures and figures* = Stellungen und Touren. — ⁵⁾ *their own way* = auf ihre eigene Weise.

with hopes of life, and he started away from them, and ran with incredible swiftness along the sands, directly towards me, I mean towards that part of the coast where my habitation was. I was dreadfully frightened, that I must acknowledge, when I perceived him to run my way, and especially when, as I thought, I saw him pursued by the whole body; and now I expected that part of my dream was coming to pass, and that he would certainly take shelter in my grove; but I could not depend, by any means, upon my dream for the rest of it, viz. that the other savages would not pursue him thither, and find him there. However, I kept my station, and my spirits began to recover, when I found that there was not above three men that followed him; and still more was I encouraged when I found that he outstripped⁶⁾ them exceedingly in running, and gained ground of them; so that if he could but hold it for half an hour, I saw easily he would fairly get away from them all.

There was between them and my castle the creek, which I mentioned often at the first part of my story, when I landed my cargoes out of the ship; and this I saw plainly he must necessarily swim over, or the poor wretch would be taken there: but when the savage escaping⁷⁾ came thither, he made nothing of it, though the tide was then up; but plunging in, swam through in about thirty strokes, or thereabouts, landed, and ran on with exceeding strength and swiftness. When the three persons came to the creek, I found that two of them could swim, but the third could not, and that, standing on the other side, he looked at the others, but went no farther, and soon after went softly back again; which, as it happened, was very well for him in the main⁸⁾. I observed, that the two who swam were yet more than twice as long swimming over the creek as the fellow was that fled from them. It came now very warmly upon my thoughts, and indeed irresistibly, that now was my time to get me a servant, and perhaps a companion or assistant; and that I was called plainly by Providence to save this poor creature's life. I immediately got down the ladders with all possible expedition, fetched my

⁶⁾ *to outstrip*, vorankommen, Vorsprung gewinnen; das einfache *to strip* = (das Fell) abstreifen, absondern, trennen. — ⁷⁾ Stellung! — ⁸⁾ *in the main* = in der Hauptsache, im Grunde genommen.

two guns, for they were both but at the foot of the ladders, as I observed above, and getting up again, with the same haste, to the top of the hill, I crossed towards the sea, and having a very short cut⁹⁾, and all down hill, clapped myself¹⁰⁾ in the way between the pursuers and the pursued, hallooing aloud to him that fled, who, looking back, was at first, perhaps, as much frightened at me as at them; but I beckoned with my hand to him to come back; and, in the mean time, I slowly advanced towards the two that followed; then rushing at once upon the foremost, I knocked him down with the stock¹¹⁾ of my piece. I was loath to fire, because I would not have the rest hear; though, at that distance, it would not have been easily heard, and being out of sight of the smoke too, they would not have easily known what to make of it. Having knocked this fellow down, the other who pursued with him stopped, as if he had been frightened, and I advanced apace towards him; but as I came nearer, I perceived presently he had a bow and arrow, and was fitting it to shoot at me; so I was then necessitated to shoot at him first, which I did, and killed him at the first shot. The poor savage who fled, but had stopped, though he saw both his enemies fallen and killed, as he thought, yet was so frightened with the fire and noise of my piece, that he stood stock-still, and neither came forward or went backward, though he seemed rather inclined to fly still, than to come on. I hallooed again to him, and made signs to come forward, which he easily understood, and came a little way; then stopped again, and then a little farther, and stopped again; and I could then perceive that he stood trembling, as if he had been taken prisoner, and had just been to be killed, as his two enemies were. I beckoned to him again to come to me, and gave him all the signs of encouragement that I could think of; and he came nearer and nearer, kneeling down every ten or twelve steps, in token of acknowledgment for my saving his life. I smiled at him, and looked pleasantly¹²⁾, and beckoned to him to come still nearer; at length he came close to me, and then he kneeled down again, kissed the ground, and laid

⁹⁾ *a very short cut* = ein sehr kleines Stück abzuschneiden. —

¹⁰⁾ *to clap one's self* = sich werfen. — ¹¹⁾ *stock* ist der hölzerne Teil, der Kolben des Gewehres. — ¹²⁾ Spr. *éa*, aber *to plèase*.

his head upon the ground, and taking me by the foot, set my foot upon his head; this, it seems, was in token of swearing to be my slave for ever. I took him up, and made¹³⁾ much of him, and encouraged him all I could. But there was more work to do yet; for I perceived the savage whom I knocked down was not killed, but stunned with the blow, and began to come to himself; so I pointed to him, and showing him the savage, that he was not dead; upon this he spoke some words to me, and though I could not understand them, yet I thought they were pleasant to hear; for they were the first sound of a man's voice that I had heard, my own excepted, for above twenty-five years. But there was no time for such reflections now; the savage who was knocked down recovered himself so far as to sit up upon the ground, and I perceived that my savage began to be afraid; but when I saw that, I presented¹⁴⁾ my other piece at the man, as if I would shoot him; upon this my savage, for so I call him now, made a motion to me to lend him my sword, which hung naked in a belt by my side; so I did. He no sooner had it, but he runs to his enemy, and, at one blow, cut off his head as cleverly, no executioner in Germany¹⁵⁾ could have done it sooner or better; which I thought very strange for one who, I had reason to believe, never saw a sword in his life before, except their own wooden swords: however, it seems, as I learned afterwards, they make their wooden swords so sharp, so heavy, and the wood is so hard, that they will cut off heads even with them, aye¹⁶⁾, and arms, and that at one blow too. When he had done this, he comes laughing to me, in sign of triumph, and brought me the sword again, and with abundance of gestures, which I did not understand, laid it down, with the head of the savage that he had killed, just before me. But that which astonished him most, was to know how I had killed the other Indian so far off: so pointing to him, he made signs to me to let him go to him; so I bade him go, as well as I could. When he came to him, he stood like one amazed,

¹³⁾ *to make much of* = sich viel zu schaffen machen mit. —
¹⁴⁾ *to present at* = richten auf. — ¹⁵⁾ In Deutschland war und ist die Hinrichtung mit dem Schwerte oder dem Beile die übliche, während in England die Kapitalverbrecher gehängt werden. —
¹⁶⁾ *aye*, spr. ì, ist hier Adverbium = gewiss, ja; mit letzterem Worte ist es auch verwandt.

looking at him, turned him first on one side, then on the other, looked at the wound the bullet had made, which, it seems, was just in his breast, where it had made a hole, and no great quantity of blood had followed; but he had bled inwardly, for he was quite dead. He took up his bow and arrows, and came back; so I turned to go away, and beckoned to him to follow me, making signs to him that more might come after them. Upon this he signed to me that he should bury them with sand, that they might not be seen by the rest, if they followed; and so I made signs again to him to do so. He fell to work, and, in an instant, he had scraped a hole in the sand with his hands, big enough to bury the first in, and then dragged him into it, and covered him; and did so also by the other: I believe he had buried them both in a quarter of an hour. Then calling him away, I carried him, not to my castle, but quite away to my cave, on the farther part of the island: so I did not let my dream come to pass in that part, viz. that he came into my grove for shelter. Here I gave him bread and a bunch of raisins to eat, and a draught of water, which I found he was indeed in great distress for, by his running; and having refreshed him, I made signs for him to go lie down and sleep, and pointing to a place where I had laid a great parcel of rice-straw, and a blanket upon it, which I used to sleep upon myself sometimes; so the poor creature laid down, and went to sleep.

XLII. — He was a comely¹⁾ handsome fellow, perfectly well made, with straight strong limbs, not too large, tall, and well shaped; and, as I reckon, about twenty-six years of age. He had a very good countenance, not a fierce and surly aspect, but seemed to have something very manly in his face; and yet he had all the sweetness and softness of a European in his countenance too, especially when he smiled. His hair was long and black, not curled like wool; his forehead very high and large; and a great vivacity and sparkling sharpness in his eyes. The colour of his skin was not quite black, but very tawny²⁾; and yet not of an ugly, yellow, nauseous³⁾

XLII. — ¹⁾ *comely* = ansehnlich. — ²⁾ *tawny* ist eig. lohfarben, von *to taw* = gerben, dann von der Gesichtsfarbe gesagt = rotbraun. — ³⁾ Cf. XXXVI, 11.

tawny, as the Brasilians and Virginians, and other natives of America are, but of a bright kind of a dun⁴⁾ olive colour, that had in it something very agreeable, though not very easy to describe. His face was round and plump; his nose small, not flat like the Negroes; a very good mouth, thin lips, and his fine teeth well set, and white as ivory⁵⁾.

After he had slumbered, rather than slept, about half an hour, he waked again, and comes out of the cave to me, for I had been milking my goats, which I had in the enclosure just by: when he espied me, he came running to me, laying himself down again upon the ground, with all possible signs of an humble thankful disposition, making a many antic⁶⁾ gestures to show it. At last, he lays his head flat upon the ground, close to my foot, and sets my other foot upon his head, as he had done before; and after this, made all the signs to me of subjection, servitude, and submission imaginable, to let me know how he would serve me as long as he lived. I understood him in many things, and let him know I was very well pleased with him. In a little time I began to speak to him, and teach him to speak to me; and, first, I made him know his name should be FRIDAY, which was the day I saved his life: I called him so for the memory of the time. I likewise taught him to say Master; and then let him know that was to be my name: I likewise taught him to say Yes and No, and to know the meaning of them. I gave him some milk in an earthen pot, and let him see me drink it before him, and sop⁷⁾ my bread in it; and I gave him a cake of bread to do the like, which he quickly complied with, and made signs that it was very good for him. I kept there with him all that night; but as soon as it was day, I beckoned to him to come with me, and let him know I would give him some clothes; at which he seemed very glad, for he was stark naked. As we went the place where he had buried the two men, he pointed exactly to the place, and showed me the marks that he had made to find them again, making signs to me that we should dig them up again, and eat them. At this I appeared very angry, expressed my

⁴⁾ *dun* = dunkel. — ⁵⁾ Spr. i'-vory. — ⁶⁾ *antic* = altertümlich, altväterisch, sonderbar, lächerlich. — ⁷⁾ *to sop* = eintunken, einweichen; NB. Konstruktion!

abhorrence of it, made as if I would vomit at the thoughts of it, and beckoned with my hand to him to come away; which he did immediately, with great submission. I then led him up to the top of the hill, to see if his enemies were gone; and pulling out my glass, I looked, and saw plainly the place where they had been, but no appearance of them or their canoes; so that it was plain they were gone, and had left their two comrades behind them, without any search after them.

But I was not content with this discovery; but having now more courage, and consequently more curiosity, I took my man⁸⁾ Friday with me, giving him the sword in his hand, with the bow and arrows at his back, which I found he could use very dexterously, making him carry one gun for me, and I two for myself; and away we marched to the place where these creatures had been; for I had a mind now to get some fuller intelligence of them. When I came to the place, my very blood ran chill⁹⁾ in my veins, and my heart sunk within me, at the horror of the spectacle; indeed, it was a dreadful sight, at least it was so to me, though Friday made nothing of it. The place was covered with human bones, the ground dyed with their blood, great pieces of flesh left here and there, half-eaten, mangled, and scorched; and, in short, all the tokens of the triumphant feast they had been making there, after a victory over their enemies. I saw three skulls, five hands, and the bones of three or four legs and feet, and abundance of other parts of the bodies; and Friday, by his signs, made me understand that they brought over four prisoners to feast upon; that three of them were eaten up, and that he, pointing to himself, was the fourth; that there had been a great battle between them and their next king, whose subjects it seems he had been one of, and that they had taken a great number of prisoners; all which were carried to several places by those who had taken them in the fight, in order to feast upon them, as was done here by these wretches upon those they brought hither.

I caused Friday to gather all the skulls, bones, flesh, and whatever remained, and lay them together on a heap, and make a great fire upon it, and burn them all to ashes. I

⁸⁾ *man* hier = Diener. — ⁹⁾ *to run chill* = gerinnen, stocken.

found Friday had still a hankering¹⁰⁾ stomach after some of the flesh, and was still a cannibal in his nature; but I discovered so much abhorrence at the very thoughts of it, and at the least appearance of it, that he durst not discover it; for I had, by some means, let him know, that I would kill him if he offered it.

When we had done this, we came back to our castle; and there I fell to work for my man Friday; and, first of all, I gave him a pair of linen drawers, which I had out of the poor gunner's chest I mentioned, and which I found in the wreck; and which, with a little alteration, fitted him very well; then I made him a jerkin of goat's-skin, as well as my skill would allow, and I was now grown a tolerable good tailor; and I gave him a cap, which I made of a hare-skin, very convenient and fashionable enough; and thus he was clothed for the present, tolerably well, and was mighty well pleased to see himself almost as well clothed as his master. It is true, he went awkwardly in these things at first; wearing the drawers was very awkward to him, and the sleeves of the waistcoat galled¹¹⁾ his shoulders, and the inside of his arms; but a little easing them where he complained they hurt him, and using himself to them, at length he took¹²⁾ to them very well.

The next day after I came home to my hutch with him, I began to consider where I should lodge him; and that I might do well for him, and yet be perfectly easy myself, I made a little tent for him in the vacant place between my two fortifications, in the inside of the last and in the outside of the first; and as there was a door or entrance there into my cave, I made a formal framed door-case, and a door to it of boards, and set it up in the passage, a little within the entrance; and causing the door to open on the inside, I barred it up in the night, taking in my ladders too; so that Friday could no way come at me in the inside of my innermost wall, without making so much noise in getting over that it must needs waken me; for my first wall had now a complete roof over it of long poles, covering all my tent, and leaning up to the side of the hill, which was again laid cross with smaller

¹⁰⁾ Cf. XXXVIII, 3. — ¹¹⁾ *to gall* = wundreiben, scheuern. — ¹²⁾ *to take to* = sich gewöhnen an.

sticks, instead of laths, and then thatched¹³⁾ over a great thickness with the rice-straw, which was strong, like reeds¹⁴⁾; and at the hole or place which was left to go in or out by the ladder, I had placed a kind of trap-door, which, if it had been attempted on the outside, would not have opened at all, but would have fallen down, and made a great noise; and as to weapons, I took them all in to my side every night. But I needed none of all this precaution; for never¹⁵⁾ man had a more faithful, loving, sincere servant, than Friday was to me; without passions, sullenness¹⁶⁾, or designs, perfectly obliged and engaged¹⁷⁾; his very affections¹⁸⁾ were tied to me, like those of a child to a father; and I dare say, he would have sacrificed his life for the saving mine, upon any occasion whatsoever: the many testimonies he gave me of this put it out of doubt, and soon convinced me that I needed to use no precautions, as to my safety on his account.

XLIII. — After I had been two or three days returned to my castle, I thought that, in order to bring Friday off from his horrid way of feeding, and from the relish of a cannibal's stomach, I ought to let him taste other flesh; so I took him out with me one morning to the woods. I went, indeed, intending to kill a kid out of my own flock, and bring it home and dress it; but as I was going, I saw a she-goat lying down in the shade, and two young kids sitting by her. I caught hold of Friday; Hold, said I, stand still; and made signs to him not to stir; immediately I presented my piece, shot, and killed one of the kids. The poor creature, who had, at a distance, indeed, seen me kill the savage, his enemy, but did not know, or could imagine, how it was done, was sensibly surprised, trembled and shook¹⁾, and looked so amazed, that I thought he would have sunk down. He did not see

¹³⁾ Cf. XIV, 4. — ¹⁴⁾ *reeds*, Rohrhalme, ist unser Ried = sumpfiger, rohrbewachsener Ort. — ¹⁵⁾ „Nach den Wörtern *never* (niemals) und *ever* (jemals) hat das Subjekt keinen Artikel, wenn es die ganze Gattung bezeichnet“. Gesenius II, § 13. — ¹⁶⁾ *sullenness* = mürrisches Wesen, Eigensinn, Trotz. — ¹⁷⁾ *obliged and engaged* = ergeben und dienstbereit. — ¹⁸⁾ *his very affections* = seine ganze Anhänglichkeit.

XLIII. — ¹⁾ *trembled and shook* = zitterte und schüttelte sich; NB. beachte diese Verdoppelungen des Ausdrucks, wobei häufig das eine Wort romanischen, das andere germanischen Ursprungs ist.

the kid I shot at, or perceive I had killed it, but ripped up²⁾ his waistcoat, to feel if he was not wounded; and, as I found presently, thought I was resolved to kill him; for he came and kneeled down to me, and embracing my knees, said a great many things I did not understand; but I could easily see that the meaning was, to pray me not to kill him.

I soon found a way to convince him that I would do him no harm; and taking him up by the hand, laughed at him, and pointed to the kid which I had killed, beckoned to him to run and fetch it, which he did; and while he was wondering, and looking to see how the creature was killed, I loaded my gun again. By and by, I saw a great fowl, like a hawk, sit upon a tree, within shot; so, to let Friday understand a little what I would do, I called him to me again, pointed at the fowl, which was indeed a parrot, though I thought it had been a hawk; I say, pointing to the parrot, and to my gun, and to the ground under the parrot, to let him see I would make it fall, I made him understand that I would shoot and kill that bird; accordingly, I fired, and bade him look, and immediately he saw the parrot fall. He stood like one frightened again, notwithstanding all I had said to him; and I found he was the more amazed, because he did not see me put any thing into the gun, but thought that there must be some wonderful fund of death and destruction in that thing, able to kill man, beast, bird, or any thing near or far off; and the astonishment this created in him was such, as could not wear off for a long time; and, I believe, if I would have let him, he would have worshipped me and my gun. As for the gun itself, he would not so much as touch it for several days after; but he would speak to it, and talk to it, as if it had answered him, when he was by himself; which, as I afterwards learned of him, was to desire it not to kill him. Well, after his astonishment was a little over at this, I pointed to him to run and fetch the bird I had shot, which he did, but staid some time; for the parrot, not being quite dead, was fluttered away a good way off from the place where she³⁾ fell: however, he found her, took her up, and brought her to me; and as I had perceived his ignorance about the

²⁾ *to rip up*, aufreißen, hängt zusammen mit rupfen. — ³⁾ Genus?! Cf. Gesenius II, § 22, Anm.

gun before, I took this advantage to charge the gun again, and not to let him see me do it, that I might be ready for any other mark that might present; but nothing more offered at that time: so I brought home the kid, and the same evening I took the skin off, and cut it out as well as I could; and having a pot fit for that purpose, I boiled or stewed some of the flesh, and made some very good broth. After I had begun to eat some, I gave some to my man, who seemed very glad of it, and liked it very well; but that which was strangest to him, was to see me eat salt with it. He made a sign to me that the salt was not good to eat; and putting a little into his own mouth, he seemed to nauseate⁴⁾ it, and would spit⁵⁾ and sputter⁶⁾ at it, washing his mouth with fresh water after it; on the other hand, I took some meat into my mouth without salt, and I pretended to spit and sputter for want of salt, as fast as he had done at the salt; but it would not do; he would never care for salt with his meat or in his broth; at least, not for a great while, and then but a very little.

Having thus fed him with boiled meat and broth, I was resolved to feast him the next day with roasting a piece of the kid, this I did, by hanging it before the fire in a string, as I had seen many people do in England, setting two poles up, one on each side the fire, and one cross on the top, and tying the string to the cross stick, letting the meat turn continually. This Friday admired very much; but when he came to taste the flesh, he took so many ways to tell me how well he liked it, that I could not but understand him; and at last he told me, he would never eat man's flesh any more, which I was very glad to hear.

The next day, I set him to work to beating some corn out, and sifting⁷⁾ it in the manner I used to do, as I observed before; and he soon understood how to do it as well as I, especially after he had seen what the meaning of it was, and that it was to make bread of; for after that I let him see me make my bread, and bake it too; and in a little time Friday was able to do all the work for me, as well as I could do it myself.

⁴⁾ *to nauseate*, spr. nău'-shèat, sich ekeln vor. — ⁵⁾ *to spit* ist unser spützen, speien. — ⁶⁾ *to sputter* = sprudelnd auswerfen. — ⁷⁾ *to sift* = sieben, sichten; cf. *sieve* = Sieb und XXV, 17.

I began now to consider, that having two mouths to feed instead of one, I must provide more ground for my harvest, and plant a larger quantity of corn than I used to do; so I marked out a larger piece of land, and began the fence in the same manner as before, in which Friday not only worked very willingly and very hard, but did it very cheerfully; and I told him what it was for; that it was for corn to make more bread, because he was now with me, and that I might have enough for him and myself too. He appeared very sensible of that part, and let me know that he thought I had much more labour upon me on his account, than I had for myself; and that he would work the harder for me, if I would tell him what to do.

This was the pleasantest⁸⁾ year of all the life I led in this place; Friday began to talk pretty well, and understand the names of almost every thing I had occasion to call for, and of every place I had to send him to, and talked a great deal to me; so that, in short, I began now to have some use for my tongue, again, which, indeed, I had very little occasion for before, that is to say, about speech. Besides the pleasure of talking to him, I had a singular satisfaction in the fellow himself; his simple unfeigned honesty appeared to me more and more every day, and I began really to love the creature; and, on his side, I believe he loved me more than it was possible for him ever to love any thing before.

I had a mind once to try if he had any hankering inclination⁹⁾ to his own country again; and having taught him English so well that he could answer me almost any questions, I asked him whether the nation that he belonged to never conquered in battle? At which he smiled, and said, "Yes, yes, we always fight the better:" that is, he meant, always get the better in fight; and so we began the following discourse: "You always fight the better;" said I, "how came you to be taken prisoner then, Friday?"

Friday. My nation beat much for all that.

Master. How beat? If your nation beat them, how came you to be taken?

⁸⁾ NB. Komparation?! — ⁹⁾ *hánkering inclinàtion* = sehnlicher Wunsch; cf. XLII, 10.

Friday. They more many than my nation in the place where me was; they take one, two, three, and me. my nation over-beat them in the yonder place, where me no was; there my nation take one, two, great thousand.

Master. But why did not your side recover you from the hands of your enemies then?

Friday. They run one, two, three, and me, and make go in the canoe; my nation have no canoe that time.

Master. Well, Friday, and what does your nation do with the men they take? Do they carry them away and eat them, as these did?

Friday. Yes, my nation eat mans¹⁰⁾ too; eat all up.

Master. Where do they carry them?

Friday. Go to other place, where they think.

Master. Do they come hither?

Friday. Yes, yes, they come hither; come other else place.

Master. Have you been here with them?

Friday. Yes, I been here. (*Points to the N. W. side of the island, which, it seems, was their side.*)

XLIV. — By this I understood that my man Friday had formerly been among the savages who used to come on shore on the farther part of the island, on the same man-eating occasions that he was now brought for; and, some time after, when I took the courage to carry him to that side, being the same I formerly mentioned, he presently knew the place, and told me he was there once when they eat up twenty men, two women, and one child; he could not tell twenty in English, but he numbered them, by laying so many stones on a row¹⁾, and pointing to me to tell them over.

I have told this passage, because it introduces what follows; that after I had this discourse with him, I asked him how far it was from our island to the shore, and whether the canoes were not often lost. He told me there was no danger, no canoes ever lost; but that, after a little way out to sea, there was a current and wind, always one way in the morning, the other in the afternoon. This I understood to be no more than the sets of the tide, as going out or coming in;

¹⁰⁾ Freitag spricht nach Art der Kinder und ungebildeter Leute nicht immer grammatisch richtig.

XLIV. — ¹⁾ Spr. $\bar{o}$.

but I afterwards understood it was occasioned by the great draft and reflux of the mighty river Oroonoko²⁾, in the mouth or gulf of which river, as I found afterwards, our island lay; and this land which I perceived to the W. and N. W. was the great island Trinidad, on the north point of the mouth of the river. I asked Friday a thousand questions about the country, the inhabitants, the sea, the coast, and what nations were near: he told me all he knew, with the greatest openness imaginable. I asked him the names of the several nations of his sort of people, but could get no other name than Caribs; from whence I easily understood, that these were the Caribbees³⁾, which our maps place on the part of America which reaches from the mouth of the river Oroonoko to Guiana⁴⁾, and onwards to St. Martha. He told me that up a great way beyond the moon, that was, beyond the setting of the moon, which must be west from their country, there dwelt white bearded men, like me, and pointed to my great whiskers⁵⁾, which I mentioned before; and that they had killed much mans, that was his word; by all which I understood, he meant the Spaniards, whose cruelties in America had been spread over the whole countries, and were remembered by all the nations, from father to son.

I inquired if he could tell me how I might go from this island and get among those white men; he told me, Yes, yes, I might go in two canoe. I could not understand what he meant, or make him describe to me what he meant by two canoe; till, at last, with great difficulty, I found he meant it must be in a large boat, as big as two canoes. This part of Friday's discourse began to relish with me very well; and from this time I entertained some hopes that, one time or other, I might find an opportunity to make my escape from this place, and that this poor savage might be a means to help me to do it.

During the long time that Friday had now been with me, and that he began to speak to me, and understand me, I was not wanting to lay a foundation of religious knowledge in his mind; particularly I asked him one time, Who made him? The poor creature did not understand me at all, but thought I had asked him who was his father; but I took it up by another handle, and asked him who made the sea, the

²⁾ Cf. VIII, 29. — ³⁾ Cf. VIII, 29 u. XXV, 30. — ⁴⁾ Cf. III, 11. — ⁵⁾ Cf. XXXI, 8.

ground we walked on, and the hills and woods? He told me, it was one old Benamuckee, that lived beyond all; he could describe nothing of this great person, but that he was very old, much older, he said, than the sea or the land, than the moon or the stars. I asked him then, if this old person had made all things, why did not all things worship him? He looked very grave, and with a perfect look of innocence said, All things do say O to him. I asked him if the people who die in his country went away and where? He said, Yes; they all went to Benamuckee; then I asked him whether these they eat up went thither too! He said, Yes.

From these things I began to instruct him in the knowledge of the true God; I told him that the great Maker of all things lived up there, pointing up towards heaven; that he governs the world by the same power and providence by which he had made it; that he was omnipotent⁶⁾, could do every thing for us, give every thing to us, take every thing from us; and thus, by degrees, I opened his eyes. He listened with great attention, and received with pleasure the notion⁷⁾ of Jesus Christ being sent to redeem us, and of the manner of making our prayers to God, and his being able to hear us, even into heaven. He told me one day, that if our God could hear us up beyond the sun, he must needs be a greater God than their Benamuckee, who lived but a little way off, and yet could not hear till they went up to the great mountains where he dwelt to speak to him. I asked him if ever he went thither to speak to him? He said, No; they never went that were young men; none went thither but the old men, whom he called their Oowokakee; that is, as I made him explain it to me, their religious, or clergy; and that they went to say O (so he called saying prayers,) and then came back, and told them what Benamuckee said. By this I observed, that there is priestcraft⁸⁾ even among the most blinded, ignorant pagans in the world; and the policy of making a secret of religion, in order to preserve the veneration of the people to the clergy, is not only to be found in the Roman, but perhaps among all religions in the world, even among the most brutish and barbarous savages.

⁶⁾ Auf der zweiten liegt der Ton. — ⁷⁾ *notion* hier = Vorstellung. — ⁸⁾ Spr. iè.

“Yes, yes,” says I, “Friday, God is stronger than the devil, God is above the devil, and therefore we pray to God to tread him down under our feet, and enable us to resist his temptations, and quench his fiery darts.” “But,” says he again, “if God much strong, much might as the devil, why God no kill the devil, so make him no more do wicked?” I was strangely surprised at this question; and, after all, though I was now an old man, yet I was but a young doctor, and ill enough qualified for a casuist¹⁴⁾, or a solver of difficulties; and, at first, I could not tell what to say; so I pretended not to hear him, and asked him what he said; but he was too earnest for an answer, to forget his question, so that he repeated it in the very same broken words as above. By this time I had recovered myself a little, and I said, “God will at last punish him severely; he is reserved for the judgment, and is to be cast into the bottomless pit, to dwell with everlasting fire.” This did not satisfy Friday; but he returns upon me repeating my words, “*Reserve at last!* me no understand; but why not kill the devil now; not kill great ago¹⁵⁾?” — “You may as well ask me,” said I, “why God does not kill you and me, when we do wicked things here that offend him; we are preserved to repent and be pardoned.” He muses awhile at this; “Well, well,” says he, mighty affectionately, “that well; so you, I, devil, all wicked, all preserve, repent, God pardon all.” Here I was run down again by him to the last degree, and it was a testimony to me, how the mere notions of nature, though they will guide reasonable creatures to the knowledge of a God, and of a worship or homage due to the supreme being of God, as the consequence of our nature; yet nothing but divine revelation can form the knowledge of Jesus Christ, and of redemption purchased for us, of a Mediator of the new covenant¹⁶⁾, and of an Intercessor at the footstool of God’s throne; I say, nothing but a revelation from Heaven can form these in the soul, and that, therefore, the gospel of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ, I mean the Word of God, and the Spirit of God, promised for the guide and sanctifier of his people, are the absolutely

¹⁴⁾ *casuist*, spr. cáz'-ùist, Kasuist, Gewissenslöser, der in zweifelhaften Gewissensfällen Entscheidung zu geben weifs. — ¹⁵⁾ *great agō* = lange vorher, schon lange. — ¹⁶⁾ „der Vermittler des neuen Bundes“.

necessary instructors of the souls of men in the saving knowledge of God, and the means of salvation.

XLV. — I therefore diverted the present discourse between me and my man, rising up hastily, as upon some sudden occasion of going out; then sending him for something a good way off, I seriously prayed to God that he would enable me to instruct savingly¹⁾ this poor savage, assisting, by his Spirit, the heart of the poor ignorant creature to receive the light of the knowledge of God in Christ, reconciling him to himself, and would guide me to speak so to him from the word of God, as his conscience might be convinced, his eyes opened, and his soul saved. When he came again to me, I entered into a long discourse with him upon the subject of the redemption of man by the Saviour of the world, and of the doctrine^{1a)} of the gospel preached from heaven, viz. of repentance towards God, and faith in our blessed Lord Jesus. I then explained to him as well as I could, why our blessed Redeemer took not on him the nature of angels, but the seed of Abraham; and how, for that reason, the fallen angels had no share in the redemption; that he came only to the lost sheep of the house of Israel, and the like.

I had, God knows, more sincerity than knowledge in all the methods I took for this poor creature's instruction, and must acknowledge, what I believe all that act upon the same principle will find, that in laying things open to him, I really informed and instructed myself in many things that either I did not know, or had not fully considered before; but which occurred naturally to my mind upon searching into them, for the information of this poor savage; and I had more affection in my inquiry after things upon this occasion than ever I felt before; so that, whether this poor wild wretch was the better for me or no, I had great reason to be thankful that ever he came to me; my grief sat lighter upon me, my habitation grew comfortable to me beyond measure; and when I reflected, that in this solitary life which I had been confined to, I had not only been moved myself to look up to heaven, and to seek to the hand that had brought me here, but was now

XLV. — ¹⁾ *savingly* = in rettender, erlösender, seligmachender Weise. — ^{1a)} Spr. dök'-trîn.

to be made an instrument, under Providence, to save the life, and, for aught I knew, the soul of a poor savage, and bring him to the true knowledge of religion, and of the Christian doctrine, that he might know Christ Jesus, to know whom²⁾ is life eternal. I say, when I reflected upon all these things, a secret joy ran through every part of my soul, and I frequently rejoiced that ever I was brought to this place, which I had so often thought the most dreadful of all afflictions that could possibly have befallen me.

In this thankful frame I continued all the remainder of my time, and the conversation which employed the hours between Friday and I³⁾ was such, as made the three years which we lived there together perfectly and completely happy, if any such thing as complete happiness can be formed in a sublunary state⁴⁾.

After Friday and I became more intimately acquainted, and that he could understand almost all I said to him, and speak fluently⁵⁾, though in broken English, to me, I acquainted him with my own story, or at least so much of it as related to my coming into the place; how I had lived here, and how long; I let him into the mystery, for such it was to him, of gunpowder and bullet, and taught him how to shoot. I gave him a knife, which he was wonderfully delighted with, and I made him a belt, with a frog⁶⁾ hanging to it, such as in England we wear hangers⁷⁾ in: and in the frog, instead of a hanger, I gave him a hatchet, which was not only as good a weapon, in some cases, but much more useful upon other occasions.

I described to him the country of Europe,, particularly England, which I came from; how we lived, how we worshipped^{7^a)} God, how we behaved to one another; and how we traded in ships to all parts of the world. I gave him an account of the wreck which I had been on board of, and showed him, as near as I could, the place where she⁸⁾ lay; but she was all beaten in pieces before and gone. I showed him the ruins of our boat, which we lost when we escaped, and which I could not stir with my whole strength then, but was now

2) *whom* = *him who*. — 3) Kasus?! — 4) *sublunary state*, eig. = Zustand unter dem Monde, irdisches Dasein. — 5) *fluently* = fließend, geläufig. — 6) Cf. XXXI, 7. — 7) *hanger* ist der Hirschfänger. — 7^a) NB. pp?! — 8) Genus?!

fallen almost all to pieces. Upon seeing this boat, Friday stood musing a great while, and said nothing. I asked him what it was he studied upon, at last, says he, "Me see such boat like come to place at my nation." I did not understand him a good while; but, at last, when I had examined farther into it, I understood⁹⁾ by him, that a boat, such as that had been, came on shore upon the country where he lived; that is, as he explained it, was driven thither by stress of weather. I presently imagined that some European ship must have been cast away upon their coast, and the boat might get loose, and drive ashore; but was so dull¹⁰⁾, that I never once¹¹⁾ thought of men making escape from a wreck thither, much less whence they might come; so I only inquired after a description of the boat.

Friday decribed the boat to me well enough; but brought me better to understand him when he added with some warmth, "Whe save the white mans from drown." Then I presently asked him, if there were any white mans, as he called them, in the boat; "yes," he said, "the boat full white mans." I asked him how many; he told upon his fingers seventeen. I asked him then what became of them; he told me, "They live, they dwell at my nation."

This put new thoughts into me head; for I presently imagined that these might be the men belonging to the ship that was cast away in sight of my island, as I now called it; and who, after the ship was struck on the rock, and they saw her inevitably lost, had saved themselves in their boat, and were landed upon that wild shore among the savages. Upon this, I inquired of him more critically what was become of them; he assured me they lived still there; that they had been there about four years; that the savages let them alone, and gave them victuals¹²⁾ to live on. I asked him how it came to pass they did not kill them, and eat them; he said, "No, they make brother with them;" that is, as I understood him, a truce: and then he added, "They no eat mans but when make the war fight;" that is to say, they never eat any men but such as come to fight with them and are taken in battle.

⁹⁾ *to understand* hier = erfahren. — ¹⁰⁾ *dull* = einfältig. — ¹¹⁾ Cf. XXVI, 5. — ¹²⁾ Spr. vittls; cf. XLVI, 5.

It was after this some considerable time, that being upon the top of the hill, at the sea side of the island, from whence, as I have said, I had, in a clear day, discovered the main or continent of America; Friday, the weather being very serene, looks very earnestly towards the main land, and, in a kind of surprise, falls a jumping and dancing, and calls out to me, for I was at some distance from him: I asked him what was the matter; "O joy!" says he, "O glad! there see my country, there my nation!" I observed an extraordinary sense of pleasure appeared in his face, and his eyes sparkled, and his countenance discovered a strange eagerness, as if he had a mind ¹³⁾ to be in his own country again; and this observation of mine put a great many thoughts into me, which made me at first not so easy about my new man Friday as I was before; and I made no doubt but that if Friday could get back to his own nation again, he would not only forget all his religion, but all his obligation to me; and would be forward enough to give his countrymen an account of me, and come back perhaps with a hundred or two of them, and make a feast upon me, at which he might be as merry as he used to be with those of his enemies, when they were taken in war. But I wronged the poor honest creature very much, for which I was very sorry afterwards. However, as my jealousy increased, and held me some weeks, I was a little more circumspect ¹⁴⁾, and not so familiar and kind to him as before; in which I was certainly in the wrong too, the honest, grateful creature, having no thought about it, but what consisted with the best principles, both as a religious Christian, and as a grateful friend, as appeared afterwards, to my full satisfaction.

XLVI. — While my jealousy of him lasted, you may be sure I was every day pumping ¹⁾ him, to see if he would discover any of the new thoughts which I suspected were in him; but I found every thing he said was so honest and so innocent, that I could find nothing to nourish my suspicion; and, in spite of all my uneasiness, he made me at last entirely

¹³⁾ *to have a mind* = Lust haben. — ¹⁴⁾ Auf der ersten liegt der Ton.

XLVI. — ¹⁾ *to pump* hat hier ganz den Sinn von unserm aus-pumpen, ausforschen.

his own again, nor did he, in the least, perceive that I was uneasy, and therefore I could not suspect him of deceit²).

One day, walking up the same hill, but the weather being hazy at sea, so that we could not see the continent, I called to him, and said, "Friday, do not you wish yourself in your own country, your own nation?" "Yes," he said, "he be much glad to be at his own nation." "What would you do there?" said I, "would you turn wild again, eat men's flesh again, and be a savage as you were before?" He looked full of concern, and shaking his head, said, "No, no, Friday, tell them to live good; tell them to pray God; tell them to eat corn-bread, cattle-flesh, milk, no eat man again." "Why then," said I to him, "they will kill you." He looked grave at that, and then said, "No, they no kill me, they willing love learn." He meant by this, they would be willing to learn. He added, they learned much of the bearded mans that came in the boat. Then I asked him if he would go back to them. He smiled at that, and told me that he could not swim so far. I told him, I would make a canoe for him. He told me he would go, if I would go with him. "I go!" says I, "why, they will eat me if I come there." "No, no," says he, "me make they not eat you; me make they much love you." He meant, he would tell them how I had killed his enemies, and saved his life, and so he would make them love me. Then he told me, as well as he could, how kind they were to seventeen white men, or bearded men, as he called them, who came on shore there in distress.

From this time, I confess I had a mind to venture over, and see if I could possibly join with these bearded men, who, I made no doubt, were Spaniards or Portuguese; not doubting but if I could, we might find some method to escape from thence, being upon the continent, and a good company together, better than I could from an island forty miles off the shore, and alone, without help. So, after some days, I took Friday to work³) again, by way of discourse, and told him I would give him a boat to go back to his own nation; and accordingly I carried him to my frigate, which lay on the other side of the island, and having cleared it of water, for I always kept it sunk in the water, I brought it out, showed

²) Spr. dèset'. — ³) *to take to work* = angehen, daraufbringen.

it him, and we both went into it. I found he was a most dexterous fellow at managing it, would make it go almost as swift and fast⁴⁾ again as I could. So when he was in, I said to him, "Well, now, Friday, shall we go to your nation?" He looked very dull at my saying so, which, it seems, was because he thought the boat too small to go so far: I then told him I had a bigger; so the next day I went to the place where the first boat lay which I had made, but which I could not get into water. He said that was big enough; but then, as I had taken no care of it, and it had lain two or three and twenty years there, the sun had split and dried it, that it was in a manner rotten. Friday told me such a boat would do very well, and would carry "much enough vittle⁵⁾, drink, bread;" that was his way of talking.

Upon the whole, I was by this time so fixed upon my design of going over with him to the continent, that I told him we would go and make one as big as that, and he should go home in it. He answered not one word, but looked very grave and sad. I asked him what was the matter with him? He asked me again thus; "Why you angry mad with Friday? what me done?" I asked him what he meant; I told him I was not angry with him at all. "No angry! no angry!" says he, repeating the words several times, "why send Friday home away to my nation?" "Why," says I, "Friday, did not you say you wished you were there?" "Yes, yes," says he, wish be both there, no wish Friday there, no master there." In a word, he would not think of going there without me. "I go there Friday!" says I, "what shall I do there?" He turned very quick upon me at this: "You do great deal much good," says he; "you teach wild mans be good, sober, tame mans; you tell them know God, pray God, and live new life." "Alas! Friday," says I, "thou knowest not what thou sayest, I am but an ignorant man myself." "Yes, yes," says he, "you teachee⁶⁾ me good, you teachee them good." "No, no, Friday," says I, "you shall go without me; leave me here to live by myself, as I did before." He looked confused again

⁴⁾ *quick*, eig. „lebendig“, ist der allgemeine Ausdruck für schnell, rasch; *swift*, eig. „schwebend“, bezeichnet eine rasche und lebhafte Bewegung = geschwind; *fast*, eig. „fest“, ist schnell in Bezug auf Bewegung und Thätigkeit; außerdem *speedy* = eilig, *rapid* = rasend schnell, *fleet* = flüchtig. — ⁵⁾ Cf. XLV, 12. — ⁶⁾ Cf. XLIII, 10.

at that word, and running to one of the hatchets which he used to wear, he takes it up hastily, comes and gives it me. "What must I do with this?" says I to him. "You take kill Friday," says he. "What must I kill you for?" said I again. He returns very quick, "What you send Friday away for? Take kill Friday, no send Friday away." This he spoke so earnestly, that I saw tears stand in his eyes: in a word, I so plainly discovered the utmost affection in him to me, and a firm resolution in him, that I told him then, and often after, that I would never send him away from me, if he was willing to stay with me.

Upon the whole, as I found, by all his discourse, a settled affection⁷⁾ to me, and that nothing should part him from me, so I found all the foundation of his desire to go his own country was laid in his ardent affection to the people, and his hopes of my doing them good; a thing which, as I had no notion of myself, so I had not the least thought, or intention, or desire of undertaking it. But still I found a strong inclination to my attempting an escape, as above, founded on the supposition gathered from the discourse, viz. that there were seventeen bearded men there; and, therefore, without any more delay, I went to work with Friday, to find out a great tree proper to fell, and make a large periagua⁸⁾, or canoe⁹⁾ to undertake the voyage. There were trees enough in the island to have built a little fleet, not of periaguas, or canoes, bus even of good large vessels. But the main thing I looked at was, to get one so near the water that we might launch it when it was made, to avoid the mistake I committed at first. At last, Friday pitched upon a tree, for I found he knew much better than I what kind of wood was fittest for it; nor can I tell, to this day, what wood to call the tree we cut down, except that it was very like the tree we call fustic¹⁰⁾, or between that and the Nicaragua wood¹¹⁾, for it was much of the same colour and smell. Friday was for burning the hollow or cavity of this tree out, to make it for a boat, but I showed him how rather to cut it out with tools; which, after I had showed him how to use, he did very handily; and in

⁷⁾ *settled affection* = ausgemachte Zuneigung. — ⁸⁾ Cf. XXV, 3. — ⁹⁾ Cf. XXV, 3. — ¹⁰⁾ *fústic* ist der Färbermaulbeerbaum (*Morus tinctoria*). — ¹¹⁾ *Nicaráguā wood* ist das Rotholz, Fernambukholz (*Caesalpina brasiliensis*); NB. Ton auf der dritten!

about a month's hard labour we finished it, and made it very handsome; especially when, with our axes, which I showed him how to handle, we cut and hewed the outside into the true shape of a boat. After this, however, it cost us near a fortnight's time to get her along, as it were inch by inch, upon great rollers into the water; but when she was in, she would have carried twenty men with great ease.

When she was in the water, and though she was so big, it amazed me to see with what dexterity, and how swift my man Friday would manage her, turn her, and paddle her along. So I asked him if he would, and if we might venture over in her. "Yes", he said, "he venture over in her very well, though great blow wind." However, I had a farther design that he knew nothing of, and that was to make a mast and a sail, and to fit her with an anchor and cable. As to a mast, that was easy enough to get; so I pitched upon a straight young cedar tree, which I found near the place, and which there was great plenty of in the island; and I set Friday to work to cut it down, and gave him directions how to shape and order it. But as to the sail, that was my particular care. I knew I had old sails, or rather pieces of old sails enough; but as I had had them now six and twenty years by me, and had not been very careful to preserve them, not imagining that I should ever have this kind of use for them, I did not doubt but they were all rotten, and, indeed, most of them were so. However, I found two pieces, which appeared pretty good, and with these I went to work, and with a great deal of pains, and awkward tedious stitching, you may be sure, for want of needles, I, at length, made a three-cornered ugly thing, like what we call in England a shoulder of mutton sail¹²⁾, to go with a boom at bottom, and a little short sprit at the top, such as usually our ships' long-boats sail with, and such as I best knew how to manage; because it was such a one as I had to the boat in which I made my escape from Barbary, as related in the first part of my story.

I was near two months performing this last work, viz. rigging and fitting my mast and sails; for I finished them very complete, making a small stay, and a sail, or fore-sail,

¹²⁾ Cf. IV, 15.

to it, to assist, if we should turn to windward; and, which was more than all, I fixed a rudder to the stern of her to steer with; and though I was but a bungling shipwright¹³⁾, yet, as I knew the usefulness, and even necessity of such a thing, I applied myself with so much pains to do it, that at last I brought it to pass; though considering the many dull contrivances I had for it that failed, I think it cost me almost as much labour as making the boat.

XLVII. — After all this was done too, I had my man Friday to teach as to what belonged to the navigation of my boat; for, though he knew very well how to paddle a canoe, he knew nothing what belonged to a sail and a rudder; and was the most amazed when he saw me work the boat to and again in the sea by the rudder, and how the sail giped¹⁾, and filled this way, or that way, as the course we sailed changed; I say, when he saw this, he stood like one astonished and amazed. However, with a little use, I made all these things familiar to him, and he became an expert sailor, except that as to the compass, I could make him understand very little of that. On the other hand, as there was very little cloudy weather, and seldom or never any fogs in those parts, there was the less occasion for a compass, seeing the stars were always to be seen by night, and the shore by day, except in the rainy seasons, and then nobody cared to stir abroad, either by land or sea.

I was now entered on the seven and twentieth year of my captivity in this place; though the three last years that I had this creature with me ought rather to be left out of the account, my habitation being quite of another kind than in all the rest of the time. I kept the anniversary²⁾ of my landing here with the same thankfulness to God for his mercies as at first; and if I had such cause of acknowledgment at first, I had much more so now, having such additional testimonies³⁾ of the care of Providence over me, and the great hopes I had of being effectually and speedily delivered; for

¹³⁾ *a bungling shipwright* = ein Stümper von einem Schiffbauer; NB. w ist stumm.

XLVII. — ¹⁾ *to gibe*, spr. djib. = giepen (sich auf die andere Seite des Mastes legen). — ²⁾ Auf der dritten liegt der Ton! — ³⁾ *additional testimonies* = fernere Beweise.

I had an invincible impression upon my thoughts that my deliverance was at hand, and that I should not be another year in this place: however, I went on, with my husbandry; digging, planting, fencing, as usual; I gathered and cured my grapes, and did every necessary thing as before.

The rainy season was, in the mean time, upon me, when I kept more within doors than at other times; so I had stowed our new vessel as secure as we could, bringing her up into the creek, where, as I said in the beginning, I landed my rafts from the ship; and hauling her up to the shore, at high-water mark, I made my man Friday dig a little dock, just big enough to hold her, and just deep enough to give her water enough to float in; and then, when the tide was out, we made a strong dam across the end of it, to keep the water out; and so she lay dry, as to the tide, from the sea; and to keep the rain off, we laid a great many boughs of trees, so thick, that she was as well thatched as a house; and thus we waited for the months of November and December, in which I designed to make my adventure.

When the settled season⁴⁾ began to come in, as the thought of my design returned with the fair weather, I was preparing daily for the voyage; and the first thing I did was to lay by a certain quantity of provisions, being the stores for our voyage; and intended, in a week or a fortnight's time, to open the dock, and launch out our boat. I was busy one morning upon something of this kind, when I called to Friday, and bid him go to the sea-shore, and see if he could find a turtle, or tortoise, a thing which we generally got once a week, for the sake of the eggs as well as the flesh. Friday had not been long gone, when he came running back, and flew over my outer-wall, or fence, like one that felt not the ground, or the steps he set his feet on; and before I had time to speak to him, he cries out to me, "O master! O master! O sorrow! O bad!" "What's the matter, Friday?" says I. "O yonder, there," says he, "one, two, three canoe; one, two, three!" By this way of speaking, I concluded there were six: but, on inquiry, I found it was but three. "Well, Friday," says I, "do not be frightened." So I heartened him up as well as I could; however, I saw the poor fellow was most terribly

⁴⁾ *settled season* = ruhige, von Stürmen freie Zeit des Jahres.

scared⁵⁾; for nothing ran in his head but that they were come to look for him, and would cut him in pieces, and eat him; and the poor fellow trembled so, that I scarce knew what to do with him. I comforted him as well as I could, and told him I was in as much danger as he, and that they would eat me as well as him. "But," says I, "Friday, we must resolve to fight them. Can you fight, Friday?" — "Me shoot," says he; "but there come many great number." — "No matter for that," said I, again; "our guns will fright them that we do not kill." So I asked him whether, if I resolved to defend him, he would defend me, and stand by me, and do just as I bid him. He said, "Me die, when you bid die, master." So I went and fetched him a good dram of rum and gave him; for I had been so good a husband of my rum, that I had a great deal left. When he had drank it, I made him take the two fowling-pieces, which we always carried, and load them with large swan-shot⁶⁾, as big as small pistol-bullets; then I took four muskets, and loaded them with two slugs⁷⁾ and five small bullets each; and my two pistols I loaded with a brace of bullets each; I hung my great sword, as usual, naked by my side, and gave Friday his hatchet. When I had thus prepared myself, I took my perspective-glass, and went up to the side of the hill, to see what I could discover; and I found quickly, by my glass, that there were one and twenty savages, three prisoners, and three canoes; and that their whole business seemed to be the triumphant banquet upon these three human bodies; a barbarous feast indeed, but nothing more than, as I had observed, was usual with them. I observed also, that they were landed, not where they had done when Friday made his escape; but nearer to my creek, where the shore was low, and where a thick wood came close almost down to the sea. This, with the abhorrence of the inhuman errand⁸⁾ these wretches came about, filled me with such indignation, that I came down again to Friday, and told him I was resolved to go down to them, and kill them all; and asked him if he would stand by me. He was now gotten over his fright, and his spirits being a little raised with the dram I had given him, he was very cheerful, and told me, as before, he would die when I bid die.

⁵⁾ *to scare* = erschrecken, in Furcht setzen. — ⁶⁾ Cf. XXXV, 5. — ⁷⁾ Cf. V, 17. — ⁸⁾ *errand* hier = Absicht, Vorhaben.

In this fit of fury, I took first and divided the arms which I had charged, as before, between us; I gave Friday one pistol to stick in his girdle, and three guns upon his shoulder; and I took one pistol, and the other three myself; and in this posture we marched out. I took a small bottle of rum in my pocket, and gave Friday a large bag with more powder and bullet; and, as to orders, I charged him to keep close behind me, and not to stir, or shoot, or do any thing, till I bid him; and, in the mean time, not to speak a word. In this posture, I fetched a compass⁹⁾ to my right hand of near a mile, as well to get over the creek as to get into the wood, so that I might come within shot¹⁰⁾ of them before I should be discovered, which I had seen, by my glass, it was easy to do.

While I was making this march, my former thoughts returning, I began to abate my resolution; I did not mean that I entertained any fear of their number; for, as they were naked, unarmed wretches, it is certain I was superior to them; nay, though I had been alone. But it occurred to my thoughts, what call? what occasion? much less what necessity I was in, to go and dip my hands in blood, to attack people who had neither done me or intended me any wrong? Who, as to me, were innocent, and whose barbarous customs were their own disaster; being in them, a token indeed of God's having left them, with the other nations of that part of the world, to such stupidity, and to such inhuman courses; but did not call me to take upon me to be a judge of their actions, much less an executioner of his justice; that, whenever he thought fit, he would take the cause into his own hands, and, by national vengeance, punish them, as a people, for national crimes: but that, in the mean time, it was none of my business; that, it was true, Friday might justify it, because he was a declared enemy, and in a state of war with those very particular people; and it was lawful for him to attack them; but I could not say the same with respect to me. These things were so warmly pressed upon my thoughts all the way as I went, that I resolved I would only go and place myself near them, that I might observe their barbarous feast, and that I

⁹⁾ *to fetch a compass* = einen Bogen (Umweg) machen. —

¹⁰⁾ *within shot* = auf Schussweite.

would act then as God should direct; but that, unless something offered that was more a call to me than yet I knew of, I would not meddle with them.

With this resolution I entered the wood, and, with all possible waryness¹¹⁾ and silence, Friday following close at my heels, I marched till I came to the skirt of the wood, on the side which was next to them; only that one corner of the wood lay between me and them. Here I called softly to Friday, and showing him a great tree, which was just at the corner of the wood, I bade him go to the tree, and bring me word if he could see there plainly what they were doing. He did so, and came immediately back to me, and told me they might be plainly viewed there; that they were all about their fire, eating the flesh of one of their prisoners, and that another lay bound upon the sand, a little from them, which, he said, they would kill next, and which fired all the very soul within me. He told me it was not one of their nation, but one of the bearded men, whom he had told me of, that came to their country in the boat. I was filled with horror at the very naming the white, bearded man; and, going to the tree, I saw plainly, by my glass, a white man, who lay upon the beach of the sea, with his hands and his feet tied with flags¹²⁾, or things like rushes, and that he was an European, and had clothes on.

There was another tree, and a little thicket beyond it, about fifty yards nearer to them than the place where I was, which, by going a little way about, I saw I might come at undiscovered, and that then I should be within half shot of them; so I withheld my passion, though I was indeed enraged to the highest degree; and going back about twenty paces, I got behind some bushes, which held all the way till I came to the other tree; and then I came to a little rising ground, which gave me a full view of them, at the distance of about eighty yards.

XLVIII. — I had now not a moment to lose, for nineteen of the dreadful wretches sat upon the ground, all close huddled together, and had just sent the other two butcher to the poor Christian, and bring him, perhaps, limb by limb, to their fire;

¹¹⁾ *wàryness* = *wàriness* = Behutsamkeit, hängt zusammen mit ge-wahr und be-wahren. — ¹²⁾ *flags* hier = Schilf.

and they were stooped down to untie the bands at his feet. I turned to Friday — “Now, Friday,” said I, “do as I bid thee,” Friday said he would. “Then, Friday,” says I, “do exactly as you see me do; fail in nothing.” So I set down one of the muskets and the fowling-piece upon the ground, and Friday did the like by his; and with the other musket I took my aim at the savages, bidding him to do the like; then asking him if he was ready, he said, “Yes.” “Then fire at them,” said I; and the same moment I fired also.

Friday took his aim so much better than I, that on the side that he shot, he killed two of them, and wounded three more; and on my side, I killed one, and wounded two. They were, you may be sure, in a dreadful consternation; and all of them who were not hurt jumped up upon their feet, but did not immediately know which way to run, or which way to look, for they knew not from whence their destruction came. Friday kept his eyes close upon me, that, as I had bid him, he might observe what I did; so, as soon as the first shot was made, I threw down the piece, and took up the fowling-piece; and Friday did the like; he saw me cock and present¹⁾; he did the same again. “Are you ready, Friday?” said I. — “Yes,” says he. “Let fly²⁾, then,” says³⁾ I, “in the name of God!” and with that, I fired again among the amazed wretches, and so did Friday; and as our pieces were now loaden with what I called swan-shot, or small pistol-bullets, we found only two drop, but so many were wounded, that they ran about yelling and screaming like mad creatures, all bloody, and miserably wounded most of them; whereof three more of them fell quickly after, not quite dead.

“Now, Friday,” says I, laying down the discharged pieces, and taking up the musket which was yet loaden, “follow me,” says I, which he did with a great deal of courage; upon which I rushed out of the wood, and showed myself, and Friday close at my foot. As soon as I perceived they saw me, I shouted as loud as I could, and bade Friday do so too;

XLVIII. — ¹⁾ *to cock and present* = den Hahn spannen und zielen. — ²⁾ Cf. XXIV, 8. — ³⁾ In nachlässiger und vertraulicher Rede wird häufig, wie hier, das Pronomen der ersten mit dem Verbum in der dritten Person verbunden.

and running as fast as I could, which, by the way, was not very fast, being loaded with arms as I was, I made directly towards the poor victim, who was, as I said, lying upon the beach, or shore, between the place where they sat and the sea. The two butchers, who were just going to work with him, had left him at the surprise of our first fire, and fled in a terrible fright to the sea-side, and had jumped into a canoe, and three more of the rest made the same way. I turned to Friday, and bade him step forwards, and fire at them; he understood me immediately, and running about forty yards, to be near them, he shot at them, and I thought he had killed them all, for I saw them all fall of a heap into the boat; though I saw two of them up again quickly; however, he killed two of them, and wounded the third so, that he lay down in the bottom of the boat as if he had been dead.

While my man Friday fired at them, I pulled out my knife and cut the flags that bound the poor victim; and losing his hands and feet, I lifted him up, and asked him in the Portuguese tongue, what he was. He answered in Latin, Christianus; but was so weak and faint that he could scarce stand or speak. I took my bottle out of my pocket, and gave it him, making signs that he should drink, which he did; and I gave him a piece of bread, which he eat. Then I asked him what countryman he was; and he said, Espagnole; and being a little recovered, let me know, by all the signs he could possibly make, how much he was in my debt for his deliverance. "Seignior⁴)," said I, with as much Spanish as I could make up, "we will talk afterwards, but we must fight now; if you have any strength left, take this pistol and sword, and lay⁵) about you." He took them very thankfully, and no sooner had he the arms in his hands, but, as if they had put new vigour into him, he flew upon his murderers like a fury, and had cut two of them in pieces in an instant; for the truth is, as the whole was a surprise to them, so the poor creatures were so much frightened with the noise of our pieces, that they fell down for mere amazement and fear; and had no more power to attempt their own escape, than their flesh had to resist our shot; and that was the case of those five that Friday shot at in the boat; for as three of

⁴) Spr. sén'-yor. — ⁵) *to lay about* = um sich schlagen.

them fell with the hurt they received, so the other two fell with the fright.

I kept my piece in my hand still without firing, being willing to keep my charge ready, because I had given the Spaniard my pistol and sword: so I called to Friday, and bade him run up to the tree from whence we first fired, and fetch the arms which lay there that had been discharged, which he did with great swiftness; and then giving him my musket, I sat down myself to load all the rest again, and bade them come to me when they wanted. While I was loading these pieces, there happened a fierce engagement between the Spaniard and one of the savages, who made⁶⁾ at him with one of their great wooden swords, the same weapon that was to have killed him before, if I had not prevented it. The Spaniard, who was as bold and as brave as could be imagined, though weak, had fought this Indian a good while, and had cut him two great wounds on his head; but the savage being a stout, lusty⁷⁾ fellow, closing⁸⁾ in with him, had thrown him down, being faint, and was wringing my sword out of his hand; when the Spaniard, though undermost, wisely quitting the sword, drew the pistol from his girdle, shot the savage through the body, and killed him upon the spot, before I, who was running to help him, could come near him.

Friday being now left to his liberty, pursued the flying wretches, with no weapon in his hand but his hatchet; and with that he dispatched those three, who, as I said before, were wounded at first, and fallen, and all the rest he could come up with, and the Spaniard coming to me for a gun, I gave him one of the fowling-pieces, with which he pursued two of the savages, and wounded them both; but, as he was not able to run, they both got from him into the wood, where Friday pursued them, and killed one of them, but the other was too nimble for him; and though he was wounded, yet had plunged himself into the sea, and swam, with all his might, off to those two who were left in the canoe, which three in the canoe, with one wounded, who we know not whether he died or no, were all that escaped our hands of one and twenty; the account of the rest is as follows:

⁶⁾ *to make at* = angreifen. — ⁷⁾ *lusty* = kräftig, stämmig. —

⁸⁾ *to close in* = handgemein werden.

- 3 killed at our first shot from the tree.
 - 2 killed at the next shot.
 - 2 killed by Friday in the boat.
 - 2 killed by Ditto⁹⁾ of those at first wounded.
 - 1 killed by Ditto in the wood.
 - 3 killed by the Spaniard.
 - 4 killed, being found dropped here and there, of their wounds, or killed by Friday in his chase of them.
 - 4 escaped in the boat, whereof one wounded, if not dead.
-
- 21 in all.

Those that were in the canoe worked hard to get out of gun-shot, and though Friday made two or three shot¹⁰⁾ at them, I did not find that he hit any of them. Friday would fain have had me take one of their canoes, and pursue them; and, indeed, I was very anxious about their escape, lest carrying the news home to their people, they should come back perhaps with two or three hundred of their canoes, and devour us by mere multitude; so I consented to pursue them by sea, and running to one of their canoes I jumped in, and bade Friday follow me; but when I was in the canoe, I was surprised to find another poor creature lie there alive, bound hand and foot¹¹⁾, as the Spaniard was, for the slaughter, and almost dead with fear, not knowing what the matter was; for he had not been able to look up over the side of the boat, he was tied so hard neck and heels, and had been tied so long, that he had really but little life in him.

I immediately cut the twisted flags or rushes, which they had bound him with, and would have helped him up; but he could not stand or speak, but groaned most piteously, believing, it seems, still, that he was only unbound in order to be killed. When Friday came to him, I bade him speak to him, and tell him of his deliverance; and, pulling out my bottle, made him give the poor wretch a dram; which, with the news of his being delivered, revived him, and he sat up in the boat. But when Friday came to hear him speak, and

⁹⁾ *ditto*, besagter, derselbe, kommt aus dem Italienischen; daneben kommt vor das englische *the said*, gehört aber mehr der Kanzleisprache an. — ¹⁰⁾ Beide Sprachen stimmen hier im Gebrauch des Singular überein; cf. Gesenius II, § 29, wohin *shot* ebenfalls gehört. — ¹¹⁾ Beachte den Singular!

look in his face, it would have moved any one, to tears to have seen how Friday kissed him, embraced him, hugged¹²⁾ him, cried, laughed, hallooed, jumped about, danced, sung; then cried again, wrung his hands, beat his own face and head; and then sung and jumped about again, like a distracted creature. It was a good while before I could make him speak to me, or tell me what was the matter; but when he came a little to himself, he told me that it was his father.

XLIX. — It is not easy for me to express how it moved me to see what ecstasy¹⁾ and filial affection had worked in this poor savage at the sight of his father, and of his being delivered from death; nor, indeed, can I describe half the extravagancies of his affection after this; for he went into the boat, and out of the boat, a great many times: when he went in to him, he would sit down by him, open his breast, and hold his father's head close to his bosom, half an hour together, to nourish²⁾ it; then he took his arms and ancles, which were numbed³⁾ and stiff with the binding, and chafed and rubbed them with his hands; and I, perceiving what the case was, gave him some rum out of my bottle to rub them with, which did them a great deal of good.

This action put an end to our pursuit of the canoe with the other savages, who were now gotten almost out of sight; and it was happy for us that we did not, for it blew so hard within two hours after, and before they could be gotten a quarter of their way, and continued blowing so hard all night, and that from the north-west, which was against them, that I could not suppose their boat could live⁴⁾, or that they ever reached to their own coast.

But, to return to Friday; he was so busy about his father, that I could not find in my heart to take him off for some time: but after I thought he could leave him a little, I called him to me, and he came jumping and laughing, and pleased to the highest extreme; then I asked him if he had given his father any bread. He shook his head, and said, "None; ugly

¹²⁾ *to húa* = herzen, liebosen.

XLIX. — ¹⁾ *ecstásy*, Entzücken, auf der ersten betont. —

²⁾ *to nouírish*, eig. nähren, hier = liebosen. — ³⁾ *numbed*, spr. númd, = *benumbed* = benommen (der Empfindung), erstarrt. —

⁴⁾ *to live* hier = heil sein, ganz bleiben.

dog⁵⁾ eat all up self." So I gave him a cake of bread, out of a little pouch⁶⁾ I carried on purpose⁷⁾; I also gave him a dram for himself, but he would not taste it, but carried it to his father. I had in my pocket also two or three bunches of my raisins, so I gave him a handful of them for his father. He had no sooner given his father these raisins, but I saw him come out of the boat, and run away, as if he had been bewitched, he ran at such a rate; for he was the swiftest fellow of his foot that ever I saw: I say, he ran at such a rate, that he was out of sight, as it were, in an instant; and though I called, and hallooed out too, after him, it was all one, away he went; and in a quarter of an hour I saw him come back again, though not so fast as he went; and as he came nearer I found his pace was slacker⁸⁾, because he had something in his hand. When he came up to me, I found he had been quite home for an earthen jug, or pot, to bring his father some fresh water, and that he had got two more cakes or loaves of bread; the bread he gave me, but the water he carried to his father; however, as I was very thirsty too, I took a little sup⁹⁾ of it. This water revived his father more than all the rum or spirits I had given him, for he was just fainting with thirst.

When his father had drank, I called to him to know if there was any water left: he said, "Yes;" and I bade him give it to the poor Spaniard, who was in as much want of it as his father; and I sent one of the cakes, that Friday brought, to the Spaniard too, who was indeed very weak, and was reposing himself upon a green place under the shade of a tree; and whose limbs were also very stiff, and very much swelled with the rude bandage he had been tied with. When I saw that upon Friday's coming to him with the water, he sat up and drank, and took the bread, and began to eat, I went to him and gave him a handful of raisins: he looked up in my face with all the tokens of gratitude and thankfulness that could appear in any countenance; but was so weak, notwithstanding he had so exerted himself in the fight, that he could not stand up upon his feet; he tried to do it two

⁵⁾ *dog* hier = Bursche, Kerl, wie es in mancherlei, vom Menschen gesagten, Redewendungen vorkommt, z. B. *a careless dog, a jolly dog, an idle dog* etc. — ⁶⁾ Cf. IV, 26. — ⁷⁾ *on purpose* = absichtlich, aus Vorsorge. — ⁸⁾ *slack* = schlaff, langsam. — ⁹⁾ Cf. XVII, 10.

or three times, but was really not able, his ancles were so swelled and so painful to him; so I bade him sit still, and caused Friday to rub his ancles, and bathe them with rum, as he had done his father's.

I observed the poor affectionate creature, every two minutes, or perhaps less, all the while he was here, turn his head about, to see if his father was in the same place and posture as he left him sitting; and at last he found he was not to be seen; at which he started up, and, without speaking a word, flew with that swiftness to him, that one could scarce perceive his feet to touch the ground as he went: but when he came, he only found he had laid himself down to ease his limbs, so Friday came back to me presently; and then I spoke to the Spaniard to let Friday help him up, if he could, and lead him to the boat, and then he should carry him to our dwelling, where I would take care of him; but Friday, a lusty strong fellow, took the Spaniard quite up upon his back, and carried him away to the boat, and set him down softly upon the side or gunnel¹⁰⁾ of the canoe, with his feet in the inside of it; and then lifted him quite in, and set him close to his father; and presently stepping out again, launched the boat off, and paddled it along the shore faster than I could walk, though the wind blew pretty hard too; so he brought them both safe into our creek, and leaving them in the boat, runs away to fetch the other canoe. As he passed me, I spoke to him, and asked him whither he went. He told me, "Go fetch more boat:" so away he went like the wind, for sure never man or horse ran like him; and he had the other canoe in the creek almost as soon as I got to it by land; so he wafted¹¹⁾ me over, and then went to help our new guests out of the boat, which he did; but they were neither of them able to walk, so that poor Friday knew not what to do.

To remedy this, I went to work in my thought, and calling to Friday to bid them sit down on the bank while he came to me, I soon made a kind of a hand-barrow¹²⁾ to lay them on, and Friday and I carried them up both together upon it, between us.

¹⁰⁾ *gunnel* = *gunwale* = Rand. — ¹¹⁾ *to waft over* = (schnell) übersetzen. — ¹²⁾ *hand-barrow* = Tragbahre.

But when we got them to the outside of our wall, or fortification, we were at a worse loss¹³⁾ than before, for it was impossible to get them over, and I was resolved not to break it down: so I set to work again; and Friday and I, in about two hours' time, made a very handsome tent, covered with old sails, and above that with boughs of trees, being in the space without our outward fence, and between that and the grove of young wood which I had planted: and here we made them two beds of such things as I had, viz. of good rice-straw, with blankets laid upon it, to lie on, and another to cover them, on each bed.

My island was now peopled, and I thought myself very rich in subjects; and it was a merry reflection, which I frequently made, how like a king I looked. First of all, the whole country was my own mere property, so that I had an undoubted right of dominion. Secondly, my people were perfectly subjected; I was absolutely lord and law-giver; they all owed their lives to me, and were ready to lay down their lives, if there had been occasion of it, for me. It was remarkable, too, I had but three subjects, and they were of three different religions: my man Friday was a Protestant, his father was a Pagan¹⁴⁾ and a cannibal¹⁵⁾, and the Spaniard was a Papist: however, I allowed liberty of conscience throughout my dominions; but this is by the way.

As soon as I had secured my two weak rescued prisoners, and given them shelter, and a place to rest them upon, I began to think of making some provision for them; and the first thing I did, I ordered Friday to take a yearling goat¹⁶⁾, betwixt a kid and a goat, out of my particular flock, to be killed, when I cut off the hinder-quarter, and chopping it into small pieces, I set Friday to work to boiling and stewing, and made them a very good dish, I assure you¹⁷⁾, of flesh and broth, having put some barley and rice also into the

¹³⁾ Cf. XVII, 13. — ¹⁴⁾ *Pagan*, spr. pà'-gn, Heide, vom lat. *paganus* = Dorfbewohner, welche, ebenso wie die Heidebewohner (Heiden), länger dem Christentum fern blieben, als die Bewohner der Städte. NB. *hèathen*, eig. „Heidebewohner“, ist der Heide überhaupt, *pagan* bezeichnet den Götzendiener, den Ungläubigen, *gentile*, eig. „Geschlechtsverwandter“, steht im Gegensatz zum Christen. — ¹⁵⁾ Cf. XXV, 30. — ¹⁶⁾ *yèarling gōat* = jährige Ziege, Jähr-ling. — ¹⁷⁾ Beachte diese Anrede!

broth; and as I cooked it without doors, for I made no fire within my inner wall, so I carried it all into the new tent, and having set a table there for them, I sat down, and eat my own dinner, also with them, and, as well as I could, cheered them, and encouraged them; Friday being my interpreter, especially to his father, and, indeed, to the Spaniard too; for the Spaniard spoke the language of the savages pretty well.

After we had dined, or rather supped, I ordered Friday to take one of the canoes, and go and fetch our muskets and other fire-arms, which, for want of time, we had left upon the place of battle; and, the next day, I ordered him to go and bury the dead bodies of the savages, which lay open to the sun, and would presently be offensive¹⁸⁾, and I also ordered him to bury the horrid remains of their barbarous feast, which I knew were pretty much, and which I could not think of doing myself; nay, I could not bear to see them, if I went that way; all which he punctually performed, and defaced the very appearance of the savages being there¹⁹⁾, so that when I went again, I could scarce know where it was, otherwise than by the corner of the wood pointing to the place.

L. — I then began to enter into a little conversation with my two new subjects; and, first, I set Friday to inquire of his father what he thought of the escape of the savages in that canoe, and whether we might expect a return of them, with a power too great for us to resist. His first opinion was, that the savages in the boat never could live out the storm which blew that night they went off, but must, of necessity, be drowned, or driven south to those other shores, where they were as sure to be devoured as they were to be drowned, if they were cast away; but, as to what they would do, if they came safe on shore, he said he knew not; but it was his opinion, that they were so dreadfully frightened with the manner of their being attacked, the noise, and the fire, that he believed they would tell their people they were all killed by thunder and lightning, not by the hand of man; and that

¹⁸⁾ *offensive*, auf der zweiten betont, = lästig, ekelhaft (durch den Geruch). — ¹⁹⁾ Erkläre: vernichtete jede Spur davon, daß die Wilden dort gewesen waren.

the two which appeared, viz. Friday and I, were two heavenly spirits, or furies, come down to destroy them, and not men with weapons. This, he said, he knew; because he heard them all cry out so, in their language to one another; for it was impossible to them to conceive that a man could dart fire, and speak thunder, and kill at a distance, without lifting up the hand, as was done now; and this old savage was in the right; for, as I understood since, by other hands, the savages never attempted to go over to the island afterwards; they were so terrified with the accounts given by those four men (for, it seems, they did escape the sea,) that they believed whoever went to that enchanted island would be destroyed with fire from the gods. This, however, I knew not, and therefore was under continual apprehensions for a good while, and kept always upon my guard, I and all my army; for, as there were now four of us, I would have ventured upon a hundred of them, fairly in the open field, at any time.

In a little time, however, no more canoes appearing, the fear of their coming wore off; and I began to take my former thoughts of a voyage to the main into consideration; being likewise assured, by Friday's father, that I might depend upon good usage¹⁾ from their nation, on his account, if I would go. But my thoughts were a little suspended when I had a serious discourse with the Spaniard, and when I understood that there were sixteen more of his countrymen and Portuguese, who, having been cast away, and made their escape to that side, lived there at peace, indeed, with the savages, but were very sore put to it for necessaries, and indeed for life. I asked him all the particulars of their voyage, and found they were a Spanish ship, bound from the Rio de la Plata to the Havanna, being directed to leave their loading there, which was chiefly hides and silver, and to bring back what European goods they could meet with there; that they had five Portuguese seamen on board, whom they took out of another wreck; that five of their own men were drowned, when first the ship was lost, and that these escaped, through infinite dangers and hazards, and arrived, almost starved, on the cannibal coast, where they expected to have been de-

L. — ¹⁾ *to depend upon good usage* = sich auf gute Behandlung verlassen.

voured every moment. He told me they had some arms with them, but they were perfectly useless, for that they had neither powder or ball, the washing of the sea having spoiled all their powder but a little, which they used, at their first landing, to provide themselves some food.

I asked him what he thought would become of them there, and if they had formed no design of making any escape. He said they had many consultations about it; but that having neither vessel, or tools to build one, or provisions of any kind, their councils always ended in tears and despair. I asked him how he thought they would receive a proposal from me, which might tend towards an escape; and whether, if they were all here, it might not be done. I told him with freedom, I feared mostly their treachery and ill usage of me²⁾, if I put my life in their hands; for that gratitude was no inherent³⁾ virtue in the nature of man, nor did men always square their dealings by the obligations⁴⁾ they had received, so much as they did by the advantages they expected. I told him it would be very hard that I should be the instrument of their deliverance, and that they should afterwards make me their prisoner in New Spain, where an Englishman was certain to be made a sacrifice, what necessity, or what accident soever brought him thither; and that I had rather be delivered up to the savages, and be devoured alive, than fall into the merciless claws of the priests, and be carried into the Inquisition⁵⁾. I added, that otherwise I was persuaded, if they were all here, we might, with so many hands, build a bark large enough to carry us all away, either to the Brasils, southward, or to the islands, or Spanish coast, northward; but that if, in requital⁶⁾, they should, when I had put weapons into their hands, carry me by force among their own people, I might be ill used for my kindness to them, and make my case worse than it was before.

2) *ill usage of me* = üble Behandlung meiner Person. — 3) *inhèrent* = natürlich zugehörend, unzertrennlich. — 4) Erkläre: auch pafsten die Menschen nicht immer ihre Handlungen den Wohlthaten an. — 5) Die Inquisition, d. h. peinliche Untersuchung zur Aufspürung und Bestrafung der Ketzer und Ungläubigen, ist ein Glaubensgericht der katholischen Kirche, welches 1215 unter Papst Innocenz III. mit dem bischöflichen Amte verbunden wurde und namentlich in Spanien, wo sie seit 1480 königliches Institut war, entsetzliches Unheil anrichtete. — 6) *in requital* = als Vergeltung.

He answered, with a great deal of candour and ingenuity⁷⁾, that their condition was so miserable, and that they were so sensible of it, that, he believed, they would abhor the thought of using any man unkindly that should contribute to their deliverance; and that, if I pleased, he would go to them with the old man, and discourse with them about it, and return again, and bring me their answer; that he would make conditions with them upon their solemn oath, that they should be absolutely under my leading, as their commander and captain; and that they should swear upon the holy sacraments and the gospel⁸⁾, to be true to me, and to go to such Christian country as that I should agree to, and no other, and to be directed wholly and absolutely by my orders, till they were landed safely in such country as I intended; and that he would bring a contract from them, under their hands, for that purpose. Then he told me he would first swear to me himself, that he would never stir from me as long as he lived, till I gave him orders; and that he would take my side to the last drop of his blood, if there should happen the least breach of faith among his countrymen. He told me they were all of them very civil, honest men, and they were under the greatest distress imaginable, having neither weapons or clothes, nor any food, but at the mercy and discretion of the savages; out of all hopes of ever returning to their own country; and that he was sure, if I would undertake their relief, they would live and die by me.

Upon these assurances, I resolved to venture to relieve them, if possible, and to send the old savage and this Spaniard over to them to treat. But when we had gotten all things in a readiness to go, the Spaniard himself started an objection, which had so much prudence in it, on one hand, and so much sincerity on the other hand, that I could not but be very well satisfied in it; and, by his advice, put off the deliverance of his comrades for at least half a year. The case was thus: he had been with us now about a month; during which time I had let him see in what manner I had provided, with the assistance of Providence, for my support;

⁷⁾ *cándour and ingenùity* = Offenheit und Freimut. NB. *candid*, eig. „weiß glänzend“, uneigennützig, redlich, bieder; *ingénuous*, eig. „angeboren“, ungeheuchelt, arglos, treuherzig. = ⁸⁾ *góspel*, Evangelium, kommt vom angelsächsischen *god-spell* = Gotteswort.

and he saw evidently what stock of corn and rice I had laid up; which, as it was more than sufficient for myself, so it was not sufficient, at least without good husbandry, for my family, now it was increased to number four; but much less would it be sufficient if his countrymen, who were, as he said, fourteen, still alive, should come over; and, least of all, would it be sufficient to victual⁹⁾ our vessel, if we should build one, for a voyage to any of the Christian colonies of America; so he told me he thought it would be more advisable to let him and the other two dig and cultivate some more land, as much as I could spare seed to sow; and that we should wait another harvest, that we might have a supply of corn for his countrymen, when they should come; for want might be a temptation to them to disagree, or not to think themselves delivered, otherwise than out of one difficulty into another. "You know," says he, "the children of Israel, though they rejoiced at first for their being delivered out of Egypt, yet rebelled even against God himself, that delivered them, when they came to want bread in the wilderness."

His caution was so seasonable, and his advice so good, that I could not but be very well pleased with his proposal, as well as I was satisfied with his fidelity: so we fell to digging¹⁰⁾ all four of us, as well as the wooden tools we were furnished with permitted; and in about a month's time, by the end of which it was seed-time, we had gotten as much land cured and trimmed up¹¹⁾ as we sowed two and twenty bushels¹²⁾ of barley on, and sixteen jars¹³⁾ of rice; which was, in short, all the seed we had to spare; nor, indeed, did we leave ourselves barley sufficient for our own food, for the six months that we had to expect our crop; that is to say, reckoning from the time we set our seed aside for sowing; for it is not to be supposed it is six months in the ground in that country.

LI. — Having now society enough, and our number being sufficient to put us out of fear of the savages, if they had come, unless their number had been very great, we went

⁹⁾ Cf. XLV, 12. — ¹⁰⁾ *to fall to digging* = sich ans graben machen. — ¹¹⁾ *to cure and trim up* = herrichten und zurecht machen. — ¹²⁾ Cf. XXI, 15. — ¹³⁾ *jār* ist ein Krug von zwei Gallonen Inhalt.

freely all over the island, wherever we found occasion; and as here we had our escape or deliverance upon our thoughts, it was impossible, at least for me, to have the means of it out of mine. To this purpose, I marked out several trees which I thought fit for our work, and I set Friday and his father to cutting them down; and then I caused the Spaniard, to whom I imparted my thoughts on that affair, to oversee and direct their work. I showed them with what indefatigable pains I had hewed a large tree into single planks, and I caused them to do the like, till they had made about a dozen large planks of good oak, near two feet broad, thirty-five feet long, and from two inches to four inches thick: what prodigious labour it took up, any one may imagine.

At the same time, I contrived to increase my little flock of tame goats as much as I could; and, for this purpose, I made Friday and the Spaniard go out one day, and myself with Friday the next day; for we took our turns: and by this means we got above twenty young kids to breed up with the rest; for whenever we shot the dam¹⁾, we saved the kids, and added them to our flock. But, above all, the season for curing the grapes coming on, I caused such a prodigious quantity to be hung up in the sun, that, I believe, had we been at Alicant²⁾, where the raisins of the sun are cured, we could have filled sixty or eighty barrels; and these, with our bread, was a great part of our food, and very good living too, I assure you; for it is an exceeding nourishing food.

It was now harvest, and our crop in good order; it was not the most plentiful increase I had seen in the island, but, however, it was enough to answer our end; for from our twenty-two bushels of barley we brought in and threshed out above two hundred and twenty bushels, and the like in proportion of the rice; which was store enough for our food to the next harvest, though all the sixteen Spaniards had been on shore with me; or if we had been ready for a voyage, it would very plentifully have victualled our ship to have carried us to any part of the world, that is to say, of America. When we had thus housed and secured our magazine of corn,

LI. — ¹⁾ *dam* = Muttertier; cf. XII, 27. — ²⁾ Spr. *ālīkānt'*. Der Wein von Alicante, Hauptausfuhrhafen für Südfrüchte und Wein in der spanischen Provinz Valencia, ist berühmt, derlei Reben sind auch in Deutschland angepflanzt,

we fell to work to make more wicker-work³⁾, viz. great baskets, in which we kept it; and the Spaniard was very handy and dexterous at this part, and often blamed me that I did not make some things for defence of this kind of work; but I saw no need of it.

And now having a full supply of food for all the guests I expected, I gave the Spaniard leave to go over to the main, to see what he could do with those he had left behind him there. I gave him a strict charge in writing, not to bring any man with him who would not first swear, in the presence of himself and of the old savage, that he would no way injure, fight with, or attack the person he should find in the island, who was so kind as send for them in order to their deliverance; but that they would stand by him, and defend him against all such attempts, and wherever they went, would be entirely under and subjected to his commands; and that this should be put in writing, and signed with their hands. How we were to have done this, when I knew they had neither pen or ink, that indeed was a question which we never asked. Under these instructions, the Spaniard and the old savage, the father of Friday, went away in one of the canoes which they might be said to come in⁴⁾, or rather were brought in, when they came as prisoners to be devoured by the savages. I gave each of them a musket, with a fire-lock⁵⁾ on it, and about eight charges of powder and ball, charging them to be very good husbands of both, and not to use either of them but upon urgent occasion.

This was a cheerful work, beeing the first measures used by me, in view of my deliverance, for now twenty-seven years and some days; I gave them provisions of bread, and of dried grapes, sufficient for themselves for many days, and sufficient for all the Spaniards for about eight days' time; and wishing them a good voyage, I saw them go; agreeing with them about a signal they should hang out at their return, by which I should know them again, when they came back, at a distance, before they came on shore. They went away with a fair

3) Cf. XV, 19. — 4) Konstruktion! — 5) *fire-lock* = Feuerschloß, im Gegensatz zu den älteren Luntenflinten, welchen die Musketen eigentlich glichen. NB. Es wurde erfunden: 1517 das Radschloß, 1630 das Steinschloß, 1807 das Perkussionsschloß, 1836 das Dreyse'sche Zündnadelgewehr.

gale, on the day that the moon was at full, by my account in the month of October; but as for an exact reckoning of days, after I had once lost it, I could never recover it again; nor had I kept even the number of years so punctually as to be sure that I was right, though, as it proved, when I afterwards examined my account, I found I had kept a true reckoning of years.

It was no less than eight days I had waited for them, when a strange and unforeseen accident intervened, of which the like has not perhaps been heard of in history. I was fast asleep in my hutch one morning, when my man Friday came running in to me, and called aloud, "Master, master, they are come, they are come!" I jumped up, and, regardless of danger, I went out as soon as I could get my clothes on, through my little grove, which, by the way, was by this time grown to be a very thick wood; I say, regardless of danger, I went without my arms, which was not my custom to do; but I was surprised, when turning my eyes to the sea, I presently saw a boat at about a league and half's distance, standing in for the shore, with a shoulder of mutton sail, as they call it, and the wind blowing pretty fair to bring them in: also I observed presently, that they did not come from that side which the shore lay on, but from the southern-most end of the island. Upon this, I called Friday in, and bade him lie close, for these were not the people we looked for, and that we might not know yet whether they were friends or enemies. In the next place, I went in to fetch my perspective-glass, to see what I could make of them; and having taken the ladder out, I climbed up to the top of the hill, as I used to do when I was apprehensive of any thing, and to take my view the plainer⁶⁾, without being discovered. I had scarce set my foot on the hill, when my eye plainly discovered a ship lying at an anchor, at about two leagues and a half distance from me, S. S. E. but not above a league and a half from the shore. By my observation, it appeared plainly to be an English ship, and the boat appeared to be an English long-boat⁷⁾.

⁶⁾ „den Ausblick freier zu haben“. — ⁷⁾ *long-boat* ist das grofse Boot, die Barkasse.

I cannot express the confusion I was in; though the joy of seeing a ship, and one whom I had reason to believe was manned by my own countrymen, and consequently friends, was such as I cannot describe; but yet I had some secret doubts hung about me, I cannot tell from whence they came, bidding me keep upon my guard. In the first place, it occurred to me to consider what business an English ship could have in that part of the world, since it was not the way to or from any part of the world where the English had any traffic⁸⁾; and I knew there had been no storms to drive them in there, as in distress; and that if they were English really, it was most probable that they were here upon no good design; and that I had better continue as I was, than fall into the hands of thieves and murderers.

Let no man despise the secret hints and notices of danger, which sometimes are given him when he may think there is no possibility of its being real. That such hints and notices are given us, I believe few that have made any observations of things can deny; that they are certain discoveries of an invisible world, and a converse of spirits⁹⁾, we cannot doubt; and if the tendency of them seems to be to warn us of danger, why should we not suppose they are from some friendly agent, whether supreme, or inferior and subordinate, is not the question, and that they are given for our good?

The present question abundantly confirms me in the justice of this reasoning; for had I not been made cautious by this secret admonition, come it from whence it will, I had been undone inevitably, and in a far worse condition than before, as you will see presently. I had not kept myself long in this posture, but I saw the boat draw near the shore, as if they looked for a creek to thrust in at, for the convenience of landing; however, as they did not come quite far enough, they did not see the little inlet where I formerly landed my rafts; but run their boat on shore upon the beach, at about

8) *trade*, eig. „Warentransport“, ist der Handel im allgemeinen, *commerce*, eig. „Warenankauf“, bezeichnet den Großhandel, hauptsächlich den mit dem Auslande, *traffic*, eig. „das über das Meer geschaffte“, bedeutet den Handelsverkehr zwischen Städten und Ländern, *dealing*, eig. „das Teilen“, ist der Detailhandel, *bargain*, „das Hin- und Herhandeln“, der Handel als Abschluß eines Geschäfts, der Kauf. — 9) *converse of spirits* = Verkehr der Geister.

half a mile from me, which was very happy for me; for otherwise they would have landed just as I may say at my door, and would soon have beaten me out of my castle, and perhaps have plundered me of all I had. When they were on shore, I was fully satisfied that they were Englishmen; at least most of them; one or two I thought were Dutch¹⁰⁾, but it did not prove so; there were in all eleven men, whereof three of them I found were unarmed, and, as I thought, bound; and when the first four or five of them were jumped on shore, they took those three out of the boat, as prisoners: one of the three I could perceive using the most passionate gestures of entreaty, affliction, and despair, even to a kind of extravagance; the other two, I could perceive, lifted up their hands sometimes, and appeared concerned¹¹⁾ indeed, but not to such a degree as the first. I was perfectly confounded at the sight, and knew not what the meaning of it should be. Friday called out to me in English, as well as he could, "O master! you see English mans eat prisoner as well as savage mans." "Why," says I, "Friday do you think they are going to eat them then?" "Yes," says Friday, "they will eat them." "No, no," says I, "Friday; I am afraid they will murder them indeed, but you may be sure they will not eat them."

LII. — All this while I had no thought of what the matter really was, but stood trembling with the horror of the sight, expecting every moment when the three prisoners should be killed; nay, once I saw one of the villains lift up his arm with a great cutlass, as the seamen call it, or sword, to strike one of the poor men; and I expected to see him fall every moment; at which all the blood in my body seemed to run chill in my veins. I wished heartily now for my Spaniard, and the savage that was gone with him; or that I had any way to have come undiscovered within shot of them, that I might have rescued the three men, for I saw no fire-arms they had among them; but it fell out to my mind another way. After I had observed the outrageous¹⁾ usage of the three men by the insolent seamen, I observed the fellows run scattering about the land, as if they wanted to see the country,

¹⁰⁾ Cf. VIII, 40. — ¹¹⁾ *concerned* hier = bekümmert, traurig.

LII. — Spr. *outrà'-djús*.

I observed that the three other men had liberty to go also where they pleased; but they sat down all three upon the ground, very pensive, and looked like men in despair. This put me in mind of the first time when I came on shore, and began to look about me; how I gave myself over for lost; how wildly I looked round me; what dreadful apprehensions I had; and how I lodged in the tree all night, for fear of being devoured by wild beasts. As I knew nothing, that night, of the supply I was to receive by the providential driving of the ship nearer the land by the storms and tide, by which I have since been so long nourished and supported; so these three poor desolate men knew nothing how certain of deliverance and supply they were, how near it was to them, and how effectually and really they were in a condition of safety, at the same time that they thought themselves lost, and their case desperate. So little do we see before us in the world, and so much reason have we to depend cheerfully upon the great Maker of the world, that he does not leave his creatures so absolutely destitute, but that, in the worst circumstances, they have always something to be thankful for, and sometimes are nearer their deliverance than they imagine; nay, are even brought to their deliverance by the means by which they seem to be brought to their destruction.

It was just at the top of high water²⁾ when these people came on shore; and while partly they stood parleying with the prisoners they brought, and partly while they rambled about to see what kind of a place they were in, they had carelessly staid³⁾ till the tide was spent, and the water was ebbed considerably away, leaving their boat aground. They had left two men in the boat, who, as I found afterwards, having drank a little too much brandy, fell asleep; however, one of them waking sooner than the other, and finding the boat too fast aground for him to stir it, hallooed for the rest, who were straggling about, upon which they all soon came to the boat; but it was past all their strength to launch her, the boat being very heavy, and the shore on that side being a soft oozy⁴⁾ sand, almost like a quick-sand⁵⁾. In this con-

²⁾ *at the top of high water* = zur Zeit der höchsten Flut. —

³⁾ *staid* = *stayed*, gebildet wie *paid* von *to pay*. — ⁴⁾ *oozy* = schlammig. — ⁵⁾ *quick-sand* = Treibsand.

dition, like true seamen, who are perhaps the least of all mankind given to forethought⁶⁾, they gave it over, and away they strolled about the country again; and I heard one of them say aloud to another, calling them off from the boat, "Why let her alone, Jack, can't you? she'll float next tide:" by which I was fully confirmed in the main inquiry of what countrymen they were. All this while I kept myself very close, not once daring to stir out of my castle, any farther than to my place of observation, near the top of the hill; and very glad I was to think how well it was fortified. I knew it was no less than ten hours before the boat could be on float again, and by that time it would be dark, and I might be at more liberty to see their motions, and to hear their discourse, if they had any. In the mean time, I fitted myself up for a battle, as before, though with more caution, knowing I had to do with another kind of enemy than I had at first. I ordered Friday also, whom I had made an excellent marksman⁷⁾ with his gun, to load himself with arms. I took myself two fowling-pieces, and I gave him three muskets. My figure, indeed, was very fierce; I had my formidable goat skin coat on, with the great cap I have mentioned, a naked sword by my side, two pistols in my belt, and a gun upon each shoulder.

It was my design, as I said above, not to have made any attempt till it was dark; but about two o'clock, being the heat of the day, I found that, in short, they were all gone straggling into the woods, and, as I thought, were laid down to sleep. The three poor distressed men, too anxious for their condition to get any sleep, were, however, sat down under the shelter of a great tree, at about a quarter of a mile from me, and, as I thought, out of sight of any of the rest. Upon this I resolved to discover myself to them, and learn something of their condition; immediately I marched in the figure as above, my man Friday at a good distance behind me, as formidable for his arms as I, but not making quite so staring a spectre-like figure as I did. I came as near them undiscovered as I could, and then, before any of them saw me, I called aloud to them in Spanish, "What are ye, gentlemen?" They started up at the noise; but were ten times more con-

⁶⁾ *given to forethought* = zum Vorbedacht geneigt. — ⁷⁾ *marksman* = Schütze, einer der das Ziel (*mark*) gut zu nehmen versteht.

founded when they saw me, and the uncouth⁸⁾ figure that I made. They made no answer at all, but I thought I perceived them just going to fly from me, when I spoke to them in English; "Gentlemen," said I, "do not be surprised at me; perhaps you may have a friend near you, when you did not expect it." "He must be sent directly from Heaven then," said one of them very gravely to me, and pulling off his hat at the same time to me," "for our condition is past the help of man." "All help is from Heaven, Sir," said I: "But can you put a stranger in the way⁹⁾ how to help you, for you seem to be in some great distress? I saw you when you landed, and when you seemed to make applications to the brutes that came with you, I saw one of them lift up his sword to kill you."

The poor man, with tears running down his face, and trembling, looking like one astonished, returned, "Am I talking to God or man? Is it a real man or an angel?" "Be in no fear about that, Sir," said I, "if God had sent an angel to relieve you, he would have come better clothed, and armed after another manner than you see me in: pray lay aside your fears; I am a man, an Englishman, and disposed to assist you; you see I have one servant only; we have arms and ammunition; tell us freely can we serve you? What is your case?" "Our case," said he, "Sir, is too long to tell you, while our murderers are so near; but, in short, Sir, I was commander of that ship, my men have mutinied against me; they have been hardly prevailed on not to murder me; and at last have set me on shore in this desolate place, with these two men with me, one my mate, the other a passenger, where we expected to perish, believing the place to be uninhabited, and know not yet what to think of it." — "Where are those brutes, your enemies?" said I; "Do you know where they are gone?" — "There they lie, Sir," said he, pointing to a thicket of trees; "my heart trembles for fear they have seen us, and heard you speak; if they have, they will certainly murder us all." "Have they any fire-arms?" said I. He answered, "they had only two pieces, and one which they left in the boat." "Well then," said I, "leave the rest to

⁸⁾ *uncouth*, spr. únkoùth', = unsagbar, wunderbar. — ⁹⁾ *to put in the way* = den Weg zeigen, auf die Sprünge helfen, angeben.

me; I see they are all asleep, it is an easy thing to kill them all; but shall we rather take them prisoners?" He told me there were two desperate villains among them, that it was scarce safe to show any mercy to; but if they were secured, he believed all the rest would return to their duty. I asked him which they were? He told me he could not at that distance describe them; but he would obey my orders in any thing I would direct. "Well," says I, "let us retreat out of their view or hearing, lest they awake, and we will resolve further." So they willingly went back with me, till the woods covered us from them.

"Look you, Sir," said I, "if I venture upon your deliverance, are you willing to make two conditions with me?" He anticipated my proposals, by telling me, that both he and the ship, if recovered, should be wholly directed and commanded by me in every thing; and, if the ship was not recovered, he would live and die with me in what part of the world soever I would send him; and the two other men said the same. "Well," says I, "my conditions are but two: first, That while you stay in this island with me, you will not pretend¹⁰⁾ to any authority here; and if I put arms in your hands, you will, upon all occasions, give them up to me, and do no prejudice¹¹⁾ to me or mine upon this island; and, in the mean time, be governed by my orders; secondly, That if the ship is, or may be recovered, you will carry me and my man to England, passage free."

He gave me all the assurances that the invention and faith of man could devise, that he would comply with these most reasonable demands; and, besides, would owe his life to me, and acknowledge it upon all occasions, as long as he lived. "Well then," said I, "here are three muskets for you, with powder and ball; tell me next what you think is proper to be done." He showed all the testimony of his gratitude that he was able, but offered to be wholly guided by me. I told him I thought it was hard venturing any thing; but the best method I could think of was to fire upon them at once, as they lay; and if any were not killed at the first volley, and offered to submit, we might save them, and so put it wholly

¹⁰⁾ *to pretend to* = Anspruch machen auf. — ¹¹⁾ *prejudice*, spr. pré'-djúdis, Beeinträchtigung, Schaden.

upon God's providence to direct the shot. He said very modestly, that he was loath to kill them, if he could help it; but that those two were incorrigible villains, and had been the authors of all the mutiny in the ship, and if they escaped, we should be undone still; for they would go on board and bring the whole ship's company, and destroy us all. "Well then," says I, "necessity legitimates my advice, for it is the only way to save our lives." However, seeing him still cautious of shedding blood, I told him they should go themselves, and manage as they found convenient.

LIII. — In the middle of this discourse we heard some of them awake, and soon after we saw two of them on their feet. I asked him if either of them were of the men who he had said were the heads of the mutiny? He said, No. "Well then," said I, "you may let them escape; and Providence seems to have awakened them on purpose to save themselves. — Now," says I, "if the rest escape you, it is your fault." Animated with this, he took the musket I had given him in his hand, and a pistol in his belt, and his two comrades with him, with each man a piece in his hand; the two men who were with him going first, made some noise, at which one of the seamen who was awake turned about, and seeing them coming, cried out to the rest; but it was too late then, for the moment he cried out they fired; I mean the two men, the captain wisely reserving his own piece. They had so well aimed their shot at the men they knew, that one of them was killed on the spot, and the other very much wounded; but not being dead, he started up on his feet, and called eagerly for help to the other; but the captain stepping to him, told him it was too late to cry for help, he should call upon God to forgive his villany; and with that word knocked him down with the stock¹⁾ of his musket, so that he never spoke more; there were three more in the company, and one of them was also slightly wounded. By this time I was come; and when they saw their danger, and that it was in vain to resist, they begged for mercy. The captain told them he would spare their lives, if they would give him any assurance of their abhorrence of the treachery they had been guilty of,

LIII. — ¹⁾ Cf. XLI, 11.

and would swear to be faithful to him in recovering the ship, and afterwards in carrying her back to Jamaica²⁾, from whence they came. They gave him all the protestations³⁾ of their sincerity that could be desired, and he was willing to believe them, and spare their lives, which I was not against, only that I obliged him to keep them bound hand and foot while they were upon the island.

While this was doing; I sent Friday with the captain's mate to the boat, with orders to secure her, and bring away the oars and sail, which they did; and by and by three straggling men, that were (happily for them) parted from the rest, came back upon hearing the guns fired; and seeing their captain, who before was their prisoner, now their conqueror, they submitted to be bound also; and so our victory was complete.

It now remained that the captain and I should inquire into one another's circumstances; I began first, and told him my whole history, which he heard with an attention even to amazement; and particularly at the wonderful manner of my being furnished with provisions and ammunition; and, indeed, as my story is a whole collection of wonders, it affected him deeply. But when he reflected from thence upon himself, and how I seemed to have been preserved there on purpose to save his life, the tears ran down his face, and he could not speak a word more. After⁴) this communication was at an end, I carried him and his two men into my apartment, leading them in just where I came out, viz. at the top of the house, where I refreshed them with such provisions as I had, and showed them all the contrivances I had made, during my long, long inhabiting that place.

All⁵⁾ I showed them, all I said to them, was perfectly amazing; but, above all, the captain admired my fortification, and how perfectly I had concealed my retreat with a grove of trees, which, having been now planted near twenty years, and the trees growing much faster than in England, was become a little wood, and so thick, that it was unpassable in any part of it, but⁶⁾ at that one side where I had reserved

2) Spr. djámà'-kā. — 3) *protestations* hier = Beteuerungen, feierliche Versicherungen. — 4) *after* kann sein: 1) Präposition = nach, 2) Adverbium = nachher, 3) Konjunktion = nachdem. — 5) Beachte die Auslassung des Relativs. — 6) *but* hier = aufser, nur nicht.

my little winding passage into it. I told him this was my castle and my residence⁷⁾, but that I had a seat in the country, as most princes have, whither I could retreat upon occasion, and I would show him that too another time; but at present our business was to consider how to recover the ship. He agreed with me as to⁸⁾ that; but told me, he was perfectly at a loss what measures to take, for that there were still six and twenty hands⁹⁾ on board, who having entered into a cursed conspiracy, by which they had all forfeited their lives to the law, would be hardened in it now by desperation; and would carry it on, knowing that, if they were reduced, they should be brought to the gallows¹⁰⁾ as soon as they came to England, or to any of the English colonies; and that, therefore, there would be no attacking them with so small a number as we were.

I mused for some time upon what he had said, and found it was a very rational conclusion; and that, therefore, something was to be resolved on very speedily, as well to draw the men on board into some snare¹¹⁾ for their surprise, as to prevent their landing upon us, and destroying us. Upon this, it presently occurred to me, that in a little while the ship's crew, wondering what was become of their comrades, and of the boat, would certainly come on shore in their other boat, to see for them; and that then, perhaps, they might come armed, and be too strong for us: this he allowed to be rational. Upon this, I told him the first thing we had to do was to stave¹²⁾ the boat which lay upon the beach, so that they might not carry her off; and taking every thing out her, leave her so far useless as not to be fit to swim; accordingly we went on board, took the arms which were left on board out of her, and whatever else we found there, which was a

7) *residence*, auf der ersten betont, = Wohnsitz. — 8) *as to* = in Bezug auf. — 9) *hands* bezeichnet in der Seemannssprache die Matrosen, z. B. auch in den Kommandorufen: *all hands on deck! come up all hands!* Es steht der Teil fürs Ganze, wie wir auch sagen: 26 Köpfe. — 10) *gallows* gehört zu denjenigen Pluralen, die wieder zu Singularen geworden sind und nun teils im Singular und Plural gleich lauten, wie *means*, *news*, teils aber mit neugebildetem Plural auftreten, z. B. *gallowses* hat schon Shakespeare, *Cymb. V, 4, 214*, während er *H. 4 A I, 2, 66* noch *shall there be gallows standing* schreibt. — 11) *to draw into some snare* = in irgend eine Falle locken. — 12) Cf. II, 42.

bottle of brandy, and another of rum, a few biscuit-cakes, a horn of powder, and a great lump of sugar in a piece of canvass, the sugar was five or six pounds; all which was very welcome to me, especially the brandy and sugar, of which I had had none left for many years.

When we had carried all these things on shore, the oars¹³⁾, mast, sail, and rudder¹³⁾ of the boat were carried away before, as above, we knocked a great hole in her bottom, that if they had come strong enough to master us, yet they could not carry off the boat. Indeed, it was not much in my thoughts that we could be able to recover the ship; but my view was, that if they went away without the boat, I did not much question to make her fit again to carry us away to the Leeward Islands¹⁴⁾, and call upon our friends the Spaniards in my way; for I had them still in my thoughts.

While we were thus preparing our designs, and had first, by main strength¹⁵⁾, heaved the boat upon the beach so high, that the tide would not float her off at high water mark; and besides, had broke a hole in her bottom too big to be quickly stopped, and were sat down musing what we should do, we heard the ship fire a gun, and saw her make a waft with her ensign as a signal for the boat to come on board: but no boat stirred; and they fired several times, making other signals for the boat. At last, when all their signals and firing proved fruitless, and they found the boat did not stir, we saw them, by the help of my glasses, hoist another boat out, and row towards the shore; and we found, as they approached, that there was¹⁶⁾ no less than ten men in her, and that they had fire-arms with them.

As the ship lay almost two leagues from the shore, we had a full view of them as they came, and a plain sight of the men even of their faces; because the tide having set them a little to the east of the other boat, they rowed up under shore¹⁷⁾, to come to the same place where the other had

¹³⁾ Cf. X, 14. — ¹⁴⁾ *Leeward Islands* heißen diejenigen von den Antillen, welche am weitesten nach Westen, d. h. von dem dort wehenden Passatwinde abliegen. NB. Leeseite heißt beim Schiffe die vom Winde nicht getroffene Seite, Gegensatz: Luvseite. — ¹⁵⁾ *by main strength* = durch bloßen Kraftaufwand, ohne mechanische Hilfsmittel. — ¹⁶⁾ Beziehung?! — ¹⁷⁾ *under shore* = im Schutze der Küste, an der Küste entlang. NB. *cōast*, eig. „Rippe, Seite“,

landed, and where the boat lay; by this means, I say, we had a full view of them, and the captain knew the persons and characters of all the men in the boat, of whom, he said, there were three very honest fellows, who, he was sure, were led into this conspiracy by the rest, being overpowered and frightened; but that as for the boatswain, who, it seems, was the chief officer among them, and all the rest, they were as outrageous as any of the ship's crew, and were no doubt made desperate in their new enterprise; and terribly apprehensive he was that they would be too powerful for us. I smiled at him, and told him that men in our circumstances were past the operation of fear¹⁸⁾; that seeing almost every condition that could be was better than that which we were supposed to be in, we ought to expect that the consequence, whether death or life, would be sure to be a deliverance. I asked him what he thought of the circumstances of my life, and whether a deliverance were not worth venturing for? "And where, Sir," said I, "is your belief of my being preserved here on purpose to save your life, which elevated you a little while ago? For my part," said I, "there seems to me but one thing amiss¹⁹⁾ in all the prospect of it." — "What is that?" says he. "Why," said I, "it is, that as you say there are three or four honest fellows among them, which should be spared, had they been all of the wicked part of the crew I should have thought God's providence had singled them out to deliver them into your hands; for depend upon it, every man that comes ashore are²⁰⁾ our own, and shall die or live as they behave to us." As I spoke this with a raised voice and cheerful countenance, I found it greatly encouraged him; so we set vigorously to our business.

LIV. — We had, upon the first appearance of the boat's coming from the ship, considered of separating our prisoners; and had, indeed, secured them effectually. Two of them, of whom the captain was less assured than ordinary, I sent with

ist die ausgedehnte Meeresküste, *shore*, eig. „die trennende Linie zwischen dem Wasser und dem Lande“, = Seeküste, Gestade, im Gegensatz zur Hohen See oder dem Binnenlande, *beach* ist das flache, sandige, steinige Ufer, *strand* = Meeresstrand, der schmale Streifen des vom Meere bespülten Landes, *bank* = Flusssufer. — ¹⁸⁾ *past the operation of fear* = über die Einwirkung der Furcht erhaben. —

¹⁹⁾ *amiss* = verkehrt, nicht passend. — ²⁰⁾ Beziehung?!

Friday, and one of the three delivered men, to my cave, where they were remote enough, and out of danger of being heard or discovered, or of finding their way out of the woods if they could have delivered themselves; here they left them bound, but gave them provisions; and promised them, if they continued there quietly, to give them their liberty in a day or two; but that if they attempted their escape, they should be put to death without mercy. They promised faithfully to bear their confinement with patience, and were very thankful that they had such good usage as to have provisions and light left them; for Friday gave them candles (such as we made ourselves) for their comfort; and they did not know but that ¹⁾ he stood centinel ²⁾ over them at the entrance.

The other prisoners had better usage; two of them were kept pinioned ³⁾, indeed, because the captain was not free to trust them; but the other two were taken into my service, upon their captain's recommendation, and upon their solemnly engaging to live and die with us; so with them and the three honest men we were seven men well armed; and I made no doubt we should be able to deal ⁴⁾ well enough with the ten that were a coming ⁵⁾, considering that the captain had said there were three or four honest men among them also. As soon as they got to the place where their other boat lay, they ran their boat into the beach, and came all on shore, hauling the boat up after them, which I was glad to see; for I was afraid they would rather have left the boat at an anchor, some distance from the shore, with some hands in her, to guard her, and so we should not be able to seize the boat. Being on shore, the first thing they did, they ran all to their other boat; and it was easy to see that they were under a great surprise to find her stripped, as above, of all that was in her, and a great hole in her bottom. After they had mused a while upon this, they set up two or three great shouts ⁶⁾, hallooing with all their might, to try if they could make their companions hear; but all was to no purpose; then they came

LIV. — ¹⁾ Erkläre: sie dachten nicht anders, als dafs. — ²⁾ *centinel* = *sentinel*. — ³⁾ *to pinion*, spr. pín'-yún, fesseln, ist die übertragene Bedeutung von *to pinion* = die Schwingen (*pinions*) brechen, lähmen. — ⁴⁾ *to deal* hier = fertig werden. — ⁵⁾ Cf. XXVII, 17. — ⁶⁾ *to set up shouts* = laute Rufe ausstossen.

all close in a ring, and fired a volley⁷⁾ of their small arms⁸⁾, which, indeed, we heard, and the echoes made the woods ring; but it was all one; those in the cave we were sure could not hear, and those in our keeping, though they heard it well enough, yet durst give no answer to them. They were so astonished at the surprise of this, that, as they told us afterwards, they resolved to go all on board again, to their ship, and let them know that the men were all murdered, and the long-boat staved; accordingly, they immediately launched their boat again, and got all of them on board.

The captain was terribly amazed, and even confounded at this, believing they would go on board the ship again, and set sail, giving their comrades for lost, and so he should still lose the ship, which he was in hopes we should have recovered; but he was quickly as much frightened the other way.

They had not been long put off with the boat, but we perceived them all coming on shore again; but with this new measure in their conduct, which it seems they consulted together upon, viz. to leave three men in the boat, and the rest to go on shore, and go up into the country to look for their fellows. This was a great disappointment to us; for now we were at a loss what to do; for our seizing those seven men on shore would be no advantage to us if we let the boat escape; because they would then row away to the ship, and then the rest of them would be sure to weigh⁹⁾ and set sail, and so our recovering the ship would be lost. However, we had no remedy but to wait and see what the issue of things might present. The seven men came on shore, and the three who remained in the boat put her off to a good distance from the shore, and came to an anchor to wait for them; so that it was impossible for us to come at them in the boat. Those that came on shore kept close together, marching towards the top of the little hill under which my habitation lay: and we could see them plainly, though they could not perceive us. But when they were come to the brow¹⁰⁾ of the hill, where they could see a great way into the valleys and woods, which lay towards the north-east part,

⁷⁾ *volley*, spr. vól'-lè, Ladung, Salve, vom frz. *voler*, also eig. = was fliegt. — ⁸⁾ *small arms* = Kleingewehr (Pistolen). — ⁹⁾ *to weigh* = *to weigh anchor* = die Anker lichten; NB. spr. eigh = à. — ¹⁰⁾ *brow* = Spitze, Gipfel.

and where the island lay lowest, they shouted and hallooed till they were weary; and not caring, it seems, to venture far from the shore, nor far from one another, they sat down together under a tree, to consider of it. Had they thought fit to have gone to sleep there, as the other party of them had done, they had done the job¹¹⁾ for us; but they were too full of apprehensions of danger to venture to go to sleep, though they could not tell what the danger was they had to fear neither.

The captain made a very just proposal to me upon this consultation of theirs, viz. that perhaps they would all fire a volley again, to endeavour to make their fellows hear, and that we should all sally upon them, just at the juncture¹²⁾ when their pieces were all discharged, and they would certainly yield, and we should have them without blood-shed. I liked the proposal, provided it was done while we were near enough to come up to them before they could load their pieces again. But this event did not happen; and we lay still a long time, very irresolute what course to take. At length I told them there would be nothing to be done, in my opinion, till night; and then, if they did not return to the boat, perhaps we might find a way to get between them and the shore, and so might use some stratagem with them in the boat to get them on shore. We waited a great while, though very impatient for their removing; and were very uneasy, when, after long consultations, we saw them start all up, and march down towards the sea; it seems they had such dreadful apprehensions upon them of the danger of the place, that they resolved to go on board the ship again, give their companions over for lost, and so go on with their intended voyage with the ship.

As soon as I perceived them go towards the shore, I imagined it to be, as it really was, that they had given over their search, and were for going back again; and the captain, as soon as I told him my thoughts, was ready to sink at the apprehensions of it; but I presently thought of a stratagem to fetch them back again, and which answered my end to a tittle¹³⁾. I ordered Friday and the captain's mate to go over

¹¹⁾ *job*, Arbeit, wird hergeleitet von dem armen Hiob, engl. = *Job*, der so viel Unglück erduldet; *to do the job* = einen Gefallen thun. — ¹²⁾ *juncture* hier = (günstiger) Zeitpunkt. — ¹³⁾ *to a tittle* = aufs Haar.

the little creek westward, towards the place where the savages came on shore when Friday was rescued, and as soon as they came to a little rising ground, at about half a mile distance, I bade them halloo, as loud as they could, and wait till they found the seamen heard them; that as soon as ever they heard the seamen answer them, they should return it again; and then keeping out of sight, take a round, always answering when the others hallooed, to draw them as far into the island, and among the woods, as possible, and then wheel about again to me, by such ways as I directed them.

They were just going into the boat when Friday and the mate hallooed; and they presently heard them, and answering, run along the shore westward, towards the voice they heard, when they were presently stopped by the creek, where the water being up, they could not get over, and called for the boat to come up and set them over, as, indeed, I expected. When they had set themselves over, I observed that the boat being gone up a good way into the creek, and, as it were, in a harbour within the land, they took one of the three men out of her, to go along with them, and left only two in the boat, having fastened her to the stump of a little tree on the shore. This was what I wished for; and immediately leaving Friday and the captain's mate to their business, I took the rest with me, and crossing the creek out of their sight, we surprised the two men before they were aware; one of them lying on the shore, and the other being in the boat. The fellow on shore was between sleeping and waking, and going to start up; the captain, who was foremost, ran in upon him, and knocked him down: and then called out to him in the boat to yield, or he was a dead man. There needed very few arguments to persuade a single man to yield, when he saw five men upon him, and his comrade knocked down; besides, this was, it seems, one of the three who were not so hearty ¹⁴⁾ in the mutiny as the rest of the crew, and therefore was easily persuaded not only to yield, but afterwards to join very sincerely with us. In the mean time, Friday and the captain's mate so well managed their business ¹⁵⁾ with the rest, that they drew them, by hallooing and answering, from

¹⁴⁾ *hearty* hier = eifrig. — ¹⁵⁾ *to manage one's business* = seinen Auftrag vollführen.

one hill to another, and from one wood to another, till they not only heartily tired them, but left them where they were very sure they could not reach back to the boat before it was dark; and, indeed, they were heartily tired themselves also, by the time they came back to us.

LV. — We had nothing now to do but to watch for them in the dark, and to fall upon them, so as to make sure work with them. It was several hours after Friday came back to me before they came back to their boat; and we could hear the foremost of them, long before they came quite up, calling to those behind to come along, and could also hear them answer, and complain how lame and tired they were, and not able to come any faster; which was very welcome news to us. At length they came up to the boat; but it is impossible to express their confusion when they found the boat fast aground in the creek, the tide ebbed out, and their two men gone. We could hear them call one to another in a most lamentable manner, telling one another they were gotten into an enchanted¹⁾ island; that either there were inhabitants in it, and they should all be murdered, or else there were devils and spirits in it, and they should be all carried away and devoured. They hallooed again, and called their two comrades by their names a great many times; but no answer. After some time, we could see them, by the little light there was, run about, wringing their hands like men in despair; and that sometimes they would go and sit down in the boat, to rest themselves; then come ashore again, and walk about again, and so the same thing over again. My men would fain have had me given²⁾ them leave to fall upon them at once in the dark; but I was willing to take them at some advantage³⁾, so to spare them, and kill as few of them as I could; and especially I was unwilling to hazard the killing any of our men, knowing the others were very well armed. I resolved to wait, to see if they did not separate; and, therefore, to make sure of them, I drew my ambuscade⁴⁾ nearer, and ordered Friday and the captain to creep upon their hands and feet, as close to the ground as they could, that they might not be discovered, and

LV. — 1) Spr. á. — 2) Konstruktion?! — 3) *at some advantage* = mit einigem Vorteil. — 4) *to draw an ámbuscade* = einen Hinterhalt (Versteck im Busche) legen.

get as near them as they could possibly, before they offered⁵⁾ to fire.

They had not been long in that posture, but that the boatswain, who was the principal ringleader⁶⁾ of the mutiny, and had now shown himself the most dejected and dispirited of all the rest, came walking towards them, with two more of their crew; the captain was so eager at having this principal rogue so much in his power, that he could hardly have patience to let him come so near as to be sure of him, for they only heard his tongue before; but when they came nearer, the captain and Friday, starting up on their feet, let fly at them. The boatswain was killed upon the spot; the next man was shot in the body and fell just by him, though he did not die till an hour or two after; and the third run for it⁷⁾. At the noise of the fire, I immediately advanced with my whole army, which was now eight men, viz. myself, generalissimo; Friday, my lieutenant-general⁸⁾; the captain and his two men, and the three prisoners of war, whom we had trusted with arms. We came upon them, indeed, in the dark, so that they could not see our number; and I made the man they had left in the boat, who was now one of us, to call them by name, to try if I could bring them to a parley, and so might perhaps reduce them to terms; which fell out just as we desired; for indeed it was easy to think, as their condition then was, they would be very willing to capitulate. So he calls out as loud as he could, to one of them. "Tom⁹⁾ Smith! Tom Smith!" Tom Smith answered immediately, "Who's that, Robinson?" For it seems he knew the voice. The other answered, "Aye aye; for God's sake, Tom Smith, throw down your arms and yield, or you are all dead men this moment." "Who¹⁰⁾ must we yield to? Where are they?" says Smith again. "Here they are," says he; "here's our captain and fifty men with him, have been hunting you these two hours; the boatswain is killed, Will Fry is wounded, and I am a prisoner; and if you do not yield, you are all lost." "Will they give us quarter¹¹⁾ then?" says Tom Smith, "and we

⁵⁾ *to offer* hier = sich anschicken. — ⁶⁾ *ringleader* = Rädelsführer. — ⁷⁾ *he run for it* = er lief was hast du was kannst du, lief um sein Leben. — ⁸⁾ Cf. I, 5. — ⁹⁾ *Tom* = *Thomas*. — ¹⁰⁾ *who* für *whom*. — ¹¹⁾ *to give quarter* = Quartier (Pardon) geben, das Leben schonen.

will yield." — "I'll go and ask, if you promise to yield," says Robinson; so he asked the captain, and the captain himself then calls out, "You, Smith, you know my voice, if you lay down your arms immediately, and submit, you shall have your lives, all but Will¹²⁾ Atkins."

Upon this Will Atkins cried out, "For God's sake, captain, give me quarter; what have I done? They have all been as bad as I;" which, by the way, was not true neither; for, it seems, this Will Atkins was the first man that laid hold¹³⁾ of the captain, when they first mutinied, and used him barbarously, in tying his hands, and giving him injurious language¹⁴⁾. However, the captain told him he must lay down his arms at discretion, and trust to the governor's mercy; by which he meant me, for they all called me governor. In a word, they all laid down their arms, and begged their lives; and I sent the man that had parleyed with them, and two more who bound them all; and then my great army of fifty men, which, particularly with those three, were all but eight, came up and seized upon them all, and upon their boat; only that I kept myself and one more out of sight for reasons of state¹⁵⁾.

Our next work was to repair the boat, and think of seizing the ship; and as for the captain, now he had leisure to parley with them; he expostulated with them upon the villany of their practices with him, and at length upon the further wickedness of their design, and how certainly it must bring them to misery and distress in the end, and perhaps to the gallows. They all appeared very penitent, and begged hard for their lives. As for that, he told them they were none of his prisoners, but the commander's of the island; that they thought they had set him on shore in a barren, uninhabited island; but it had pleased God so to direct them, that it was inhabited, and that the governor was an Englishman; that he might hang them all there, if he pleased; but as he had given them all quarter, he supposed he would send them to England, to be dealt with there as justice required, except Atkins, whom he was commanded by the governor to advise to prepare for death, for that he would be hanged in the morning.

¹²⁾ *Will* = *William*. — ¹³⁾ *to lay hold of* = Hand anlegen, ergreifen, angreifen. — ¹⁴⁾ *to give injurious language* = beleidigende Reden führen. — ¹⁵⁾ *for reasons of state* = aus Staatsraison, aus tiefer liegenden Gründen.

Though this was all a fiction of his own, yet it had its desired effect: Atkins fell upon his knees, to beg the captain to intercede with the governor for his life; and all the rest begged of him, for God's sake, that they might not be sent to England.

It now occurred to me, that the time of our deliverance was come, and that it would be a most easy thing to bring these fellows in to be hearty in getting possession of the ship; so I retired in the dark from them, that they might not see what kind of a governor they had, and called the captain to me: when I called, as at a good distance, one of the men was ordered to speak again, and say to the captain, "Captain, the commander calls for you;" and presently the captain replied, "Tell his excellency I am just a coming." This more perfectly amused them, and they all believed that the commander was just by with his fifty men. Upon the captain's coming to me, I told him my project for seizing the ship, which he liked of wonderfully well, and resolved to put it in execution the next morning. But, in order to execute it with more art, and to be secure of success, I told him we must divide the prisoners, and that he should go and take Atkins, and two more of the worst of them, and send them pinioned to the cave where the others lay. This was committed to Friday, and the two men who came on shore with the captain. They conveyed them to the cave, as to a prison: and it was, indeed, a dismal place, especially to men in their condition. The others I ordered to my bower, as I called it, of which I have given a full description; and as it was fenced in, and they pinioned, the place was secure enough considering they were upon their behaviour¹⁶).

To these in the morning I sent the captain, who was to enter into a parley with them; in a word, to try them, and tell me whether he thought they might be trusted or no¹⁷) to go on board and surprise the ship. He talked to them of the injury done him, of the condition they were brought to; and that though the governor had given them quarter for their lives as to the present action, yet that if they were sent to England, they would all be hanged in chains, to be sure;

¹⁶) *to be upon one's behaviour* = in Acht nehmen, dafs man sich gut aufführt. — ¹⁷) *no* für *not*, wie schon öfter.

but that if they would join in so just an attempt as to recover the ship, he would have the governor's engagement for their pardon.

LVI. — Any one may guess how readily such a proposal would be accepted by men in their condition; they fell down on their knees to the captain, and promised, with the deepest imprecations, that they would be faithful to him to the last drop, and that they should owe their lives to him, and would go with him all over the world; that they would own him for a father to them as long as they lived. "Well," says the captain, "I must go and tell the governor what you say, and see what I can do to bring him to consent to it." So he brought me an account of the temper he found them in, and that he verily believed they would be faithful. However, that we might be very secure, I told him he should go back again and choose out five of them, and tell them, that they might see he did not want men, that he would take out those five to be his assistants, and that the governor would keep the other two, and the three that were sent prisoners to the castle, my cave, as hostages for the fidelity of those five; and that if they proved unfaithful in the execution, the five hostages should be hanged in chains alive on the shore. This looked severe, and convinced them that the governor was in earnest; however, they had no way left them¹⁾ but to accept it; and it was now the business of the prisoners, as much as of the captain, to persuade the other five to do their duty.

Our strength was now thus ordered for the expedition: first, The captain, his mate, and passenger: second, Then the two prisoners of the first gang, to whom, having their character²⁾ from the captain, I had given their liberty, and trusted them with arms: third, The other two who³⁾ I had kept till now in my power pinioned, but, on the captain's motion, had now released: fourth, The single man taken in the boat: fifth, These five released at last; so that they were thirteen in all, besides five we kept prisoners in the cave, and the two hostages.

I asked the captain if he was willing to venture with these hands on board the ship; for as for me and my man Friday,

LVI. — 1) *they had no way left them* = ihnen blieb kein anderer Ausweg übrig. — 2) *character* = Kennzeichnung, Zeugnis. — 3) *who* wiederum für *whom*.

I did not think it was proper for us to stir, having seven men left behind; and it was employment enough for us to keep them asunder and supply them with victuals. As to the five in the cave, I resolved to keep them fast, but Friday went in twice a-day to them, to supply them with necessaries; and I made the other two carry provisions to a certain distance, where Friday was to take it.

When I showed myself to the two hostages, it was with the captain, who told them I was the person the governor had ordered to look after them; and that it was the governor's pleasure they should not stir any where but by my direction; that if they did, they should be fetched into the castle, and be laid in irons: so that as we never suffered them to see me as governor, so I now appeared as another person, and spoke of the governor, the garrison, the castle, and the like, upon all occasions.

The captain now had no difficulty before him, but to furnish his two boats, stop the breach of one, and man them. He made his passenger captain of one, with four other men; and himself, and his mate, and five more, went in the other; and they contrived their business very well, for they came up to the ship about midnight. As soon as they came within call of the ship, he made Robinson hail them, and tell them they had brought off the men and the boat, but that it was a long time before they had found them, and the like, holding them in a chat⁴⁾ till they came to the ship's side; when the captain and the mate entering first, with their arms, immediately knocked down the second mate and carpenter with the butt-end of their muskets, being very faithfully seconded by their men; they secured all the rest that were upon the main and quarter-decks, and began to fasten the hatches⁵⁾, to keep them down who were below; when the other boat and their men entering at the fore-chains⁶⁾, secured the forecastle of the ship, and the scuttle⁷⁾ which went down into the cook-room, making three men they found there prisoners. When this was done, and all safe upon deck, the captain ordered the mate,

⁴⁾ *to hold in a chat* = in ein Gespräch verwickeln. — ⁵⁾ *to fasten the hatches* = die Luken schließen (welche auf das Verdeck führen). — ⁶⁾ Cf. IX, 22. — ⁷⁾ *scuttle* ist die Springluke, eine lose Luke.

with three men, to break into the round-house⁸⁾, where the new rebel captain lay, and having taken alarm, was gotten up, and with two men and a boy had gotten fire-arms in their hands; and when the mate, with a crow, split open the door, the new captain and his men fired boldly among them, and wounded the mate with a musket ball, which broke his arm, and wounded two more of the men, but killed nobody. The mate calling for help, rushed, however, into the round-house, wounded as he was, and with his pistol shot the new captain through the head, the bullet entering at his mouth, and came out again behind one of his ears, so that he never spoke a word; upon which the rest yielded, and the ship was taken effectually, without any more lives lost.

As soon as the ship was thus secured, the captain ordered seven guns to be fired, which was the signal agreed upon with me to give me notice of his success, which you may be sure I was very glad to hear, having sat watching upon the shore for it till near two o'clock in the morning. Having thus heard the signal plainly, I laid me down; and it having been a day of great fatigue to me, I slept very sound, till I was something surprised with the noise of a gun; and presently starting up, I heard a man call me by the name of Governor, Governor, and presently I knew the captain's voice; when climbing up to the top of the hill, there he stood, and pointing to the ship, he embraced me in his arms. "My dear friend und deliverer," says he, "there's your ship, for she is all yours, and so are we, and all that belong to her." I cast my eyes to the ship, and there she rode⁹⁾ within little more than half a mile of the shore; for they had weighed her anchor as soon as they were masters of her, and the weather being fair, had brought her to an anchor just against the mouth of the little creek; and the tide being up, the captain had brought the pinnace in near the place where I at first landed my rafts, and so landed just at my door. I was at first ready to sink down with surprise; for I saw my deliverance, indeed, visibly put into my hands, all things easy, and a large ship just ready to carry me away whither I pleased to go. At first, for some time, I was not able to answer

⁸⁾ *round-house* = die Hütte (das oberste Stockwerk des Hinterschiffes). — ⁹⁾ *to ride (at anchor)* = vor Anker liegen.

him one word; but as he had taken me in his arms, I held fast by him, or I should have fallen to the ground. He perceived the surprise, and immediately pulls a bottle out of his pocket, and gave me a dram of cordial¹⁰⁾, which he had brought on purpose for me. After I had drank it, I sat down upon the ground; and though it brought me to myself, yet it was a good while before I could speak a word to him. All this while the poor man was in as great an ecstasy as I, only not under any surprise, as I was; and he said a thousand kind tender things to me, to compose me and bring me to myself: but such was the flood of joy in my breast, that it put all my spirits into confusion; at last it broke out into tears; and in a little while after I recovered my speech. Then I took my turn¹¹⁾, and embraced him as my deliverer, and we rejoiced together. I told him I looked upon him as a man sent from Heaven to deliver me, and that the whole transaction¹²⁾ seemed to be a chain of wonders; that such things as these were the testimonies we had of a secret hand of Providence governing the world, and an evidence that the eyes of an infinite¹³⁾ power could search into the remotest corner of the world, and send help to the miserable whenever he pleased. I forgot not to lift up my heart in thankfulness to Heaven; and what heart could forbear to bless him, who had not only in a miraculous manner provided for one in such a wilderness, and in such a desolate condition, but from whom every deliverance must always be acknowledged¹⁴⁾ to proceed?

When we had talked a while, the captain told me he had brought me some little refreshment, such as the ship afforded, and such as the wretches that had been so long his masters had not plundered him of. Upon this he called aloud to the boat, and bade his men bring the things ashore that were for the governor; and, indeed, it was a present as if I had been one, not that was to be carried away along with them, but as if I had been to dwell upon the island still, and they were to go without me. First, he had brought me a case of bottles full of excellent cordial waters, six large bottles of Madeira¹⁵⁾ wine, the bottles held two quarts a-piece, two

¹⁰⁾ Cf. XXXIX, 10. — ¹¹⁾ „Dann kam ich an die Reihe“. — ¹²⁾ *transaction* hier = Vorgang. — ¹³⁾ Cf. IX, 19. — ¹⁴⁾ anerkanntermaßen. — ¹⁵⁾ Spr. mădă'-ră.

pounds of excellent good tobacco, twelve good pieces of the ship's beef, and six pieces of pork, with a bag of peas, and about a hundred weight of biscuit; he brought me also a box of sugar, a box of flour, a bag full of lemons¹⁶⁾, and two bottles of lime juice¹⁷⁾, and abundance of other things. But, besides these, and what was a thousand times more useful to me, he brought me six clean new shirts, six very good neckcloths, two pair of gloves, one pair of shoes, a hat, and one pair of stockings, and a very good suit of clothes of his own, which had been worn but very little; in a word, he clothed me from head to foot. It was a very kind and agreeable present, as any one may imagine, to one in my circumstances; but never any thing in the world of that kind so unpleasant, awkward, and uneasy, as it was to me to wear such clothes at their first putting on.

LVII. — After these ceremonies passed, and after all his good things were brought into my little apartment, we began to consult what was to be done with the prisoners we had; for it was worth considering whether we might venture to take them away with us or no, especially two of them, whom he knew to be incorrigible and refractory to the last degree; and the captain said he knew they were such rogues, that there was no obliging them; and if he did¹⁾ carry them away, it must be in irons, as malefactors, to be delivered over to justice at the first English colony he could come at; and I found that the captain himself was very anxious about it. Upon this I told him, that if he desired it, I would undertake to bring the two men he spoke of to make it their own request that he should leave them upon the island. "I should be very glad of that," says the captain, "with all my heart." — "Well," says I, "I will send for them up, and talk with them for you." So I caused Friday and the two hostages, for they were now discharged, their comrades having performed their promise; I say, I caused them to go to the cave, and bring up the five men, pinioned as they were, to the bower, and keep them there till I came. After some time, I came thither dressed in my new habit; and now I was called governor again. Being all²⁾ met, and the captain with me, I caused the men to

¹⁶⁾ XX, 18. — ¹⁷⁾ *lime juice*, spr. lim'-djùis, Limonensaft.

LVII. — ¹⁾ XXX, 8. — ²⁾ Welcher Kasus?!

be brought before me, and I told them I had had a full account of their villanous behaviour to the captain, and how they had run away with the ship, and were preparing to commit farther robberies, but that Providence had ensnared them in their own ways, and that they were fallen into the pit which they had digged for others. I let them know that by my direction the ship had been seized; that she lay now in the road; and they might see, by and by, that their new captain had received the reward of his villany, for that they might see him hanging at the yard-arm: that as to them, I wanted to know what they had to say, why I should not execute them as pirates, taken in the fact, as by my commission they could not doubt I had authority to do.

One of them answered in the name of the rest, that they had nothing to say but this, that when they were taken, the captain promised them their lives, and they humbly implored my mercy. But I told them I knew not what mercy to show them; for as for myself, I had resolved to quit the island with all my men, and had taken passage with the captain to go for England; and as for the captain, he could not carry them to England other³⁾ than as prisoners, in irons, to be tried for mutiny, and running away with the ship; the consequence of which, they must needs know, would be the gallows; so that I could not tell which was best for them, unless they had a mind to take their fate in the island; if they desired that, I did not care, as I had liberty to leave it, I had some inclination to give them their lives, if they thought they could shift⁴⁾ on shore. They seemed very thankful for it, said they would much rather venture to stay there than be carried to England to be hanged; so I left it on that issue.

However, the captain seemed to make some difficulty of it, as if he durst not leave them there. Upon this I seemed a little angry with the captain, and told him that they were my prisoners, not his; and that seeing I had offered them so much favour, I would be as good as my word; and that if he did not think fit to consent to it I would set them at liberty, as I found them; and if he did not like it, he might take them again if he could catch them. Upon this they ap-

³⁾ *other* für *otherwise*. — ⁴⁾ *to shift* hier = sich durchschlagen, durchkommen.

peared very thankful, and I accordingly set them at liberty, and bade them retire into the woods to the place whence they came, and I would leave them some fire-arms, some ammunition, and some directions how they should live very well, if they thought fit. Upon this I prepared to go on board the ship; but told the captain that I would stay that night to prepare my things, and desired him to go on board, in the mean time, and keep all right in the ship, and send the boat on shore the next day for me; ordering him, in the mean time, to cause the new captain, who was killed, to be hanged at the yard-arm, that these men might see him.

When the captain was gone, I sent for the men up to me to my apartment, and entered seriously into discourse with them of their circumstances. I told them I thought they had made a right choice; that if the captain carried them away, they would certainly be hanged. I showed them the new captain hanging at the yard-arm of the ship, and told them they had nothing less to expect.

When they had all declared their willingness to stay, I then told them I would let them into the story of my living there, and put them into the way of making it easy to them; accordingly, I gave them the whole history of the place, and of my coming to it; showed them my fortifications, the way I made my bread, planted my corn, cured my grapes; and, in a word, all that was necessary to make them easy. I told them the story also of the sixteen Spaniards that were to be expected, for whom I left a letter, and made them promise to treat them in common⁵⁾ with themselves.

I left them my fire-arms, viz. five muskets, three fowling-pieces, and three swords. I had above a barrel and a half of powder left; for after the first year or two I used but little, and wasted none. I gave them a description of the way I managed the goats, and directions to milk and fatten them, and to make both butter and cheese: in a word, I gave them every part of my own story; and told them I would prevail with the captain to leave them two barrels of gun-powder more, and some garden seeds⁶⁾, which I told them I would have been very glad of: also I gave them the bag of

⁵⁾ *in common* = in Gemeinschaft, als Gleichgestellte. —
⁶⁾ *garden seeds* = Sämereien für den Garten.

peas which the captain had brought me to eat, and bade them be sure to sow and increase them.

Having done all this, I left them the next day, and went on board the ship. We prepared immediately to sail, but did not weigh that night. The next morning early, two of the five men came swimming to the ship's side, and making a most lamentable complaint of the other three, begged to be taken into the ship, for God's sake, for they should be murdered, and begged the captain to take them on board, though he hanged them immediately. Upon this, the captain pretended to have no power without me; but after some difficulty, and after their solemn promises of amendment, they were taken on board, and were some time after soundly whipped and pickled⁷⁾: after which they proved very honest and quiet fellows.

Some time after this, the boat was ordered on shore, the tide being up, with the things promised to the men; to which the captain, at my intercession, caused their chests and clothes to be added, which they took, and were very thankful for. I also encouraged them, by telling them that if it lay in my power to send any vessel to take them in, I would not forget them.

When I took leave of this island, I carried on board, for reliques⁸⁾, the great goat-skin cap I had made, my umbrella, and one of my parrots; also I forgot not to take the money I formerly mentioned, which had lain by me so long useless, that it was grown rusty or tarnished⁹⁾, and could hardly pass for silver, till it had been a little rubbed and handled; as also the money I found in the wreck of the Spanish ship. And thus I left the island, the 19th of December, as I found by the ship's account, in the year 1686, after I had been upon it eight and twenty years, two months, and nineteen days; beeing delivered from this second captivity the same day of the month that I first made my escape in the long-boat, from among the Moors of Sallee. In this vessel, after a long voyage, I arrived in England the 11th of June, in the year 1687, having been thirty and five years absent.

⁷⁾ *soundly whipped and pickled* = gründlich verhauen und versohlt. — ⁸⁾ Spr. *rél'-îks*. — ⁹⁾ *tarnished* = angelaufen.

LVIII. — When I came to England, I was as perfect a stranger to all the world as if I had never been known there. My benefactor and faithful steward, who I had left in trust with my money, was alive, but had had great misfortunes in the world; was become a widow the second time, and very low in the world. I made her easy as to what she owed me, assuring her I would give her no trouble; but on the contrary, in gratitude to her former care and faithfulness to me, I relieved her as my little stock would afford; which, at that time, would indeed allow me to do but little for her; but I assured her I would never forget her former kindness to me; nor did I forget her when I had sufficient to help her, as shall be observed in its place. I went down afterwards into Yorkshire; but my father was dead, and my mother and all the family extinct, except that I found two sisters, and two of the children of one of my brothers; and as I had been long ago given over for dead, there had been no provision made for me: so that, in a word, I found nothing to relieve or assist me; and that little money I had would not do much for me as to settling¹⁾ in the world.

I met with one piece of gratitude, indeed, which I did not expect; and this was, that the master of the ship who I had so happily delivered, and by the same means saved the ship and cargo, having given a very handsome account to the owners of the manner how I had saved the lives of the men, and the ship, they invited me to meet them, and some other merchants concerned, and all together made me a very handsome compliment upon the subject, and a present of almost 200*l.* sterling²⁾.

But after making several reflections upon the circumstances of my life, and how little way this would go towards settling me in the world, I resolved to go to Lisbon, and see if I might not come by some information of the state of my plantation in the Brasils, and of what was become of my partner, who, I had reason to suppose, had some years now given me over for dead. With this view I took shipping for Lisbon, where I arrived in April following; my man Friday accom-

LVIII. — ¹⁾ *to settle*, sich niederlassen (zur Ruhe setzen), hängt zusammen mit *to set*, ferner mit setzen, Sessel etc. — ²⁾ Cf. III, 19.

panying me very honestly in all these ramblings, and proving a most faithful servant upon all occasions. When I came to Lisbon, I found out, by inquiry, and to my particular satisfaction, my old friend the captain of the ship who first took me up at sea off the shore of Africa. He was now grown old, and had left off the sea, having put his son, who was far from a young man, into his ship, and who still used the Brasil trade³⁾. The old man did not know me; and, indeed, I hardly knew him: but I soon brought him to my remembrance, and as soon brought myself to his remembrance, when I told him who I was.

After some passionate expressions of our old acquaintance, I inquired, you may be sure, after my plantation and my partner. The old man told me he had not been in the Brasils for about nine years; but that he could assure me, that when he came away my partner was living; but the trustees⁴⁾, whom I had joined with him to take cognizance⁵⁾ of my part, were both dead: that, however, he believed I would have a very good account of the improvement of the plantation; for that upon the general belief of my being cast away and drowned, my trustees had given in the account of the produce of my part of the plantation to the procurator-fiscal⁶⁾, who had appropriated it, in case I never came to claim it, one-third to the king, and twothirds to the monastery of St. Augustine, to be expended for the benefit of the poor, and for the conversion of the Indians to the Catholic faith; but that if I appeared, or anyone for me, to claim the inheritance, it would be restored; only that the improvement or annual production, being distributed to charitable uses, could not be restored; but he assured me that the steward of the king's revenue from lands, and the provedore⁷⁾, or steward of the monastery, had taken great care all along that the incumbent⁸⁾, that is to say, my partner, gave every year a faithful account of the produce, of which they received duly my moiety⁹⁾. I asked him if

³⁾ *to use the Brasil trade* = Handel mit Brasilien treiben. —

⁴⁾ *trustee* = Betrauter, Bevollmächtigter, von *to trust*. — ⁵⁾ *to take cognizance* = Erkundigungen einziehen; NB. spr. kóg'-nèzúns.

— ⁶⁾ *procurator-fiscal* = fiskalischer, d. h. landesherrlicher, Verwalter. — ⁷⁾ *provedore*, spr. prōvèdōr', = Rentmeister; das Wort kommt aus dem Spanischen. — ⁸⁾ *incumbent* = der verpflichtete Teil. — ⁹⁾ *moiety*, spr. mōi'-ètý, = frz. *moitié* = Hälfte, Teil, Anteil.

he knew to what height of improvement he had brought the plantation, and whether he thought it might be worth looking after; or whether, on my going thither, I should meet with no obstruction¹⁰⁾ to my possessing my just right in the moiety. He told me he could not tell exactly to what degree the plantation was improved; but this he knew, that my partner was grown exceeding rich upon the enjoying but one half of it; and that, to the best of his remembrance, he had heard that the king's third of my part, which was, it seems, granted away to some other monastery or religious house, amounted to above two hundred moidores a-year: that as to my being restored to a quiet possession of it, there was no question to be made of that, my partner being alive to witness my title, and my name being also enrolled in the register of the country; also he told me, that the survivors of my two trustees were very fair honest people, and very wealthy; and he believed I would not only have their assistance for putting me in possession, but would find a very considerable sum of money in their hands for my account, being the produce of the farm while their fathers held the trust¹¹⁾, and before it was given up, as above; which, as he remembered, was for about twelve years.

I showed myself a little concerned¹²⁾ and uneasy at this account, and inquired of the old captain how it came to pass that the trustees should thus dispose of my effects, when he knew that I had made my will, and had made him, the Portuguese captain, my universal heir, &c.

He told me, that was true; but that as there was no proof of my being dead, he could not act as executor, until some certain account should come of my death; and, that besides, he was not willing to intermeddle with a thing so remote; that it was true he had registered my will, and put in his claim; and could he have given any account of my being dead or alive, he would have acted by procuration, and taken possession of the ingenio, so they called the sugar-house¹³⁾, and had given his son, who was now at the Brasils, order to do it. "But," says the old man, "I have one piece of news to

¹⁰⁾ *to meet with no obstruction* = auf kein Hindernis stoßen.
 — ¹¹⁾ *to hold the trust* = die Verwaltung haben, Bevollmächtigter sein. — ¹²⁾ Cf. LI, 11. — ¹³⁾ Cf. VII, 7.

tell you, which perhaps may not be so acceptable to you as the rest; and that is, believing you were lost, and all the world believing so also, your partner and trustees did offer to account to me, in your name, for six or eight of the first years' profits, which I received; but there being at that time," says he, "great disbursements¹⁴⁾ for increasing the works, building an ingenio, and buying slaves, it did not amount to near so much as afterwards it produced; however," says the old man, "I shall give you a true account of what I have received in all, and how I have disposed of it."

After a few days' farther conference with this ancient friend, he brought me an account of the six first years' income of my plantation, signed by my partner and the merchant-trustees, being always delivered in goods, viz. tobacco in roll, and sugar in chests, besides rum, molasses¹⁵⁾, &c. which is the consequence¹⁶⁾ of a sugar-work; and I found, by this account, that every year the income considerably increased; but, as above, the disbursements being large, the sum at first was small; however, the old man let me see that he was debtor to me four hundred and seventy moidores of gold, besides sixty chests of sugar, and fifteen double rolls of tobacco, which were lost in his ship; he having been shipwrecked coming home to Lisbon, about eleven years after my leaving the place. The good man then began to complain of his misfortunes, and how he had been obliged to make use of my money to recover his losses, and buy him a share in a new ship. "However, my old friend," says he, "you shall not want a supply in your necessity; and as soon as my son returns, you shall be fully satisfied." Upon this, he pulls out an old pouch¹⁷⁾, and gives me one hundred and sixty Portugal moidores¹⁸⁾ in gold; and giving me the writings of his title to the ship, which his son was gone to the Brasils in, of which he was a quarter-part owner, and his son another, he puts them both into my hands for security of the rest.

I was too much moved with the honesty and kindness of the poor man to be able to bear this; and remembering what he had done for me, how he had taken me up at sea, and

¹⁴⁾ *disbursements* = Ausgaben; Gegensatz *imbursements*. —

¹⁵⁾ *molasses* = Melasse, Sirup. — ¹⁶⁾ *cónsequence* hier = Ergebnis.

— ¹⁷⁾ Cf. IV, 26. — ¹⁸⁾ 1 moidore, spr. moi'-dōr = 27 Mk.

how generously he had used me on all occasions, and particularly how sincere a friend he was now to me, I could hardly refrain weeping at what he had said to me; therefore first I asked him if his circumstances admitted him to spare¹⁹⁾ so much money at that time, and if it would not straiten²⁰⁾ him? He told me he could not say but it might straiten him a little; but, however, it was my money, and I might want it more than he.

Every thing the good man said was full of affection, and I could hardly refrain from tears while he spoke; in short, I took one hundred of the moidores, and called for a pen and ink to give him a receipt for them: then I returned him the rest, and told him if ever I had possession of the plantation, I would return the other to him also, as, indeed, I afterwards did; and that as to the bill of sale of his part in his son's ship, I would not take it by any means; but that if I wanted the money, I found he was honest enough to pay me; and if I did not, but came to receive what he gave me reason to expect, I would never have a penny more from him.

When this was passed, the old man began to ask me if he should put me into a method²¹⁾ to make my claim to my plantation? I told him I thought to go over to it myself. He said I might do so if I pleased; but that if I did not, there were ways enough to secure my right, and immediately to appropriate the profits to my use: and as there were ships in the river of Lisbon just ready to go away to Brasil, he made me enter my name in a public register, with his affidavit²²⁾, affirming, upon oath, that I was alive, and that I was the same person who took up the land for the planting the said plantation at first. This being regularly attested by a notary, and a procuration affixed²³⁾, he directed me to send it, with a letter of his writing, to a merchant of his acquaintance at the place; and then proposed my staying with him till an account came of the return.

LIX. — Never any thing was more honourable than the proceedings upon this procuration; for in less than seven months

¹⁹⁾ *to spare* hier = entbehren. — ²⁰⁾ *to straiten* = beengen, in Verlegenheit bringen. — ²¹⁾ *to put into a method* = eine Methode, einen Weg angeben. — ²²⁾ *affidavit* = eidlich erhärtete Aussage. — ²³⁾ *a procuration affixed* = eine Vollmacht beigegeben.

I received a large packet from the survivors of my trustees, the merchants, for whose account I went to sea, in which were the following particular letters and papers enclosed.

First, There was the account-current¹⁾ of the produce of my farm or plantation, from the year when their fathers had balanced²⁾ with my old Portugal captain, being for six years; the balance appeared to be one thousand one hundred and seventy-four moidores in my favour.

Secondly, There was the account of four years more, while they kept the effects in their hands, before the government claimed the administration, as being the effects of a person not to be found, which they called civil death; and the balance of this, the value of the plantation increasing, amounted to three thousand two hundred and forty-one moidores.

Thirdly, There was the prior of the Augustines account, who had received the profits for above fourteen years; but not being to account for what was disposed to the hospital, very honestly declared he had eight hundred and seventy-two moidores not distributed, which he acknowledged to my account; as to the king's part, that refunded³⁾ nothing.

There was a letter of my partner's, congratulating me very affectionately upon my being alive, giving me an account how the estate was improved, and what it produced a-year; with a particular of the number of squares or acres that it contained; how planted, how many slaves there were upon it, and making two and twenty crosses for blessings, told me he had said so many *Ave Marias*⁴⁾ to thank the blessed Virgin that I was alive; inviting me very passionately to come over and take possession of my own; and, in the mean time, to give him orders to whom he should deliver my effects, if I did not come myself; concluding with a hearty tender⁵⁾ of his friendship, and that of his family; and sent me, as a present, seven fine leopards' skins, which he had, it seems, received from Africa, by some other ship which he had sent thither, and who, it seems, had made a better voyage than I.

LIX. — 1) *account-current* = Kontokorrent, laufende Rechnung. — 2) *to balance* = ausgleichen, abrechnen. — 3) *to refund* = herausgeben, zurückzahlen. — 4) *Ave Maria* ist ein an die Jungfrau Maria gerichtetes Gebet der Katholiken, so genannt nach den (lateinischen) Anfangsbuchstaben: Gegrüßt seist du, Maria etc. — 5) *tender* = Anerbieten.

He sent me also five chests of excellent sweetmeats, and a hundred pieces of gold uncoined, not quite so large as moidores. By the same fleet, my two merchant trustees shipped me one thousand two hundred chests of sugar, eight hundred rolls of tobacco, and the rest of the whole account in gold.

I might well say now, indeed, that the latter end of Job⁶⁾ was better than the beginning. It is impossible to express the flutterings⁷⁾ of my very heart, when I looked over these letters, and especially when I found all my wealth about me; for as the Brasil ships come all in fleets, the same ships which brought my letters brought my goods; and the effects were safe in the river before the letters came to my hand. In a word, I turned pale, and grew sick; and had not the old man run and fetched me a cordial, I believe the sudden surprise of joy had overset nature⁸⁾, and I had died upon the spot; nay, after that, I continued very ill, and was so some hours, till a physician being sent for, and something of the real cause of my illness being known, he ordered me to be let blood; after which I had relief, and grew well; but I verily believe, if it had not been eased by a vent⁹⁾ given in that manner to the spirits, I should have died.

I was now master, all on a sudden, of above five thousand pounds sterling in money, and had an estate, as I might well call it, in the Brasils, of above a thousand pounds a-year, as sure as an estate of lands in England; and, in a word, I was in a condition which I scarce knew how to understand, or how to compose myself for the enjoyment of it. The first thing I did was to recompense my original benefactor, my good old captain, who had been first charitable to me in my distress, kind to me in the beginning, and honest to me at the end. I showed him all that was sent to me; I told him, that next to the providence of Heaven, which disposes all things, it was owing to him; and that it now lay on me to reward him; which I would do a hundred fold; so I first returned to him the hundred moidores I had received of him; then I sent for a notary, and caused him to draw up a general release or discharge for the four hundred and seventy moidores, which

⁶⁾ Cf. LIV, 11. — ⁷⁾ *flutterings* = Wallungen. — ⁸⁾ *to overset nature* = die Natur überwältigen. — ⁹⁾ *vent* = Wind, Luft, Ausweg.

he had acknowledged he owed me, in the fullest and firmest manner possible¹⁰⁾. After which I caused a procuration to be drawn, empowering him to be my receiver of the annual profits of my plantation, and appointing my partner to account to him, and make the returns by the usual fleets to him in my name; and a clause in the end, being a grant of one hundred moidores a-year to him during his life, out of the effects, and fifty moidores a-year to his son after him, for his life; and thus I requited my old man.

I was now to consider which way to steer my course next, and what to do with the estate that Providence had thus put into my hands; and, indeed, I had more care upon my head now than I had in my silent state of life in the island, where I wanted nothing but what I had, and had nothing but what I wanted; whereas I had now a great charge upon me, and my business was how to secure it. I had never a cave now to hide my money in, or a place where it might lie without lock or key, till it grew mouldy¹¹⁾ and tarnished before any body would meddle with it: on the contrary, I knew not where to put it, or whom to trust with it. My old patron, the captain, indeed, was honest, and that was the only refuge I had. In the next place, my interest in the Brasils seemed to summon me thither; but now I could not tell how to think of going thither till I had settled my affairs, and left my effects¹²⁾ in some safe hands behind me. At first I thought of my old friend the widow, who I knew was honest, and, would be just to me; but then she was in years, and but poor, and, for aught I knew, might be in debt; so that, in a word, I had no way but to go back to England myself, and take my effects with me.

It was some months, however, before I resolved upon this; and therefore, as I had rewarded the old captain fully, and to his satisfaction, who had been my former benefactor, so I began to think of my poor widow, whose husband had been my first benefactor, and she, while it was in her power, my faithful steward and instructor. So the first thing I did, I got¹³⁾ a merchant in Lisbon to write to his correspondent in London, not only to pay a bill, but to go find her out,

¹⁰⁾ Stellung?! — ¹¹⁾ *mōuldy* = schimmelig, mulstrig. — ¹²⁾ *effects* hier = Vermögen. — ¹³⁾ *to get* hier = veranlassen.

and carry her in money a hundred pounds from me, and to talk with her, and comfort her in her poverty, by telling her she should, if I lived, have a further supply: at the same time I sent my two sisters in the country each of them an hundred pounds, they being, though not in want, yet not in very good circumstances; one having been married and left a widow; and the other having a husband not so kind to her as he should be. But among all my relations or acquaintances, I could not yet pitch upon one to whom I durst commit the gross of my stock, that I might go away to the Brasils, and leave things safe behind me; and this greatly perplexed me.

I had once a mind to have gone to the Brasils, and have settled myself there, for I was, as it were, naturalized to the place: but I had some little scruple¹⁴⁾ in my mind about religion, which insensibly drew me back, of which I shall say more presently. However, it was not religion that kept me from going there for the present; and as I had made no scruple of being openly of the religion of the country all the while I was among them, so neither did I yet; only that, now and then, having of late thought more of it than formerly, when I began to think of living and dying among them, I began to regret my having professed a papist¹⁵⁾, and thought it might not be the best religion to die with.

But, as I have said, this was not the main thing that kept me from going to the Brasils, but that really I did not know with whom to leave my effects behind me; so I resolved, at last, to go to England with it, where, if I arrived, I concluded I should make some acquaintance, or find some relations that would be faithful to me; and, accordingly, I prepared to go for England with all my wealth.

In order to prepare things for my going home, I first, the Brasil fleet being just going away, resolved to give answers suitable to the just and faithful account of things I had from thence: and, first, to the prior¹⁶⁾ of St. Augustine I wrote a letter full of thanks for his just dealings, and the offer of the eight hundred and seventy-two moidores which were undisposed of, which I desired might be given, five hundred to

¹⁴⁾ Spr. ù. — ¹⁵⁾ *papist* = Katholiken. — ¹⁶⁾ *prior* = Vorsteher eines Klosters, der nicht unter einem Abte steht, diesem im Range aber folgt. NB. lat. *prior* = vorangehend der Zeit, dem Range nach.

the monastery, and three hundred and seventy-two to the poor, as the prior should direct; desiring the good padre's¹⁷⁾ prayers for me, and the like. I wrote next a letter of thanks to my two trustees, with all the acknowledgment that so much justice and honesty called for; as for sending them any present, they were far above having any occasion¹⁸⁾ for it. Lastly, I wrote to my partner, acknowledging his industry in the improving the plantation, and his integrity in increasing the stock of the works; giving him instructions for his future government of my part, according to the powers I had left with my old patron, to whom I desired him to send whatever became due to me, till he should hear from me more particularly; assuring him that it was my intention not only to come to him, but to settle myself there for the remainder of my life. To this I added a very handsome present of some Italian silks for his wife and two daughters, for such the captain's son informed me he had; with two pieces of fine English broad-cloth¹⁹⁾, the best I could get in Lisbon, five pieces of black baize²⁰⁾, and some Flanders lace²¹⁾ of a good value.

LX. — Having thus settled my affairs, sold my cargo, and turned all my effects into good bills of exchange, my next difficulty was, which way to go to England; I had been accustomed enough to the sea, and yet I had a strange aversion to going to England by sea at that time; and though I could give no reason for it, yet the difficulty increased upon me so much, that though I had once shipped my baggage in order to go, yet I altered my mind, and that not once, but two or three times.

Having been thus harassed in my thoughts, my old pilot, to whom I communicated every thing, pressed me earnestly not to go by sea, but either to go by land to the Groyne¹⁾, and cross over the Bay of Biscay to Rochelle, from whence it was but an easy and safe journey by land to Paris, and

¹⁷⁾ *padre*, Pater, Mönch, ist ein spanisches Wort. — ¹⁸⁾ *occasion* = Verwendung. — ¹⁹⁾ *broad-cloth* ist eine Art feinen Tuches, seiner Breite wegen so genannt. — ²⁰⁾ *baize* = Boye (ein wollenes Zeug). — ²¹⁾ *lace of good value* = Spitzen von hohem Werte.

LX. — ¹⁾ *the Grōyne* bezeichnet den Fluß, den Hafen und die Stadt Corunna in Spanien.

so to Calais and Dover; or to go up to Madrid, and so all the way by land through France. In a word, I was so prepossessed against my going by sea at all, except from Calais to Dover, that I resolved to travel all the way by land; which, as I was not in haste, and did not value the charge²⁾, was by much the pleasanter way: and to make it more so, my old captain brought an English gentleman, the son of a merchant in Lisbon, who was willing to travel with me; after which we picked up two more English merchants also, and two young Portuguese gentlemen, the last going to Paris only; so that we were in all six of us, and five servants; the two merchants and the two Portuguese contenting themselves with one servant between two, to save the charge; and as for me, I got an English sailor to travel with me as a servant, besides my man Friday, who was too much a stranger to be capable of supplying the place of a servant on the road.

In this manner I set out from Lisbon; and our company being very well mounted and armed, we made a little troop, whereof they did me the honour to call me captain, as well because I was the oldest man, as because I had two servants, and, indeed, was the original³⁾ of the whole journey.

As I have troubled you with none of my sea journals, so I shall trouble you now with none of my land journal; but some adventures that happened to us in this tedious and difficult journey I must not omit.

When we came to Madrid, we being all of us strangers to Spain, were willing to stay some time to see the court of Spain, and to see what was worth observing; but it being the latter part of the summer, we hastened away, and set out from Madrid about the middle of October; but when we came to the edge of Navarre, we were alarmed at several towns on the way, with an account that so much snow was fallen on the French side of the mountains, that several travellers were obliged to come back to Pampeluna, after having attempted, at an extreme hazard⁴⁾, to pass on.

When we came to Pampeluna itself, we found it so indeed; and to me, that had been always used to a hot climate, and

²⁾ *to value the charge* = die Ausgabe scheuen. — ³⁾ *original* hier = *origin* = Veranstalter. — ⁴⁾ *at an extreme hazard* = mit äußerster Waghalsigkeit.

indeed to countries where we could scarce bear any clothes on, the cold was insufferable; nor indeed, was it more painful than it was surprising, to come but ten days before out of old Castile, where the weather was not only warm, but very hot, and immediately to feel a wind from the Pyrenean mountains so very keen, so severely cold, as to be intolerable, and to endanger benumbing⁵⁾ and perishing of our fingers and toes.

Poor Friday was really frightened when he saw the mountains all covered with snow, and felt cold weather, which he had never seen or felt before in his life. To mend the matter, when we came to Pampeluna, it continued snowing with so much violence, and so long, that the people said winter was come before its time; and the roads, which were difficult before, were now quite impassable; for, in a word, the snow lay in some places too thick for us to travel and being not hard frozen, as is the case in the northern countries, there was no going without being in danger of being buried alive every step. We stayed no less than twenty days at Pampeluna; when seeing the winter coming on, and no likelihood of its being better, for it was the severest winter all over Europe that had been known in the memory of man, I proposed that we should all go away to Fontarabia⁶⁾, and there take shipping for Bordeaux, which was a very little voyage. But while we were considering this, there came in four French gentlemen, who having been stopped on the French side of the passes, as we were on the Spanish, had found out a guide, who, traversing the country near the head of Languedoc, had brought them over the mountains by such ways, that they were not much incommoded with the snow; and where they met with snow in any quantity, they said it was frozen hard enough to bear them and their horses. We sent for this guide, who told us he would undertake to carry us the same way with no hazard from the snow, provided we were armed sufficiently to protect ourselves from wild beasts; for he said, upon these great snows⁷⁾ it was frequent for some wolves to show themselves at the foot of the mountains, being made ravenous for want of food, the ground being covered with snow. We told him we were well enough prepared for such

⁵⁾ Cf. XLIX, 3. — ⁶⁾ An der Mündung des Grenzflusses Bidassoa. — ⁷⁾ *snows* = Schneemassen.

creatures as they were, if he would ensure us from a kind of two-legged wolves, which, we were told, we were in most danger from, especially on the French side of the mountains. He satisfied us there was no danger of that kind in the way that we were to go; so we readily agreed to follow him, as did also twelve other gentlemen, with their servants, some French, some Spanish, who, as I said, had attempted to go, and were obliged to come back again.

Accordingly, we all set out from Pampeluna, with our guide, on the 15th of November; and, indeed, I was surprised, when, instead of going forward, he came directly back with us on the same road that we came from Madrid, about twenty miles; when having passed two rivers, and come into the plain country, we found ourselves in a warm climate again, where the country was pleasant, and no snow to be seen; but on a sudden, turning to his left, he approached the mountains another way; and though it is true the hills and precipices looked dreadful, yet he made so many tours, such meanders⁸⁾, and led us by such winding ways, that we were insensibly passed the height of the mountains without being much encumbered with the snow; and, all on a sudden, he showed us the pleasant fruitful provinces of Languedoc and Gascoigne⁹⁾, all green and flourishing, though, indeed, they were at a great distance, and we had some rough way to pass yet.

We were a little uneasy, however, when we found it snowed one whole day and a night so fast, that we could not travel; but he bid us be easy; we should soon be past it all; we found, indeed, that we began to descend every day, and to come more north than before; and so depending upon our guide, we went on.

It was about two hours before night, when our guide being something before us, and not just in sight, out rushed three monstrous wolves, and after them a bear, out of a hollow way adjoining to a thick wood; two of the wolves flew upon the guide, and had he been half a mile before us, he had been devoured indeed before we could have helped him; one of

⁸⁾ *mèánders*, auf der zweiten betont, = Windungen, so genannt von dem vielfach gewundenen Laufe des Flusses Mäander in Kleinasien, der auch bei uns sprichwörtlich geworden ist. — ⁹⁾ Spr. *gáskoin'*.

them fastened upon his horse, and the other attacked the man with that violence, that he had not time, or not presence of mind enough, to draw his pistol, but hallooed and cried out to us most lustily¹⁰⁾. My man Friday being next me, I bade him ride up, and see what was the matter. As soon as Friday came in sight of the man, he hallooed out as loud as the other, "O master! O master!" but, like a bold fellow, rode directly up to the poor man, and with his pistol shot the wolf that attacked him in the head.

LXI. — It was happy for the poor man that it was my man Friday; for he having been used to that kind of creature in his country, had no fear upon him, but went close up to him and shot him, as above; whereas any of us would have fired at a farther distance, and have perhaps either missed the wolf, or endangered¹⁾ shooting the man.

But it was enough to have terrified a bolder man than I; and, indeed, it alarmed all our company, when, with the noise of Friday's pistol, we heard on both sides the dismallest²⁾ howling of wolves; and the noise, redoubled by the echo of the mountains, that it was to us as if there had been a prodigious multitude of them; and perhaps there was not such a few as that we had no cause of apprehensions; however, as Friday had killed this wolf, the other that had fastened upon³⁾ the horse left him⁴⁾ immediately, and fled, having happily fastened upon his head, where the bosses⁵⁾ of the bridle hat stuck in his teeth, so that he had not done him much hurt. The man indeed was most hurt; for the raging creature had bit him twice, once in the arm, and the other time a little above his knee; and he was just as it were tumbling down by the disorder of his horse, when Friday came up and shot the wolf.

It is easy to suppose that at the noise of Friday's pistol we all mended our pace⁶⁾, and rode up as fast as the way, which was very difficult, would give us leave, to see what

¹⁰⁾ *lustily* nicht etwa = lustiglich, sondern = gewaltiglich, von *lusty* = kräftig, stark.

LXI. — ¹⁾ *to endanger* = Gefahr laufen. — ²⁾ *dismal* = schaurig, das Wort wird trotzdem auf der ersten betont. — ³⁾ *to fasten upon* = sich festbeißen an. — ⁴⁾ Genus?! — ⁵⁾ *bosses* sind die Buckeln, der Messingbeschlag. — ⁶⁾ *to mend one's pace* = den Schritt aufbessern, beschleunigen.

was the matter. As soon as we came clear of the trees, which blinded us before, we saw clearly what had been the case, and how Friday had disengaged the poor guide, though we did not presently discern what kind of creature it was he had killed.

But never was a fight managed so hardily, and in such a surprising manner, as that which followed between Friday and the bear, which gave us all, though at first we were surprised and afraid for him, the greatest diversion imaginable. As the bear is a heavy, clumsy creature, and does not gallop as the wolf does, who is swift and light, so he has two particular qualities, which generally are the rule of his actions: first, as to men, who are not his proper prey, I say, not his proper prey, because, though I cannot say what excessive hunger might do, which was now their case, the ground being all covered with snow; but as to men, he does not usually attempt them, unless they first attack him; on the contrary, if you meet him in the woods, if you do not meddle with him, he will not meddle with you; but then you must take care to be very civil to him, and give him the road⁷⁾, for he is a very nice⁸⁾ gentleman; he will not go a step out of his way for a prince; nay, if you are really afraid, your best way is to look another way, and keep going on; for sometimes if you stop, and stand still, and look steadfastly at him, he takes it for an affront; but if you throw or toss any thing at him, and it hits him, though it were but a bit of stick as big as your finger, he takes it for an affront; and sets all other business aside to pursue his revenge; for he will have satisfaction in point of honour; this is his first quality: the next is, that if he be once affronted, he will never leave you, night or day, till he has his revenge, but follows, at a good round rate⁹⁾, till he overtakes you.

My man Friday had delivered our guide, and when we came up to him, he was helping him off from his horse; for the man was both hurt and frightened, and indeed, the last more than the first; when, on a sudden, we espied the bear come out of the wood, and a vast monstrous one it was, the

⁷⁾ *to give a person the road* = einem den Weg frei geben, ihm ausbiegen. — ⁸⁾ *nice* = artig. — ⁹⁾ *at a good round rate* = in ziemlich schnellem Tempo.

soon as we came into the plain, we had occasion enough to look about us; the first object we met with was a dead horse, that is to say, a poor horse which the wolves had killed; and at least a dozen of them at work; we could not say eating of him, but picking of his bones rather; for they had eaten up all the flesh before. We did not think fit to disturb them at their feast, neither did they take much notice of us. Friday would have let fly at them, but I would not suffer him by any means; for I found we were like to have more business upon our hands than we were aware of. We were not gone half over the plain, but we began to hear the wolves howl in the wood on our left in a frightful manner, and presently after we saw about a hundred coming on directly towards us, all in a body, and most of them in a line, as regularly as an army drawn up by experienced officers. I scarce knew in what manner to receive them, but found to draw ourselves in a close line was the only way; so we formed in a moment; but that we might not have too much interval, I ordered that only every other man should fire, and that the others who had not fired should stand ready to give them a second volley immediately, if they continued to advance upon us; and that then those who had fired at first should not pretend to load their fusees⁴) again, but stand ready with every one a pistol, for we were all armed with a fusee and a pair of pistols each man; so we were, by this method, able to fire six volleys, half of us at a time; however, at present we had no necessity; for upon firing the first volley, the enemy made a full stop, being terrified as well with the noise as with the fire; four of them being shot in the head, dropped; several others were wounded, and went bleeding off, as we could see by the snow. I found they stopped, but did not immediately retreat; whereupon, remembering that I had been told that the fiercest creatures were terrified at the voice of a man, I caused all our company to halloo as loud as we could; and I found the notion not altogether mistaken; for upon our shout they began to retire, and turn about. Then I ordered a second volley to be fired in their rear, which put them to the gallop, and away they went to the woods. This gave us leisure to charge our pieces again;

⁴) Cf. IV, 16.

and that we might lose no time, we kept going⁵⁾: but we had but little more than loaded our fusees, and put ourselves into a readiness, when we heard a terrible noise in the same wood, on our left, only that it was farther onward, the same way we were to go.

The night was coming on, and the light began to be dusky, which made it worse on our side; but the noise increasing, we could easily perceive that it was the howling and yelling⁶⁾ of those hellish creatures; and, on a sudden, we perceived two or three troops of wolves, one on our left, one behind us, and one on our front, so that we seemed to be surrounded with them: however, as they did not fall upon us, we kept our way forward, as fast as we could make our horses go, which, the way being very rough, was only a good large trot. In this manner we came in view of the entrance of a wood, through which we were to pass, at the farther side of the plain; but we were greatly surprised, when coming nearer the lane or pass⁷⁾, we saw a confused number of wolves standing just at the entrance. On a sudden, at another opening of the wood, we heard the noise of a gun, and looking that way, out rushed a horse, with a saddle and a bridle on him, flying like the wind, and sixteen or seventeen wolves after him, full speed; indeed the horse had the heels of them; but as we supposed that he could not hold it at that rate, we doubted not but they would get up with him at last, and no question but they did.

But there we had a most horrible sight; for riding up to the entrance where the horse came out, we found the carcass of another horse and of two men, devoured by the ravenous creatures; and one of the men was no doubt the same whom we heard fire the gun, for there lay a gun just by him fired off; but as to the man, his head and the upper part of his body were eaten up. This filled us with horror, and we knew not what course to take; but the creatures resolved us soon, for they gathered about us presently, in hopes of prey; and I verily believe there were three hundred of them. It happened very much to our advantage, that at the entrance

⁵⁾ *to keep going* = weiter maschieren. — ⁶⁾ *howling* ist eigentlich das Heulen (des Hundes und des Wolfes), während *yelling* mehr das gellende Geschrei bezeichnet. — ⁷⁾ Cf. Note 2.

into the wood, but a little way from it, there lay some large timber-trees, which had been cut down the summer before, and I suppose lay there for carriage⁸⁾. I drew my little troop in among those trees, and placing ourselves in a line behind one long tree, I advised them all to alight, and keeping that tree before us for a breastwork, to stand in a triangle, or three fronts, enclosing our horses in the centre. We did so, and it was well we did; for never was a more furious charge than the creatures made upon us in this place. They come on us with a growling⁹⁾ kind of a noise, and mounted the piece of timber, which, as I said, was our breastwork, as if they were only rushing upon their prey; and this fury of theirs¹⁰⁾, it seems, was principally occasioned by their seeing our horses behind us, which was the prey they aimed at. I ordered our men to fire as before, every other man; and they took their aim so sure, that indeed they killed several of the wolves at the first volley; but there was a necessity to keep a continual firing, for they came on like devils, those behind pushing on those before.

When we had fired our second volley of our fusees, we thought they stopped a little, and I hoped they would have gone off, but it was but a moment, for others came forward again; so we fired two volleys of our pistols; and I believe in these four firings we had killed seventeen or eighteen of them, and lamed twice as many, yet they came on again. I was loath to spend our shot too hastily; so I called my servant, not my man Friday, for he was better employed; for, with the greatest dexterity imaginable, he had charged my fusee and his own while we were engaged; but as I said, I called my other man, and giving him a horn of powder, I bade him lay a train¹¹⁾ all along the piece of timber, and let it be a large train. He did so; and had but just time to get away, when the wolves came up to it, and some were got upon it, when I, snapping¹²⁾ an uncharged pistol close to the powder, set it on fire: those that were upon the timber

⁸⁾ *for carriage* = zum Abfahren, um abgefahren zu werden. — ⁹⁾ *to growl*, knurren, ist dem Naturlaut nachgebildet, wie auch *to howl*. — ¹⁰⁾ *this fury of theirs* = diese ihre Wut. — ¹¹⁾ *train*, Zündlinie, Leitfeuer, gehört der Bergmannssprache an. — ¹²⁾ *to snap* = (den Hahn in die Pfanne) schnappen lassen, wobei es Funken giebt.

were scorched with it, and six or seven of them fell, or rather jumped in among us, with the force and fright of the fire; we dispatched these in an instant, and the rest were so frightened with the light, which the night, for it was now very near dark, made more terrible, that they drew back a little; upon which I ordered our last pistols to be fired off in one volley, and after that we gave a shout: upon this the wolves turned tail¹³⁾, and we sallied immediately upon near twenty lame ones, who we found struggling on the ground, and fell a cutting¹⁴⁾ them with our swords, which answered our expectation; for the crying and howling they made was better understood by their fellows; so that they all fled and left us.

LXIII. — We had, first and last, killed about threescore¹⁾ of them; and had it been daylight, we had killed many more. The field of battle being thus cleared, we made forward again, for we had still near a league to go²⁾. We heard the ravenous creatures howl and yell in the woods as we went, several times, and sometimes we fancied we saw some of them, but the snow dazzling³⁾ our eyes, we were not certain: so in about an hour more we came to the town⁴⁾ where we were to lodge, which we found in a terrible fright, and all in arms; for, it seems, that the night before the wolves and some bears had broke⁵⁾ into the village, and put them in a terrible fright; and they were obliged to keep guard night and day, but especially in the night, to preserve their cattle, and, indeed, their people.

The next morning our guide was so ill, and his limbs so swelled with the rankling⁶⁾ of his two wounds, that he could go no farther; so we were obliged to take a new guide there, and go to Thoulouse⁷⁾, where we found a warm climate, a fruitful pleasant country, and no snow, no wolves, or any thing like them: but when we told our story at Thoulouse, they told us it was nothing but what was ordinary in the

¹³⁾ *to turn tail* = reifsaus nehmen, davon laufen. — ¹⁴⁾ *to fall a cutting* = niedermachen.

LXIII. — ¹⁾ Cf. XVIII, 6. — ²⁾ *to go* steht hier, wie das frz. *aller*, für die Bewegung überhaupt; vgl. z. B. *to go on horseback* = reiten. — ³⁾ *to dazzle* = blenden. — ⁴⁾ Cf. I, 1. — ⁵⁾ *broke* für *broken*. — ⁶⁾ *to rankle* = sich entzünden. — ⁷⁾ Beachte die Schreibung, sprich aber *th* = *t*; die Form *Toulouse* ist übrigens auch häufiger.

biggest by far that ever I saw. We were all a little surprised when we saw him; but when Friday saw him, it was easy to see joy and courage in the fellow's countenance; "O! O! O!" says Friday, three times, pointing to him: "O master! you give me te¹⁰⁾ leave, me shakee te hand with him; me makee you good laugh."

I was surprised to see the fellow so pleased; "You fool," says I, "he will eat you up." "Eatee me up! eatee me up!" says Friday, twice over again; "me eatee him up; me makee you good laugh; you all stay here, me show you good laugh." So down he sits, and gets his boots off in a moment, and put on a pair of pumps, as we call the flat shoes they wear, and which he had in his pocket, gives my other servant his horse, and with his gun away he flew, swift like the wind.

The bear was walking softly on, and offered to meddle with nobody, till Friday coming pretty near, calls to him, as if the bear could understand him; "Hark¹¹⁾ ye¹²⁾, hark ye," says Friday, "me speakee wit you." We followed at a distance; for now being come down on the Gascoigne side of the mountains, we were entered a vast great forest, where the country was plain and pretty open, though it had many trees in it scattered here and there. Friday, who had, as we say, the heels¹³⁾ of the bear, came up with him quickly, and takes up a great stone and throws it at him, and hit him just on the head, but did him no more harm than if he had thrown it against a wall; but it answered Friday's end, for the rogue was so void of fear that he did it purely to make the bear follow him, and show us some laugh, as he called it. As soon as the bear felt the blow, and saw him, he turns about, and comes after him, taking devilish long strides, and shuffling along¹⁴⁾ at a strange rate, so as would have put a horse to a middling gallop; away runs Friday, and takes his course as if he run towards us for help; so we all resolved to fire

¹⁰⁾ Cf. V, 10. — ¹¹⁾ *hark ye* = hört (einmal); *to hark* wird selten anders als im Imperativ gebraucht, sonst steht dafür *to hearken*. NB. *to hear* = hören (überhaupt), vernehmen; *to overhear* = zufällig hören; *to hearken*, spr. ea = ä, = horchen auf (nur im guten Sinne); *to listen* = (aufmerksam) zuhören, hinhorchen, belauschen; *to attend to* = anhören. — ¹²⁾ *ye* veraltete Form für *you*. — ¹³⁾ *to have the heels* = auf den Hacken sitzen. — ¹⁴⁾ *to shuffle along* = einhertrollen, watscheln.

at once upon the bear, and deliver my man; though I was angry at him heartily for bringing the bear back upon us, when he was going about his own business another way: and especially I was angry that he had turned the bear upon us, and then run away; and I called out, "You dog¹⁵⁾," said I, "is this your making us laugh? Come away, and take your horse, that we may shoot the creature." He hears me, and cries out, "No shoot, no shoot; stand still, you get much laugh:" and as the nimble creature ran two feet for the bear's one¹⁶⁾, he turned on a sudden, on one side of us, and seeing a great oak tree fit for his purpose, he beckoned to us to follow; and doubling his pace, he gets nimbly up the tree, laying his gun down upon the ground, at about five or six yards from the bottom of the tree. The bear soon came to the tree, and we followed at a distance: the first thing he did, he stopped at the gun, smelt to it, but let it lie, and up he scrambles into the tree, climbing like a cat, though so monstrously heavy. I was amazed at the folly, as I thought it, of my man, and could not for my life see any thing to laugh at yet, till seeing the bear get up the tree, we all rode nearer to him.

When we came to the tree, there was Friday got out to the small end of a large limb¹⁷⁾ of the tree, and the bear got about half way to him. As soon as the bear got out to that part where the limb of the tree was weaker, — "Ha!" says he to us, "now you see me teachee the bear dance:" so he falls a jumping and shaking the bough, at which the bear began to totter, but stood still, and began to look behind him, to see how he should get back; then, indeed, we did laugh heartily. But Friday had not done with him by a great deal; when he sees him stand still, he calls out to him again, as if he had supposed the bear could speak English, "What, you no come farther? pray you come farther;" so he left jumping and shaking the tree; and the bear, just as if he had understood what he said, did come a little farther; then he fell a jumping again, and the bear stopped again. We thought now was a good time to knock him on the head, and called to Friday to stand still, and we would shoot the bear; but he cried out earnestly, "O pray! O pray! no shoot,

¹⁵⁾ Cf. XLIX, 5. — ¹⁶⁾ *for the bear's one* nämlich Fufs, den es lief. — ¹⁷⁾ *limb*, spr. *lím*, = Ast.

me shoot by and then;" he would have said by and by. However, to shorten the story, Friday danced so much, and the bear stood so ticklish¹⁸⁾, that we had laughing enough indeed, but still could not imagine what the fellow would do; for first we thought he depended upon shaking the bear off; and we found the bear was too cunning for that too; for he would not go out far enough to be thrown down, but clings fast with his great broad claws and feet, so that we could not imagine what would be the end of it, and where the jest would be at last. But Friday put us out of doubt quickly; for seeing the bear cling fast to the bough, and that he would not be persuaded to come any farther, "Well, well," says Friday, "you no come farther, me go, me go; you no come to me, me go come to you;" and upon this he goes out to the smallest end of the bough, where it would bend with his weight, and gently lets himself down by it, sliding down the bough, till he came near enough to jump down on his feet, and away he run to his gun, takes it up, and stands still. "Well," said I to him, "Friday, what will you do now? Why don't you shoot him?" — "No shoot," says Friday, "no yet; me shoot now, me no kill; me stay, give you one more laugh;" and, indeed, so he did, as you will see presently; for when the bear saw his enemy gone, he comes back from the bough where he stood, but did it mighty leisurely, looking behind him every step, and coming backward till he got into the body of the tree; then with the same hinder end foremost, he came down the tree, grasping it with his claws, and moving one foot at a time, very leisurely. At this juncture, and just before he could set his hind feet upon the ground, Friday stepped up close to him, clapped¹⁹⁾ the muzzle of his piece into his ear, and shot him dead as a stone. Then the rogue turned about to see if we did not laugh; and when he saw we were pleased, by our looks, he falls a laughing himself very loud. "So we kill bear in my country," says Friday. "So you kill them?" says I; "why, you have no guns." — "No," says he, "no gun, but shoot great much long arrow." This was a good diversion to us; but we were still in a wild place, and our guide very much hurt, and what to do we hardly knew; the

¹⁸⁾ *to stand ticklish* = wackelig stehen. — ¹⁹⁾ *to clap* hier = halten.

howling of wolves ran much in my head; and, indeed, except the noise I once heard on the shore of Africa, of which I have said something already, I never heard any thing that filled me with so much horror.

LXII. — These things, and the approach of night, called us off, or else, as Friday would have had us, we should certainly have taken the skin of this monstrous creature off, which was worth saving; but we had near three leagues to go, and our guide hastened us; so we left him, and went forward on our journey.

The ground was still covered with snow, though not so deep and dangerous as on the mountains; and the ravenous creatures, as we heard afterwards, were come down into the forest and plain country, pressed by hunger, to seek for food, and had done a great deal of mischief in the villages, where they surprised the country people, killed a great many of their sheep and horses, and some people too¹⁾. We had one dangerous place to pass, which our guide told us, if there were any more wolves in the country we should find them there; and this was a small plain, surrounded with woods on every side, and a long narrow defile²⁾, or lane, which we were to pass to get through the wood, and then we should come to the village where we were to lodge. It was within half an hour of sunset when we entered the first wood; and a little after sunset when we came into the plain. We met with nothing in the first wood, except that, in a little plain within the wood, which was not above two furlongs³⁾ over, we saw five great wolves cross the road, full speed, one after another, as if they had been in chase of some prey, and had it in view; they took no notice of us, and were gone out of sight in a few moments. Upon this our guide, who, by the way, was a wretched faint-hearted fellow, bid us keep in a ready posture, for he believed there were more wolves a coming. We kept our arms ready, and our eyes about us; but we saw no more wolves till we came through that wood, which was near half a league, and entered the plain. As

LXII. — ¹⁾ *too*, dazu, verstärkt den vorhergehenden Begriff, dem es immer nachgestellt wird und ist vertraulicher als *also* = *all so* (all so, ganz so), welches eine umfassendere Bedeutung hat. — ²⁾ *defile* = Hohlweg. — ³⁾ Cf. IX, 14.

great forest at the foot of the mountains, especially when the snow lay on the ground; but they inquired much what kind of a guide we had gotten, that would venture to bring us that way in such a severe season; and told us it was very much we were not all devoured. When we told them how we placed ourselves, and the horses in the middle, they blamed us exceedingly and told us it was fifty to one but we had been all destroyed; for it was the sight of the horses which made the wolves so furious, seeing their prey; and that, at other times, they are really afraid of a gun; but the being excessive hungry, and raging on that account, the eagerness to come at the horses had made them senseless of danger; and that if we had not, by the continued fire, and at last by stratagem of the train of powder, mastered them, it had been great odds but that⁸⁾ we had been torn to pieces: whereas, had we been content to have sat still on horseback, and fired as horsemen, they would not have taken the horses so much for their own, when men were on their backs, as otherwise; and withal they told us, that at last, if we had stood all together, and left our horses, they would have been so eager to have devoured them, that we might have come off safe, especially having our fire-arms in our hands, and being so many in number. For my part, I was never so sensible of danger in my life; for seeing above three hundred devils come roaring and open-mouthed to devour us, and having nothing to shelter us, or retreat to, I gave myself over for lost; and, as it was, I believe I shall never care to cross those mountains again; I think I would much rather go a thousand leagues by sea, though I was sure to meet with a storm once a-week.

I have nothing uncommon to take notice of in my passage through France; nothing but what other travellers have given an account of, with much more advantage⁹⁾ than I can. I travelled from Thoulouse to Paris, and without any considerable stay came to Calais, and landed safe at Dover, the 14th of Jan. after having had a severely cold season to travel in.

I was now come to the centre of my travels, and had in a little time all my new-discovered estate safe about me; the

⁸⁾ *it had been great odds but that* = es hätte nicht viel gefehlt, dafs; NB. *odds* = ungerade Zahl, Ungleichheit, ungleiche Partie, Wahrscheinlichkeit. — ⁹⁾ *advantage* hier = Geschick.

bills of exchange which I brought with me having been very currently paid.

My principal guide and privy counsellor was my good ancient widow; who, in gratitude for the money I had sent her, thought no pains too much, or care too great, to employ for me; and I trusted her so entirely with every thing, that I was perfectly easy as to the security of my effects: and, indeed, I was very happy from the beginning, and now to the end, in the unspotted integrity of this good gentlewoman^{9a)}.

And now I began to think of leaving my effects with this woman, and setting out for Lisbon, and so to the Brasils; but now another scruple came in my way, and that was religion; for as I had entertained some doubts about the Roman religion, even while I was abroad, especially in my state of solitude; so I knew there was no going to the Brasils for me, much less going to settle there, unless I resolved to embrace the Roman catholic religion, without any reserve; except on the other hand I resolved to be a sacrifice¹⁰⁾ to my principles, be a martyr for religion, and die in the Inquisition¹¹⁾; so I resolved to stay at home, and, if I could find means for it, to dispose of my plantation.

To this purpose I wrote to my old friend at Lisbon, who in return gave me notice, that he could easily dispose of it there: but that if I thought fit to give him leave to offer it in my name to the two merchants, the survivors of my trustees who lived in the Brasils, who must fully understand the value of it, who lived just upon the spot, and whom I knew were very rich; so that he believed they would be fond of buying it; he did not doubt, but I should make four or five thousand pieces of eight¹²⁾ the more of it.

Accordingly I agreed, gave him order to offer it to them, and he did so; and in about eight months more, the ship being then returned, he sent me an account, that they had accepted the offer, and had remitted thirty three thousand pieces-of-eight, to a correspondent of theirs at Lisbon to pay for it.

^{9a)} Cf. VII, 18. — ¹⁰⁾ Spr. sák'-rèfîs, während das Verbum —fiz zu sprechen ist. — ¹¹⁾ Cf. L, 5. — ¹²⁾ Cf. VII, 2.

I return, I signed the instrument of sale¹³⁾ in the form which they sent from Lisbon, and sent it to my old man, who sent me bills of exchange for 32,800 pieces-of-eight for the estate; reserving the payment of 100 moidores a-year to him, the old man, during his life, and 50 moidores afterwards to his son for his life, which I had promised them, which the plantation was to make good as a rent-charge. And thus I have given the first part of a life of fortune and adventure, a life of Providence's chequer-work¹⁴⁾, and of a variety which the world will seldom be able to show the like of: beginning foolishly, but closing much more happily than any part of it ever gave me leave so much as to hope for.

Any one would think, that in this state of complicated good fortune, I was past running any more hazards¹⁵⁾, and so indeed I had been, if other circumstances had concurred: but I was inured¹⁶⁾ to a wandering life, had no family, not many relations, nor, however rich, had I contracted much acquaintance; and though I had sold my estate in the Brasils, yet I could not keep the country out of my head, and had a great mind to be upon the wing¹⁷⁾ again; especially I could not resist the strong inclination I had to see my island, and to know if the poor Spaniards were in being there, and how the rogues I left there had used them. My true friend, the widow, earnestly dissuaded me from it, and so far prevailed with me, that, for almost seven years, she prevented my running abroad; during which time I took my two nephews, the children of one of my brothers, into my care: the eldest having something of his own¹⁸⁾, I bred up as a gentleman, and gave him a settlement of some addition to his estate after my decease. The other I put out to a captain of a

¹³⁾ *instrument of sale* = Verkaufsurkunde; wir reden auch von einem Hypotheken-Instrument z. B. — ¹⁴⁾ *chequer-work* = (aus einzelnen Stücken bestehendes) Tafelwerk; hier etwa = Flickwerk. — ¹⁵⁾ *to run hazards* = ein Wagnis unternehmen; cf. VII, 16. — ¹⁶⁾ *inured*, eig. = eingebrannt, dann = durchaus gewöhnt; cf. II, 10. — ¹⁷⁾ *to be upon the wing* = auf dem Sprunge stehen, sich fortmachen. — ¹⁸⁾ „der etwas eigenes Vermögen hatte“. Nach englischen Erbgesetzen erhält der älteste Sohn häufig alles, während die anderen Kinder wenig oder nichts bekommen. Ähnlich war es früher bei den Bauern in gewissen Gegenden Deutschlands, um den Grundbesitz nicht zu zersplittern, bei den Majoratsgütern ist es heute noch der Fall.

ship, and after five years, finding him a sensible¹⁹⁾, bold, enterprising young fellow, I put him into a good ship, and sent him to sea; and this young fellow afterwards drew me in, as old as I was, to farther adventures myself.

In the mean time, I in part settled myself here; for, first of all, I married, and that not either to my disadvantage or dissatisfaction, and had three children, two sons and one daughter; but my wife dying, and my nephew coming home with good success from a voyage to Spain, my inclination to go abroad, and his importunity²⁰⁾, prevailed, and engaged me to go in his ship as a private trader to the East Indies: this was in the year 1694.

In this voyage I visited my new colony in the island, saw my successors the Spaniards, had the whole story of their lives, and of the villains I left there; how at first they insulted the poor Spaniards, how they afterwards agreed, disagreed, united, separated, and how at last the Spaniards were obliged to use violence with them; how they were subjected to the Spaniards; how honestly the Spaniards used them; a history, if it were entered into, as full of variety and wonderful accidents as my own part: particularly also as to their battles with the Caribbeans²¹⁾, who landed several times upon the island, and as to the improvement they had made upon the island itself; and how five of them made an attempt upon the main land, and brought away eleven men and five women prisoners; by which, at my coming, I found about twenty young children on the island.

Here I stayed about twenty days; left them supplies of all necessary things, and particularly of arms, powder, shot, clothes, tools, and two workmen, which²²⁾ I brought from England with me; viz. a carpenter and a smith.

Besides this, I shared the lands into parts with them, reserved to myself the property of the whole, but gave them such parts respectively, as they agreed on; and, having settled all things with them, and engaged them not to leave the place, I left them there.

From thence I touched at the Brasils from whence I sent a bark, which I bought there, with more people, to the island;

¹⁹⁾ *sensible* hier = *gescheit*. — ²⁰⁾ *importunity* hier = *Drängen*.
— ²¹⁾ Cf. VIII, 29, u. XXV, 30. — ²²⁾ oder *whom*?!

and in it, besides other supplies, I sent seven women, being such as I found proper for service, or for wives to such as would take them. As to the Englishmen, I promised them to send them some women from England, with a good cargo of necessaries, if they would apply themselves to planting; which I afterwards could not perform: the fellows proved very honest and diligent, after they were mastered, and had their properties set apart for them. I sent them also from the Brasils five cows, three of them being big with calf²³), some sheep, and some hogs²⁴), which, when I came again, were considerably increased.

But all these things, with an account how three hundred Caribbees came and invaded them, and ruined their plantations, and how they fought with that whole number twice, and were at first defeated and one of them killed; but at last a storm destroying their enemies' canoes, they famished or destroyed almost all the rest, and renewed and recovered the possession of their plantation, and still lived upon the island.

All these things, with some very surprising incidents in some new adventures of my own, for ten years more, I may perhaps give a farther account of hereafter²⁵).

²³) *big with calf* = mit dem Kalbe gehend, trüchtig. —

²⁴) *swine* hat kollektive Bedeutung: Schweine, *pig* ist die üblichste Benennung des Schweines überhaupt, *hog* ist eig. das grofse verschnittene Schwein; hier sollte richtiger *pigs* stehen.

²⁵) Der folgende, zweite Teil des Robinson ist zwar fast genau ebenso lang als der erste, bietet aber bei weitem nicht soviel des Interessanten. Nach Beschreibung seiner mannigfachen Reisen und Abenteuer, die ihn bis nach Sibirien führen, schließt der Verfasser mit folgenden Worten:

“To conclude: having staid near four months in Hamburgh, I came from thence overland to the Hague, where I embarked in the packet, and arrived in London the tenth of January 1705, having been gone from England ten years and nine months.

And here resolving to harass myself no more, I am preparing for a longer journey than all these, having lived seventy-two years a life of infinite variety, and learnt sufficiently to know the value of retirement, and the blessing of ending our days in peace.”

THE END.



Verlag von Hermann Geseuius in Halle a. S.

Lehrbuch der Englischen Sprache

von

Dr. F. W. Geseuius.

In zwei Teilen.

Teil I.: **Elementarbuch der Englischen Sprache** nebst Lese- und Übungsstücken. Zehnte Auflage. 1880. 8. Preis 1 M. 80 ₤.

46. bis 67. Tausend.

Teil II.: **Grammatik der Englischen Sprache** nebst Übungsstücken. Sechste Auflage in neuer Rechtschreibung. 1881. 8. Preis 2 M. 60 ₤.

39. bis 58. Tausend.

Vom ersten Teile ist die erste Auflage 1864 erschienen, die zweite 1868, die dritte 1869, die vierte 1871, die fünfte 1873, die sechste 1874, die siebente 1875, die achte 1877, die neunte 1878, die zehnte 1880.

Vom zweiten Teile erschien die erste Auflage im Jahre 1871, die zweite 1873, die dritte 1874, die vierte 1875, die fünfte 1878, die sechste 1881.

Dieser Erfolg ist wohl die beste Empfehlung. Die Lehrbücher sind bereits in mehreren hundert der verschiedenartigsten Lehranstalten, als: Universitäten, Gymnasien, Real-, höheren Bürger- und Töcherschulen, Handels-, Gewerbe-, Landwirtschafts- und Mittelschulen eingeführt, ein Beweis, daß es den Bedürfnissen Aller in vorzüglicher Weise entspricht.

Als besonders hervorzuhebende Vorzüge dieses Buches sind in allen darüber erschienenen Recensionen anerkannt worden:

1) *Umsichtige Auswahl verbunden mit weiser Beschränkung des Stoffes, zweckmäßige Anordnung, Kürze und Präcision bei Aufstellung der grammatischen Regeln, bequeme Tabellen für die Rektion der Verben, der Adjektive, der Präpositionen.*

2) *Die Reichhaltigkeit und Mannigfaltigkeit der Übungsbeispiele, sowie die Auswahl der Lesestücke, welche Interesse erwecken und zu Sprachübungen und Reproduktionen, sowie zu Exercitien trefflich verwendet werden können.*

English Syntax.

Translated from the

„Grammatik der Englischen Sprache“

by

Dr. F. W. Geseuius.

Preis: 1 M. 60 ₤.

A Book of English Poetry for the use of schools.

Containing one hundred poems with explanatory notes and biographical sketches of the authors

by Dr. F. W. Geseuius.

Brosch. 1 M. 40 ₤. Kart. 1 M. 50 ₤.

1

Defoe, Daniel,

The life and surprising adventures of Robinson Crusoe by Daniel Defoe Für
den Schul- und Privatgebrauch eingerichtet und erklärt von Heinrich Loewe

Halle 1882

43.1103

urn:nbn:de:bvb:12-bsb11534128-1